

**CIHM  
Microfiche  
Series  
(Monographs)**

**ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches  
(monographies)**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1995**

## Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes technique et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming are checked below.

- ☒ Coloured covers / Couverture de couleur
- ☐ Covers damaged / Couverture endommagée
- ☐ Covers restored and/or laminated / Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- ☐ Cover title missing / Le titre de couverture manque
- ☒ Coloured maps / Cartes géographiques en couleur
- ☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black) / Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- ☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations / Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- ☐ Bound with other material / Relié avec d'autres documents
- ☐ Only edition available / Seule édition disponible
- ☐ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin / La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure.
- ☐ Blank leaves added during restorations may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming / Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- ☒ Additional comments / Commentaires supplémentaires: Various pagings.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modifications dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- ☐ Coloured pages / Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged / Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated / Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed / Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached / Pages détachées
- ☒ Showthrough / Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies / Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material / Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image / Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.
- ☐ Opposing pages with varying colouration or discolourations are filmed twice to ensure the best possible image / Les pages s'opposant ayant des colorations variables ou des décolorations sont filmées deux fois afin d'obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below /

Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <div style="display: flex; gap: 5px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px;"></div> </div> <div style="margin-left: 10px;">/</div> </div>					
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

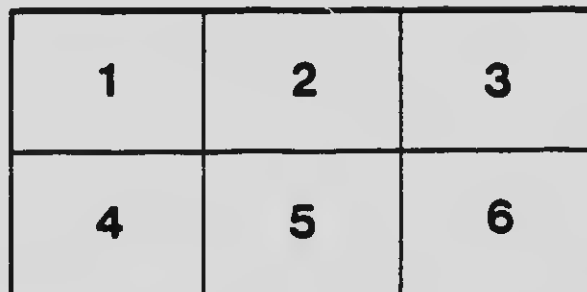
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

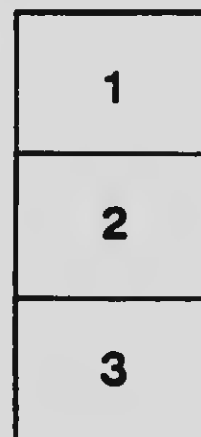
Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

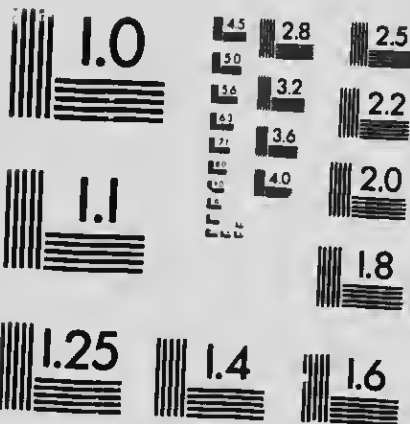
Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "À SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

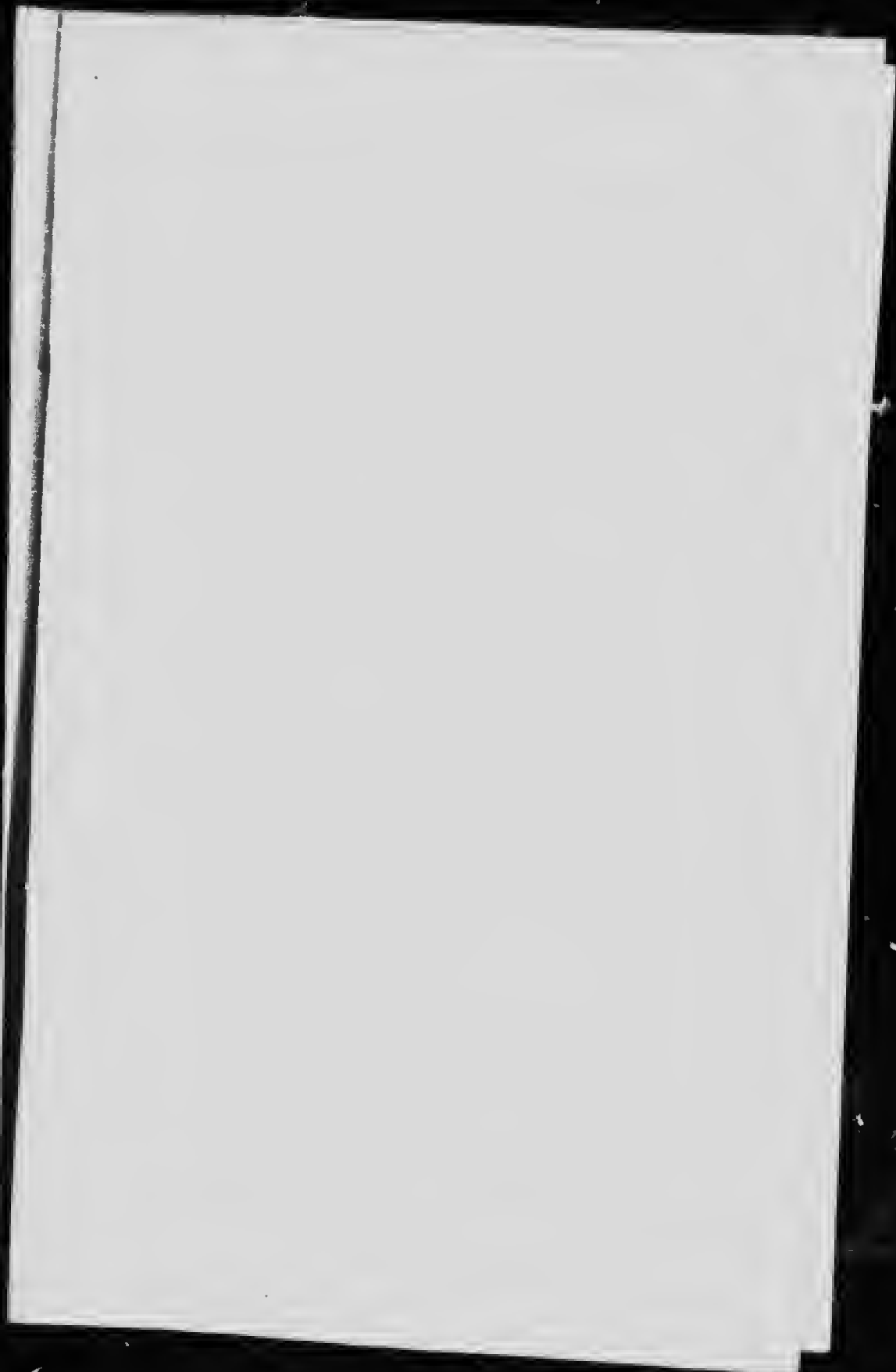
(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)

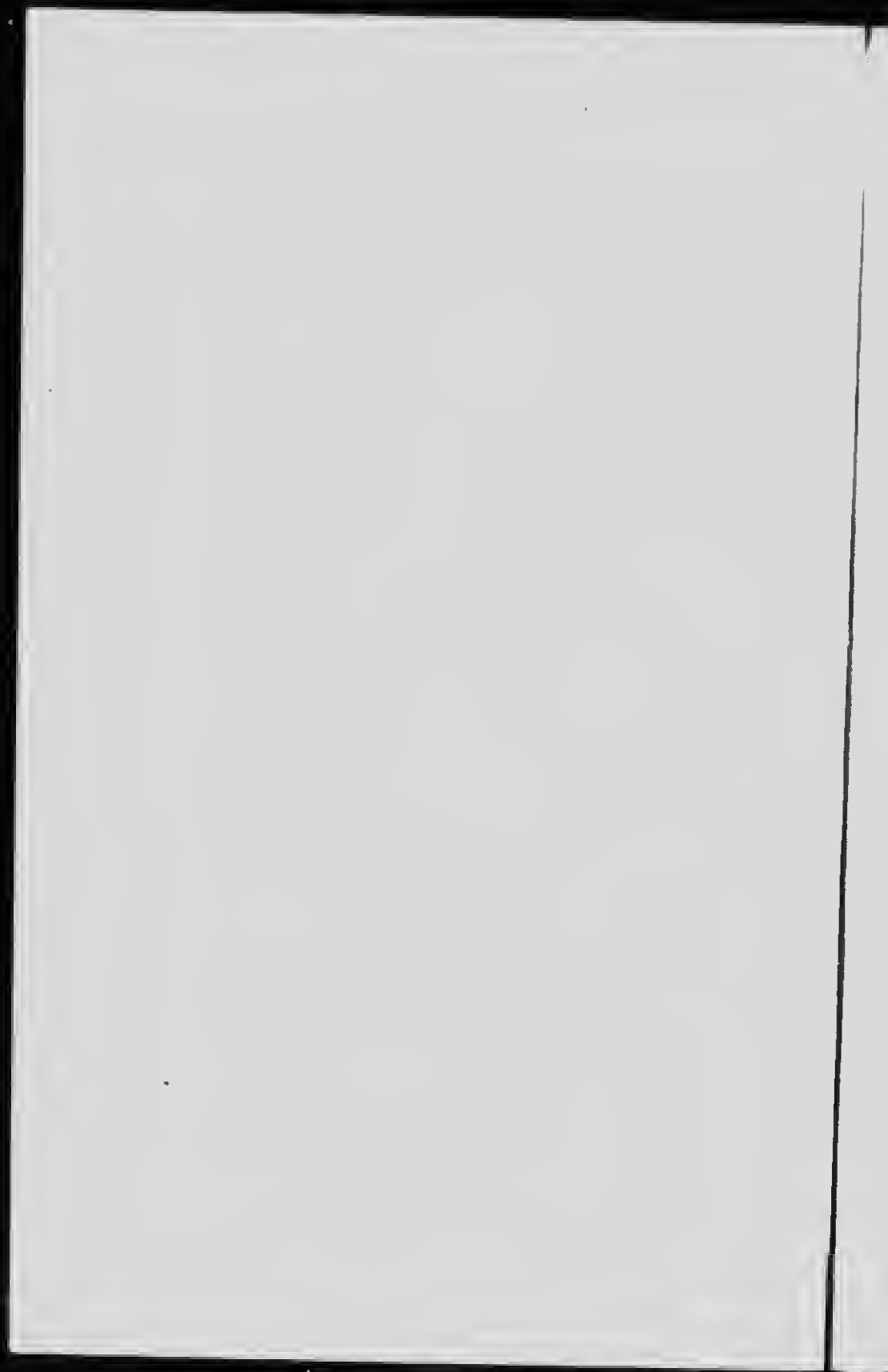


**APPLIED IMAGE Inc**

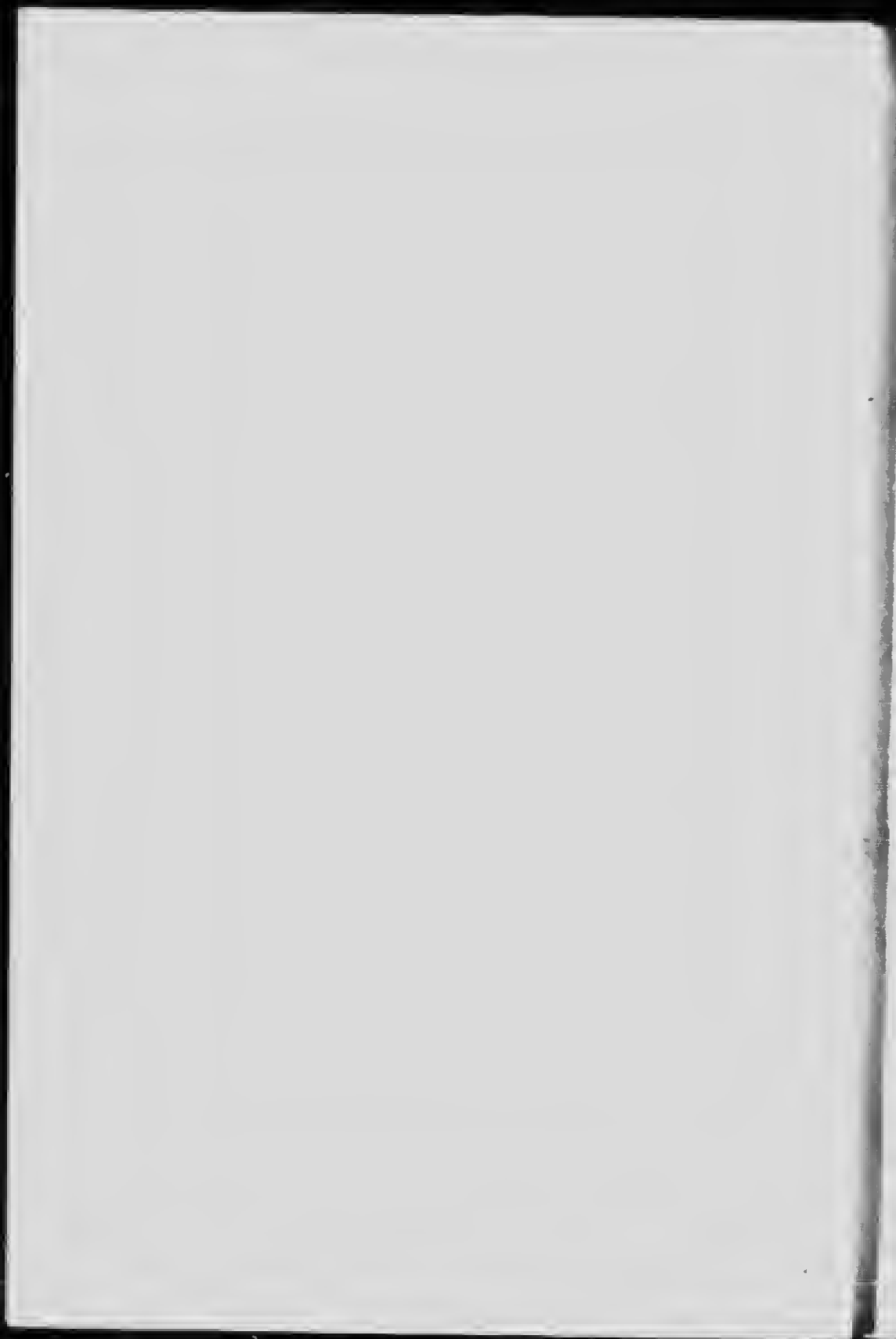
1653 East Main  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482-0300  
(716) 288-5989 - fax



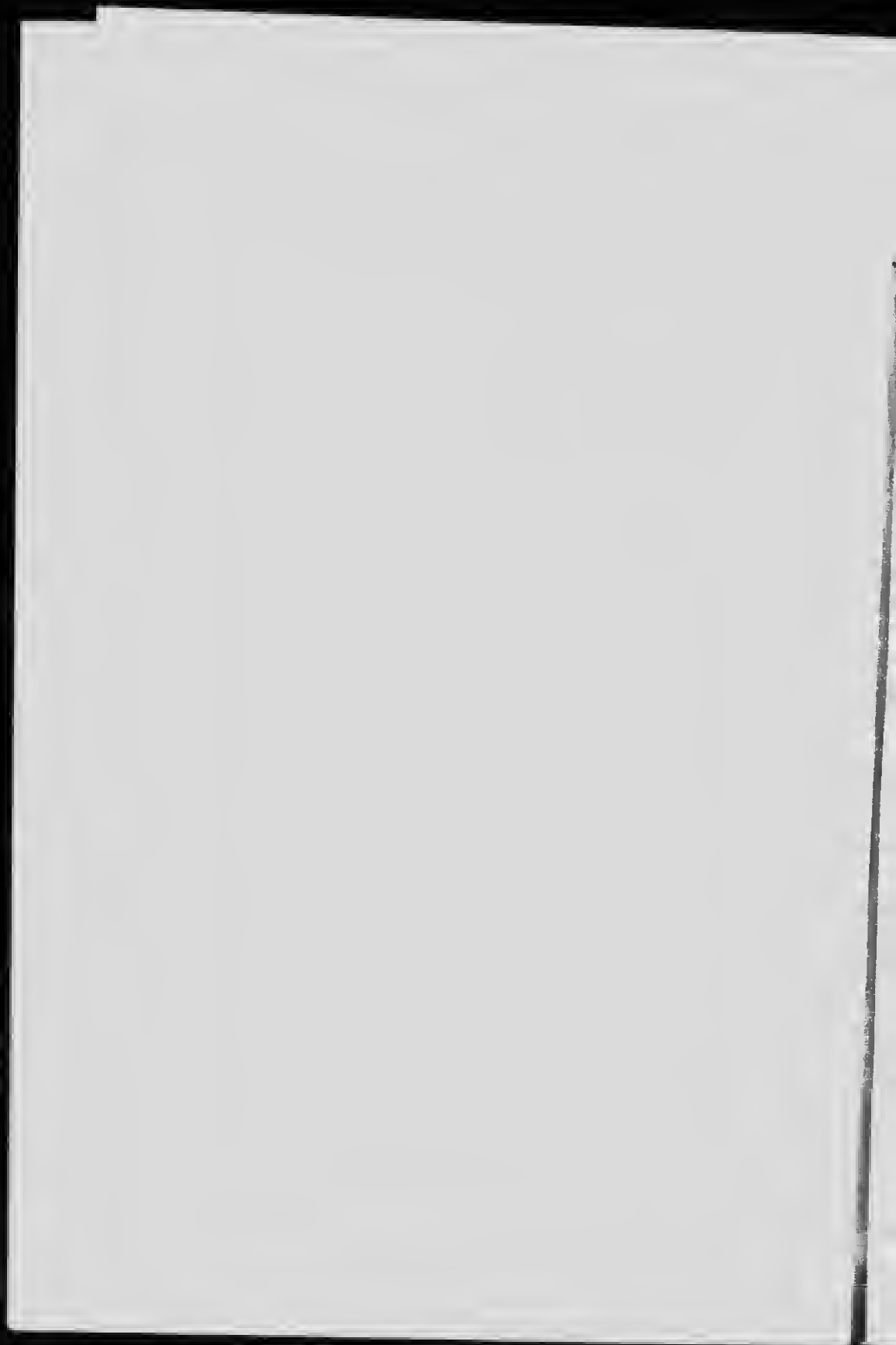


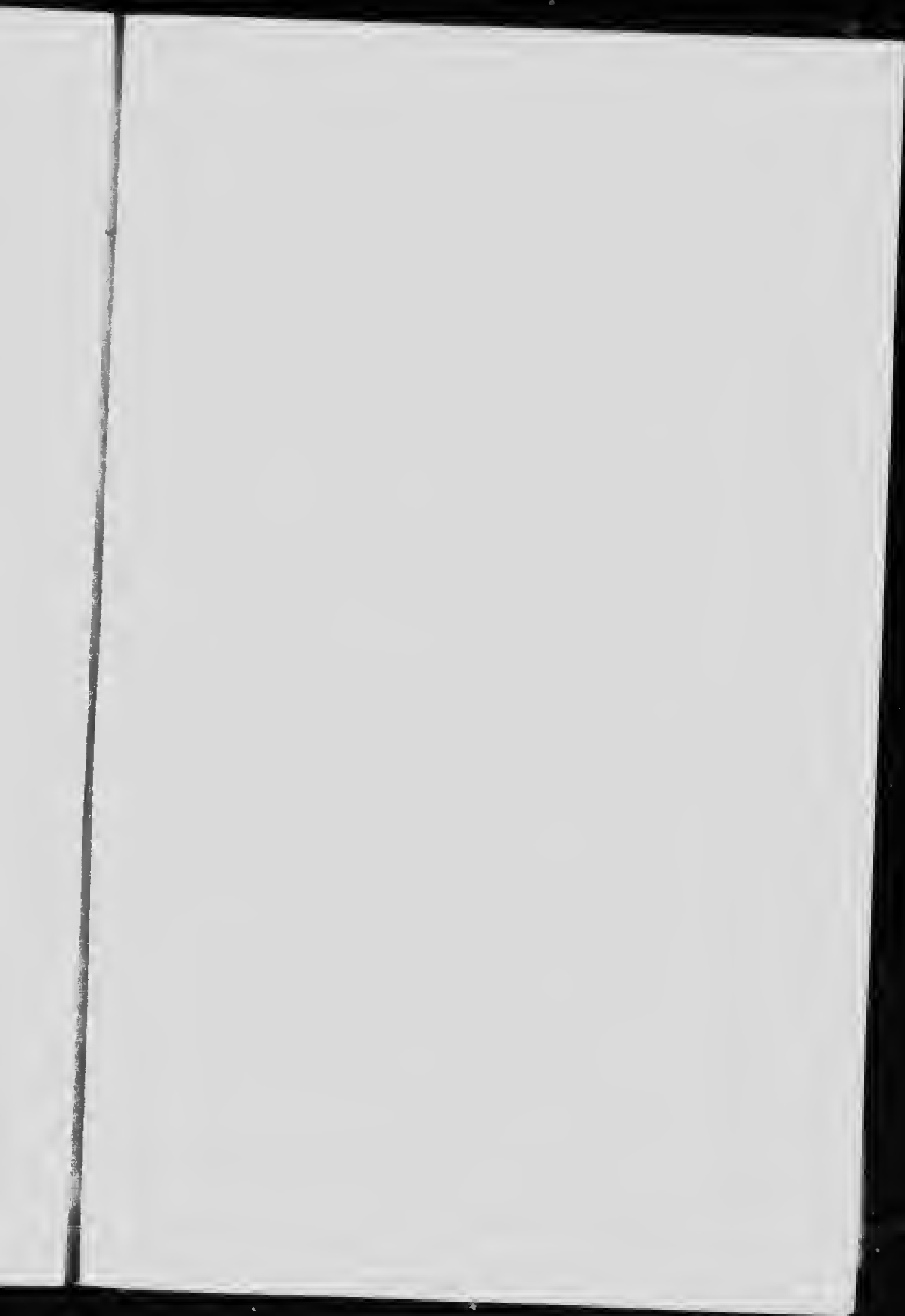














Hamo Thornycroft, R. A., Sculptor

ALFRED THE GREAT

*By permission of Alfred Bowker, Mayor of Winchester, England, and Honorary Secretary  
of the National Commemoration of King Alfred the Great*



87.  
ENGLAND'S STORY

A History for Public Schools

BY

EVA MARCH TAPPAN, PH. D.

*Head of the English Department, High School, Worcester*

AND

JOHN C. SAUL, M. A.

*Formerly English Master, Collegiate Institute, Winnipeg*

AUTHORIZED FOR USE IN THE PROVINCE OF MANITOBA

TORONTO

GEORGE N. MORANG & COMPANY, LIMITED

1903

*Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in  
the year Nineteen Hundred and Three, by George N. Morang  
and Company, Limited, at the Department of Agriculture*

## PREFACE

THE aim of this book is : first, to state facts rather than opinions ; second, to tell the story of the United Kingdom in such wise as to make a broad, simple basis for the later study of history and literature ; third, while seeking for continuity and proportion, to give special heed to the persons and events that young people would be likely to meet in their general reading.

With the want of a background of knowledge and experience, unfamiliar proper names are confusing and meaningless. The authors have tried, therefore, to mention only those persons whose lives have had an important influence on the history of the country. Since the limits and limitations of the book permit the bringing of but a few characters forward into the light, any older reader will, perhaps, note many omissions. They can plead only that comforting line of Chaucer : —

“There nys no man that may reporten al.”



# CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. THE ROMANS IN BRITAIN. 55 B. C. TO 410 A. D. . . . .	1
II. THE SAXONS AND THE DANES. 410-1066 . . . . .	12
III. THE NORMANS. 1066-1154 . . . . .	31
1. William the Conqueror. 1066-1087 . . . . .	31
2. William II. 1087-1100 . . . . .	43
3. Henry I. 1100-1135 . . . . .	49
4. Stephen (of Blois). 1135-1154 . . . . .	57
IV. THE ANGEVINS, OR PLANTAGENETS. 1154-1399 . . . . .	64
5. Henry II. 1154-1189 . . . . .	64
6. Richard I. 1189-1199 . . . . .	76
7. John. 1199-1216 . . . . .	82
8. Henry III. 1216-1272 . . . . .	88
9. Edward I. 1272-1307 . . . . .	93
10. Edward II. 1307-1327 . . . . .	104
11. Edward III. 1327-1377 . . . . .	106
12. Richard II. 1377-1399 . . . . .	115
V. KINGS OF LANCASTER AND YORK. 1399-1485 . . . . .	123
13. Henry IV. 1399-1413 . . . . .	123
14. Henry V. 1413-1422 . . . . .	128
15. Henry VI. 1422-1461 . . . . .	133
16. Edward IV. 1461-1483 . . . . .	143
17. Edward V. 1483 (April 9 to June 26) . . . . .	148
18. Richard III. 1483-1485 . . . . .	148
VI. THE TUDOR SOVEREIGNS. 1485-1603 . . . . .	155
19. Henry VII. 1485-1509 . . . . .	155
20. Henry VIII. 1509-1547 . . . . .	162
21. Edward VI. 1547-1553 . . . . .	176
22. Mary. 1553-1558 . . . . .	183
23. Elizabeth. 1558-1603 . . . . .	188

VII. THE STUARTS. 1603-1714 . . . . .	211
24. James I. 1603-1625 . . . . .	211
25. Charles I. 1625-1649 . . . . .	221
26. The Commonwealth and Cromwell. 1649 to 1660 . . . . .	241
27. Charles II. 1660-1685 . . . . .	252
28. James II. 1685-1688 . . . . .	263
29. William III. 1688-1702 . . . . .	272
30. Anne. 1702-1714 . . . . .	285
VIII. THE HOUSE OF HANOVER. 1714- . . . .	294
31. George I. 1714-1727 . . . . .	294
32. George II. 1727-1760 . . . . .	299
33. George III. 1760-1820 . . . . .	312
34. George IV. 1820-1830 . . . . .	337
35. William IV. 1830-1837 . . . . .	339
36. Victoria. 1837-1901 . . . . .	344
37. Edward VII. 1901- . . . . .	369
IX. THE BRITISH EMPIRE . . . . .	371

## ILLUSTRATIONS, MAPS, AND GENEALOGIES

### ILLUSTRATIONS\*

	PAGE
ALFRED THE GREAT. By permission of Alfred Bowker, Mayor of Winchester, and Honorary Secretary of the National Commemoration of King Alfred the Great	
DOVER CLIFFS. From a photograph . . . . .	2
THE LANDING OF CÆSAR. From a picture by Blakey as shown in Craik and MacFarlane's <i>Pictorial History of England</i> . . . . .	3
CORACLES OF EARLY BRITONS. From Knight's <i>Old England</i> . . . . .	5
STONEHENGE. From a photograph . . . . .	6
ROMAN WALL. From Craik and MacFarlane's <i>Pictorial History of England</i> . . . . .	10
ANCIENT JUTISH BOAT. From Engelhardt's <i>Denmark in the Early Iron Age</i> . . . . .	13
SAXON BUILDINGS. From MS. in the Harleian Library at the British Museum, as shown in Cutts's <i>Parish Priests</i> . . . . .	16
THE RUINS OF WHITBY ABBEY. From a photograph . . . . .	18
THRESHING AND WINNOWING. From a Hymnarium of the eleventh century found in the Cottoman Library at the British Museum. Knight's <i>Old England</i> . . . . .	20
THE COMING OF THE DANES. From a drawing by M. J. Burns . . . . .	23
HAROLD SWÉARS ON THE RELICS: BAYEUX TAPESTRY. From Jules Comte's <i>La Tapisserie de Bayeux</i> . . . . .	32
WILLIAM SAILS TO ENGLAND: BAYEUX TAPESTRY. From Jules Comte's <i>La Tapisserie de Bayeux</i> . . . . .	33
BATTLE OF SENLAC: BAYEUX TAPESTRY. From Jules Comte's <i>La Tapisserie de Bayeux</i> . . . . .	35
WESTMINSTER ABBEY IN THE DAYS OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR: BAYEUX TAPESTRY. From Jules Comte's <i>La Tapisserie de Bayeux</i> . . . . .	37
A NORMAN CASTLE KEEP. ROCHESTER CASTLE. From a photograph . . . . .	40

NORMAN SOLDIERS. From Grose's <i>Military Antiquities</i>	14
ROBERT, DUKE OF NORMANDY, A CRUSADER. From Stothard's <i>Monumental Effigies</i> . . . . .	47
DURHAM CATHEDRAL. From a photograph . . . . .	50
FEMALE COSTUME, TIME OF HENRY I. From a psalter of the twelfth century, as shown in Knight's <i>Old England</i>	54
"THE STANDARD" OF THE BATTLE OF 1138. From MS. Arundel 150 (British Museum), an early thirteenth century copy of part of the <i>Chronicle of Roger of Hoveden</i> . . . . .	59
A MYSTERY PLAY AT COVENTRY. From an old print . . . . .	62
A BECKET DISPUTING WITH HENRY II. From Hubert Hall's <i>Court Life under the Plantagenets</i> , Frontispiece . . . . .	68
THE SCENE OF A BECKET'S MURDER IN CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL. From a photograph . . . . .	70
A SQUIRE BECOMING A KNIGHT. From a fourteenth century painting by Simone Memmi, as shown in Gautier's <i>La Chevalrie</i> . . . . .	76
A KNIGHT TEMPLAR OF THE TIME OF RICHARD I. From Stothard's <i>Monumental Effigies</i> . . . . .	78
RICHARD I. IN PRISON. From an old MS. as shown in Strutt's <i>Ecclesiastical and Regal Antiquities</i> . . . . .	79
MILITARY AND CIVIL COSTUME IN THE TIME OF RICHARD I. From Harley Roll, Y 6, as shown in Gardiner's <i>Student's History of England</i> . . . . .	81
MAGNA CARTA ISLAND, RUNNYMEDE. From a photograph	85
FACSIMILE EXTRACT FROM MAGNA CARTA. From one of the original copies of the Magna Carta in the British Museum, as shown in Craik and MacFarlane's <i>Pictorial History of England</i> . . . . .	86
CORONATION OF HENRY III. From Strutt's <i>Ecclesiastical and Regal Antiquities</i> . . . . .	89
BUILDING OPERATIONS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY III. From Gardiner's <i>Student's History of England</i> . . . . .	92
PLANTAGENET KING AT TABLE. From Hubert Hall's <i>Court Life under the Plantagenets</i> . . . . .	96
CORONATION CHAIR WITH STONE OF SCONE. From a photograph . . . . .	98
WILLIAM WALLACE. After an engraving by S. Alphonse of the statue by W. G. Stevenson. From the <i>Art Journal</i> . . . . .	99
A BAND OF MINSTRELS. From Cutts's <i>Scenes and Characters of the Middle Ages</i> . . . . .	102



# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

ix

STIRLING CASTLE. From a photograph . . . . .	105
A GENOESE CROSSBOWMAN. From Knight's <i>Old England</i> . . . . .	108
AN ENGLISH ARCHER. From Longman's <i>Edward III.</i> . . . .	109
THE BLACK PRINCE. From Stothard's <i>Monumental Effigies</i> . . . . .	110
JOHN BALL PREACHING FROM HORSEBACK. After a MS of Froissart's "Chronicle." From Cutts's <i>Parish Priests</i> . . . . .	113
JOHN WICLIF. From <i>South Kensington National Portraits</i> . Painter unknown . . . . .	117
GEOFFREY CHAUCER. From the National Portrait Gallery. Painter unknown . . . . .	119
A GROUP OF CANTERBURY PILGRIMS. From Cutts's <i>Parish Priests</i> . . . . .	120
HENRY IV. AND HIS COURT. From Strutt's <i>Ecclesiastical and Regal Antiquities</i> . . . . .	124
A GROUP OF ENGLISH KNIGHTS, AND FRENCH MAN AT ARMS. From Cutts's <i>Scenes and Characters of the Middle Ages</i> . . . . .	129
MOVABLE TOWER, ARCHERS, CANNON, ETC., OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY. From Knight's <i>Old England</i> . . . . .	131
STATUE OF JOAN OF ARC, by Fremiet, Place des Pyramides, Paris. From Louis Goussier's <i>La Sculpture Française depuis le XIV<sup>e</sup>me siècle</i> . . . . .	136
COSTUMES OF LADIES OF RANK DURING THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY. From Strutt's <i>English Dress</i> . . . . .	140
EDWARD IV., HIS QUEEN AND SON. From Strutt's <i>Ecclesiastical and Regal Antiquities</i> . . . . .	144
FACSIMILE SPECIMEN OF CAXTON'S PRINTING. From Blade's <i>William Caxton</i> . . . . .	146
THE SANCTUARY AT WESTMINSTER. From Knight's <i>London</i> . . . . .	149
THE PRINCES IN THE TOWER. From the painting by Sir John E. Millais, P. R. A. . . . .	151
ELIZABETH OF YORK. From the engraving by W. Holl . . . . .	156
HENRY VII. From the National Portrait Gallery. Painted 1505, by an unknown Flemish artist . . . . .	156
GENERAL COSTUME IN TIME OF HENRY VII. From Knight's <i>Old England</i> . . . . .	159
THE CHAPEL OF HENRY VII., WESTMINSTER ABBEY. From a photograph . . . . .	161
HENRY VIII. After an engraving by Houbraken (from an	

original painting by Holbein, in the Gardiner Greene Hubbard Collection, Library of Congress . . . . .	163
ENGLISH WARSHIP WHICH CONVEYED HENRY VIII. TO FRANCE. From Lacroix's <i>Military and Religious Life in the Middle Ages</i> . . . . .	165
WOLSEY AND HIS SUTLE. From Knight's <i>Old England</i> . . . . .	168
THOMAS WOLSEY. From the National Portrait Gallery. Painter unknown . . . . .	170
THOMAS CROMWELL. Painted by Holbein. From <i>South Kensington National Portraits</i> . . . . .	174
EDWARD VI. From the painting by Holbein at Windsor . . . . .	177
EDWARD VI. AND COUNCIL. After a woodcut on the title-page of the Statutes of 1551. From Law's <i>History of Hampton Court Palace</i> . . . . .	179
LADY JANE GREY. After a drawing by Vertue. From Walpole's <i>Royal and Noble Authors</i> . . . . .	180
QUEEN MARY TUDOR, OR MARY I. From the painting by Antonius Moro in the Prado, Madrid . . . . .	183
PHILIP II. From the painting by Titian in the Prado, Madrid . . . . .	185
BURNING OF JOHN ROGERS. From <i>The New England Primer</i> . . . . .	186
QUEEN ELIZABETH. From an engraving by Holl of an original portrait in Queen Victoria's Collection, St. James's Palace . . . . .	189
QUEEN ELIZABETH CARRIED IN STATE. From the original painting by Marc Gheeraedts, exhibited (1866) at South Kensington Museum . . . . .	191
COSTUMES OF LADY AND COUNTRY WOMAN, TIME OF ELIZABETH. From Planché's <i>Encyclopædia of Costume</i> . . . . .	194
MARY STUART. From The Duke of Portland's Collection . . . . .	196
SIR FRANCIS DRAKE. From the original painting by A. M . . . . .	201
SPANISH ARMADA ATTACKED BY THE ENGLISH FLEET, as represented on the ancient tapestry in the House of Lords. From Craik and MacFarlane's <i>Pictorial History of England</i> . . . . .	203
WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE. From "the Chandos Portrait" in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	207
THE GLOBE, SHAKESPEARE'S THEATRE. From Knight's <i>Old England</i> . . . . .	208

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xi

163	JAMES I. From the original painting by Paul Van Somer in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	212
165	THE GUNPOWDER CONSPIRATORS. From Knight's <i>Popular History of England</i> . . . . .	215
168	ANNE OF DENMARK, WIFE OF JAMES I. (showing the "wheel farthingale" then worn). From Planché's <i>Encyclopædia of Costume</i> . . . . .	217
170	SIR WALTER RALEIGH. From Stalker's engraving published in London in 1812 . . . . .	219
174	CHARLES I. After the painting by Van Dyke . . . . .	223
177	SOLDIERS, TIME OF CHARLES I. From Planché's <i>Encyclopædia of Costume</i> . . . . .	225
179	GEORGE VILLIERS, DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM. From the original painting by Gerard Honthorst in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	226
181	JOHN HAMPTDEN. After an engraving by Houbraken in the Gardiner Greene Hubbard Collection, Library of Congress . . . . .	229
183	A CAVALIER. From Craik and MacFarlane's <i>Pictorial History of England</i> . . . . .	235
185	A ROUNDHEAD. From Fairholt's <i>Costumes in England</i> . . . . .	235
186	TRIAL OF CHARLES I. as represented by a contemporary print. From Craik and MacFarlane's <i>Pictorial History of England</i> . . . . .	239
189	OLIVER CROMWELL. From a miniature by Samuel Cooper . . . . .	243
191	SEAL OF THE COMMONWEALTH, SHOWING PARLIAMENT. From Craik and MacFarlane's <i>Pictorial History of England</i> . . . . .	245
194	MEDAL COMMEMORATING VICTORY OVER THE DUTCH. From Gérard Van Loon's <i>Histoire Médallique</i> . . . . .	247
196	JOHN MILTON. From the crayon drawing at Bayfordbury . . . . .	248
191	THE ROYAL CHARLES. From Clowes's <i>Royal Navy in History</i> . . . . .	253
193	CHARLES II. From the original painting by Mrs. Mary Beale in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	254
197	JOHN BUNYAN. After a drawing from life by R. White in the British Museum. From <i>Works of John Bunyan</i> . . . . .	256
198	COSTUMES OF GENTLEMEN AND SERVANT, REIGN OF CHARLES II. From Knight's <i>Old England</i> . . . . .	261
198	DUKE OF MONMOUTH. From the original painting by Sir Peter Lely in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	264

JUDGE JEFFREYS. After the original painting by Sir Godfrey Kneller . . . . .	266
JAMES II. From the original painting by John Riley in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	270
WILLIAM III. From the original painting by Jan Wyck in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	273
QUEEN MARY II. From an original painting by William Wissing in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	275
MEDAL TO COMMEMORATE QUEEN MARY'S REPULSE OF LOUIS XIV. From Knight's <i>Old England</i> . . . . .	281
QUEEN ANNE. From the original painting by John Closterman in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	285
ENGLISH FLAG: UNION JACK OF 1707; SCOTTISH FLAG. From Clowes's <i>Royal Navy in History</i> . . . . .	288
JOHN CHURCHILL, DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH. From the original painting by Sir Godfrey Kneller in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	289
SARAH, DUCHESS OF MARLBOROUGH. From the original painting by Sir Godfrey Kneller in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	291
GEORGE I. From the original painting by Sir Godfrey Kneller in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	294
COSTUME OF GENTLEMAN, 1721. From Planché's <i>Encyclopædia of Costume</i> . . . . .	296
SIR ROBERT WALPOLE. After an original painting by Zincke. From Coxe's <i>Memoirs of Walpole</i> , London, 1798 . . . . .	298
JOHN WESLEY. From the painting by George Romney . . . . .	300
GEORGE II. From the painting by Hudson in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	301
CHARLES EDWARD STUART (PRINCE CHARLIE). From the original painting by Nicolas Largillière in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	303
WILLIAM PITT, EARL OF CHATHAM. After the original painting by Richard Brompton . . . . .	304
JAMES WOLFE. After a print in Entick's <i>History of the Late War</i> , London, 1764 . . . . .	305
ROBERT CLIVE. From the original painting by Nathaniel Dance in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	307
MALL IN ST. JAMES'S PARK IN 1738. From Planché's <i>Encyclopædia of Costume</i> . . . . .	310

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xiii

266	GEORGE III. After the original painting by Thomas Frye . . . . .	312
270	A REVOLUTIONARY STAMP. From <i>Memorial History of Boston</i> . . . . .	313
273	WILLIAM PITT, THE YOUNGER. After an original drawing by Copley . . . . .	318
275	THE BASTILLE. From Bingham's <i>History of the Bastille</i> . . . . .	323
281	IRISH FLAG: THE UNION JACK. From Bontell's <i>English Heraldry</i> . . . . .	326
285	UNION JACK BEFORE 1801. From Clowes's <i>Royal Navy in History</i> . . . . .	326
288	NAPOLEON BONAPARTE. From the painting by Paul Hippolyte Delaroche in the collection of the Countess of Sandwich . . . . .	327
289	LORD NELSON. From the painting, Nelson in the Cabin of the Victory, by Charles Lucy . . . . .	328
291	NAPOLEON'S MEDAL TO COMMEMORATE HIS EXPECTED CONQUEST OF ENGLAND. From Gardiner's <i>Student's History of England</i> . . . . .	329
294	ARTHUR WELLESLEY, DUKE OF WELLINGTON. From an original painting by John Lucas in the National Gallery, Dublin . . . . .	331
296	ROBERT BURNS. From the original painting by Alexander Nasmyth in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	335
298	GEORGE IV. From the painting by Sir Thomas Lawrence, P. R. A., in the National Portrait Gallery . . . . .	337
300	DANIEL O'CONNELL. From the original miniature in the National Portrait Gallery, painted on ivory by Bernard Mulrenin . . . . .	338
301	WILLIAM IV. From the painting by Martin A. Shee . . . . .	340
303	STEPHENSON'S LOCOMOTIVE "THE ROCKET." From B. Cooke's <i>British Locomotives</i> . . . . .	343
304	QUEEN VICTORIA. From a photograph, 1887 . . . . .	346
305	HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT, OPENED IN 1852. From a photograph . . . . .	348
307	PRINCE ALBERT. From a photograph . . . . .	349
310	FLORENCE NIGHTINGALE. From a photograph . . . . .	354
	BENJAMIN DISRAELI, EARL OF BEACONSFIELD. From a photograph . . . . .	362
	WILLIAM EWART GLADSTONE. From a photograph (1884) by John Moffat . . . . .	363
	CHARLES DICKENS. After a crayon drawing (1868) by Sol Eytinge, Jr. . . . .	365
	LORD TENNYSON. From a photograph . . . . .	365

LORD MACAULAY. From a photograph (1857) by Claudet . . .	366
EDWARD VII. From a photograph . . . . .	369
LORD DURHAM. From a painting . . . . .	373
SIR HENRY PARKES. From a photograph . . . . .	375
WARREN HASTINGS. From a painting . . . . .	376
CECIL RHODES. From a photograph . . . . .	378
JOSEPH CHAMBERLAIN. From a photograph . . . . .	379

. 366  
. 369  
. 373  
. 375  
. 376  
. 378  
. 379

## MAPS

---

	PAGE
ROMAN BRITAIN . . . . .	8
THE OLDER HOME OF THE ENGLISH RACE . . . . .	14
ALFRED'S BRITAIN, WITH HISTORICAL DETAIL A. D. 449- A. D. 1154 (full-page, colored) . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 26
THE ANGEVIN EMPIRE OF HENRY II. (full-page, colored) <i>Facing</i>	64
HISTORICAL MAP OF SCOTLAND . . . . .	103
FRENCH TERRITORY HELD BY ENGLISH WHEN JOAN OF ARC APPEARED A. D. 1429 . . . . .	134
IRELAND A. D. 1600-A. D. 1900 (full-page, colored) .	<i>Facing</i> 232
ENGLAND AT THE BEGINNING OF THE CIVIL WAR, WITH HISTORICAL DETAIL A. D. 1600-A. D. 1900 (full-page, col- ored) . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 236
EUROPE IN A. D. 1825, WITH HISTORICAL DETAIL A. D. 1500- A. D. 1900 (full-page, colored) . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 328
THE BRITISH EMPIRE . . . . .	371





## IMPORTANT DATES IN ENGLISH HISTORY

### THE ROMANS IN BRITAIN. 55 B. C.-410 A. D.

- 55 B. C. Cæsar first lands in Britain.
- 43 A. D. The Romans begin to settle in Britain.
- 87. Roman forts built from the Forth to the Clyde.
- 121? Roman wall built from the Tyne to the Solway.
- 410. The Romans leave Britain.

### THE SAXONS AND THE DANES. 410-1066

- 449. The Saxons settle on Thanet.
- 597. St. Augustine preaches Christianity in Britain.
- c. 670. Cædmon, the first English poet.
- 735. Bede, the first English historian, dies.
- c. 829. Egbert becomes "King of the English."
- 871-901. Alfred the Great.
- 1013-1042. Danish kings rule.
- 1042-1066. Edward the Confessor.
- 1049. Westminster Abbey begun.
- 1066. Battle of Senlac, or Hastings.

### THE NORMAN PERIOD. 1066-1154

- 1066-1087. **William the Conqueror.**
- c. 1066. Tower of London begun.
- 1086. Domesday Book completed.
- 1087-1130. **William Rufus.**
- 1096. First crusade.
- 1100-1135. **Henry I.**
- 1100. First charter of liberties.
- 1106. Battle of Tinchebrai.
- 1135-1154. **Stephen of Blois.**
- 1135. Charter of liberties.
- 1135-1153. Contest with Matilda.
- 1138. Battle of the Standard (Cowton Moor).

## xviii IMPORTANT DATES IN ENGLISH HISTORY

### THE ANGEVIN, OR PLANTAGENET PERIOD. 1154-1399

- 1154-1189. **Henry II.**  
1160. Payment of scutage.  
1164-1170. Quarrel with à Becket.  
1171. English rule in Ireland begins.  
1189-1199. **Richard I.**  
1189. Grants charters to many towns.  
1190. Becomes a crusader.  
1199-1216. **John.**  
1204. Loses Normandy.  
1208. Quarrel with the church begins.  
1215. Magna Charta is signed.  
1216. War with the barons begins.  
1216-1272. **Henry III.**  
1265. Beginning of the House of Commons.  
1265. Battle of Evesham.  
1272-1307. **Edward I.**  
1284. Conquest of Wales.  
1290. Expulsion of the Jews from England.  
1295. War with Scotland begins.  
1307-1327. **Edward II.**  
1314. Battle of Bannockburn.  
1327-1377. **Edward III.**  
1328. Scotland becomes independent.  
1338. Hundred Years' War begins.  
1346. Battle of Crécy.  
1348-1349. Black Death.  
1356. Battle of Poitiers.  
1377-1399. **Richard II.**  
c. 1380. Wiclif translates the Bible.  
1381. The Peasants' Revolt.

### THE PERIOD OF LANCASTER AND YORK. 1399-1485

- 1399-1413. **Henry IV.**  
1400. Death of Chaucer.  
1400. Welsh rebellion.  
1401. First burning for heresy.  
1403. Battle of Shrewsbury.  
1413-1422. **Henry V.**

# IMPORTANT DATES IN ENGLISH HISTORY xix

- 1415. Battle of Agincourt.
- 1422-1461. **Henry VI.**
- 1429. Siege of Orleans....
- 1453. Hundred Years' War ends.
- 1455. Wars of the Roses begin.
- 1461. Battle of Towton.
- 1461-1483. **Edward IV.**
- 1475. "Benevolences" originated.
- 1477. Caxton introduces printing.
- 1483. **Edward V.**
- 1483-1485. **Richard III.**
- 1485. Battle of Bosworth Field; end of the Wars of the Roses.

## THE TUDOR PERIOD. 1485-1603.

- 1485-1509. **Henry VII.**
- 1486. Unites York and Lancaster by marrying Elizabeth of York.
- 1492. Columbus discovers America.
- 1497. The Cabots sail to America.
- 1509-1547. **Henry VIII.**
- 1513. Battle of Flodden.
- 1516. More publishes "Utopia."
- 1520. Field of the Cloth of Gold.
- 1529. Fall of Wolsey.
- 1534. Independence of the Church of England declared.
- 1536. Seizure of the monasteries begins.
- 1547-1553. **Edward VI.**
- 1549. English Prayer Book adopted.
- 1552. Blue-Coat School established.
- 1553-1558. **Mary.**
- 1553. Lady Jane Grey reigns for twelve days.
- 1558. Loss of Calais.
- 1558-1603. **Elizabeth.**
- 1577. Drake sails around the world.
- 1586? Shakespeare begins to write plays.
- 1587. Execution of Mary, Queen of Scots.
- 1588. Defeat of the Armada.
- 1590. Spenser publishes the "Faerie Queene."
- 1590? Ben Jonson writes.

## XX IMPORTANT DATES IN ENGLISH HISTORY

### THE STUART PERIOD — FIRST PART. 1603-1649

#### 1603-1625. **James I.**

- 1604. Beginning of the struggle with the Puritans.
- 1605. Gunpowder Plot.
- 1611. Translation of the Bible.
- 1618. Execution of Raleigh.
- 1618. Beginning of the 'Thirty Years' War.

#### 1725-1649. **Charles I.**

- 1628. Petition of Right.
- 1628. The assassination of Buckingham.
- 1635. "Ship-money" demanded.
- 1637. English Prayer Book forced upon Scotland
- 1640-1660. Long Parliament.
- 1642. Closing of the theatres.
- 1642. Civil war begins with battle of Edgehill.
- 1643. Solemn League and Covenant.
- 1644. Battle of Marston Moor.
- 1645. Battle of Naseby.
- 1648. "Pride's Purge."
- 1649. Execution of Charles I.

### THE COMMONWEALTH AND PROTECTORATE PERIOD. 1649-1660

- 1649. House of Lords abolished.
- 1649. Charles II. proclaimed king in Scotland.
- 1649-1650. Cromwell's Irish campaign.
- 1651. Battle of Worcester and flight of Charles.
- 1651. Navigation Laws.
- 1653. Cromwell expels Parliament.
- 1653. Barebone's Parliament.
- 1653. Cromwell becomes Lord Protector.
- 1658. The English take Dunkirk.
- 1658. Richard Cromwell becomes Protector.
- 1660. A "free" Parliament called.

### THE STUART PERIOD — SECOND PART. 1660-1714

#### 1660-1685. **Charles II.**

- 1665. The War with Holland.
- 1665. The Great Plague.
- 1666. The Great Fire of London.

# IMPORTANT DATES IN ENGLISH HISTORY xxi

- 1667. Milton publishes "Paradise Lost."
- 1670. Bunyan publishes "Pilgrim's Progress."
- 1670. The Treaty of Dover.
- 1685-1688. **James II.**
- 1685. Monmouth's Rebellion.
- 1688. Imprisonment of the seven bishops.
- 1688. Arrival of William of Orange.
- 1688-1702. **William and Mary.**
- 1689. Bill of Rights.
- 1689. Siege of Londonderry.
- 1690. Battle of the Boyne.
- 1692. Battle of La Hogue.
- 1694. Death of Queen Mary.
- 1695. Increased freedom given to the press.
- 1702-1714. **Anne.**
- 1702. War of the Spanish Succession.
- 1704. Battle of Blenheim.
- 1704. Capture of Gibraltar.
- 1707. Union of England and Scotland.
- 1711. Addison contributes to the "Spectator."

## HANOVERIAN PERIOD. 1714-

- 1714-1727. **George I.**
- 1715. Scotch Jacobites rebel in behalf of the Pretender.
- 1721. The South Sea Bubble.
- 1727-1760. **George II.**
- 1738. Rise of Methodism.
- 1741. War of the Austrian Succession.
- 1743. Battle of Dettingen.
- 1745. Scotch Jacobites rebel in behalf of the Young Pretender.
- 1749. Novel of home life appears.
- 1752. New calendar adopted in England.
- 1756. Seven Years' War.
- 1756. Black Hole of Calcutta.
- 1759. Capture of Quebec.
- 1760-1820. **George III.**
- c. 1760. Johnson and Goldsmith write.
- 1764-1784. Machinery for spinning and weaving invented.
- 1765. Watt invents the steam engine.
- 1775-1783. American Revolution.

## xxii IMPORTANT DATES IN ENGLISH HISTORY

- c. 1786. Burns writes.  
1789. French Revolution.  
1793. War with France.  
1800. Great Britain and Ireland united.  
1812-1814. War with the United States.  
1814. Scott's "Waverley" novels appear.  
1815. The Battle of Waterloo.  
1820-1830. **George IV.**  
1828. Repeal of Corporation Act.  
1828. Repeal of Test Act.  
1829. Catholic Emancipation Act.  
1830-1837. **William IV.**  
1832. Reform in electing members of Parliament.  
1833. First "Factory Act."  
1833. Abolition of slavery in British colonies.  
1837-1901. **Victoria.**  
1840. Opium War.  
1840-1842. The Afghan War.  
1840. Penny postage established.  
1846. Repeal of corn laws begins.  
1848. Chartist agitation.  
1851. The Great Exhibition.  
1854. Crimean War.  
1857. The Indian Mutiny.  
1867. Dominion of Canada constituted.  
1869. Disestablishment of the English Church in Ireland.  
1870. First Irish land bill.  
1877. Victoria proclaimed Empress of India.  
1899-1902. Boer War.  
1901. Australian Commonwealth established.  
1901-. **Edward VII.**  
1903. Irish Land Purchase Bill passed.

## GENEALOGIES

---

	PAGE
THE NORMAN KINGS . . . . .	63
THE ANGEVINS OR PLANTAGENETS . . . . .	122
LINEAGE OF THE ROYAL HOUSES OF LANCASTER, YORK, AND TUDOR . . . . .	154
THE TUDORS . . . . .	210
THE STUARTS . . . . .	288
THE HOUSE OF HANOVER . . . . .	357





# ENGLAND'S STORY

---

## CHAPTER I

### THE ROMANS IN BRITAIN

55 B. C. — 410 A. D.

#### JULIUS CÆSAR

**1. Cæsar resolves to cross to Britain.** About half a century before the birth of Christ, a great Roman general named Julius Cæsar set out to subdue the various tribes living in the country that is now called France. The people nearest to Dover Straits resisted him longest, and he concluded that some one must be helping them. Who could it be? The tribes on three sides of them would not dare to oppose him, and on the fourth side was the ocean.

At last Cæsar conquered these people and went through their land to the sea. Off to the northwest there were dim, white cliffs far out on the horizon. As he stood looking at them, he remembered the aid that had come to his foes from some mysterious source. "That is it," he said to himself, "and if I am to hold the land that I have won, I must conquer that country far off in the ocean."

**2. Cæsar's attempts to learn about Britain.** Probably all that Cæsar knew about the country was that it was thought to be an island, that it was called Britain, and that somewhere in Britain there were mines of tin.

He asked the people whom he had subdued about the land, but they said that they knew nothing of it except that merchants sometimes went back and forth between the two countries. Then Cæsar sent for the merchants.



DOVER CLIFFS

"How large is this island?" he asked. "What kind of people live there? When they go to battle, how do they fight? What weapons do they use?" But no help did the merchants give him, for they said that they went only to the coast of Britain, and that they knew nothing at all about what was inland. Cæsar saw that if he wished to find out anything about this strange land with the white cliffs, he must get his own information; so he sent one of his officers across Dover Straits in a warship to see what could be learned about the country. This officer did not think it was wise to attempt to land; and therefore, when he came back, he had little news to bring to his commander.

3. *Cæsar invades Britain, 55 B. C.* *Cæsar* determined to go to the unknown country to see for himself what kind of place it was, and to conquer these people who had been helping his foes; so one night, just after midnight, he set sail with eight or ten thousand men, and by the middle of the next forenoon they were close to the British coast and ready to land. Landing was not so easy, however, as he had thought it would be;



THE LANDING OF CÆSAR

for the ships were so large that they could not go where the water was shallow; hence the soldiers must jump out into the high waves and wade ashore as best they could. This would have been hard enough to do in any case, for they wore very heavy armor; but worst of all, there were great numbers of men on the shore ready to fight. Some of them were in war-chariots, some were on horseback, and some were on foot. They were armed with lances and battle-axes and clubs and bows and

arrows and great stones. It is no wonder that even the brave Roman soldiers hesitated.

At last the standard-bearer of Cæsar's favorite company sprang overboard and called out: "Follow me, soldiers, unless you wish to give up your eagle!" The soldiers, fearing the disgrace of losing their standard, leaped out into the deep water and made their way to the shore. After a hard fight, the Britons retreated.

**4. Cæsar's description of the Britons.** Cæsar stayed only three weeks; but the next year he went again with more soldiers; and this time he fought his way beyond the Thames. He was writing a book about his campaigns; and, of course, he described this far-away land and its strange inhabitants. Most of the fighters that had met him on the shore had blue eyes and long, light hair. They wore short cloaks of skins; and, in order to make themselves look as terrible as possible, they had stained their bodies with a deep blue dye. These men were so tall and large that when Cæsar looked at them, he could not help wishing that they were in his army. Farther north the Britons lived on their flocks and herds and on the wild animals that they killed, but in the south they knew something of agriculture. Most of **Early houses of the Britons.** their houses were round; and when a man wished to build one, he first marked out on the ground the size that he meant the house to be. Then he set down poles close together and made them firm by weaving in pliant twigs. For the roof he fastened other poles to the top of the first and brought them together in a point. When he meant his house to be especially handsome, he peeled the poles. There were no windows, and the only way for the smoke to get out was through the little hole in the point of the roof.

**5. What the Britons could do.** In spite of their

uncomfortable way of living, the Britons were very fond of ornaments; and they made beads and bracelets and necklaces, some of which are exceedingly pretty. They



WICKER WORK CORACLES OF EARLY BRITONS

knew how to make wagons with wheels, and they were particularly skilful in weaving wicker work. They made very simple boats by hollowing out logs, and very light ones by covering wicker work with the skins of wild beasts; but they also understood how to build boats of planks fastened together by metal nails.

**6. Druidism.** Their religion was called Druidism. It was a fierce, strange belief. Part of it was exceedingly cruel, for the priests, or Druids, taught the people to make wicker-work enclosures outlining the shape of some animal, and in these enclosures to offer up sacrifices of human beings. They took criminals when there were any; but if the supply of criminals failed, they then took innocent persons.

**Cruelty of  
Druidism.**

Part of their religion was very superstitious, for they

worshipped serpents, streams, and trees, especially the oak tree ; and when an oak was found with a mistletoe growing on it, they were overjoyed. **Superstitions of Druidism.** They marched to the tree in a procession, the Druids going first with their long beards and trailing robes. The other people followed, and when they came to the oak tree, they circled around it, the common people farthest off ; for an oak that bore a mistletoe was too holy for any one but a priest to touch. Then the Druids sacrificed two white bulls ; and, after much chanting and many strange ceremonies, one of the priests cut away the plant with a golden knife.

This reverence may have been shown to the mistletoe



STONEHENGE

because of its possessing some medicinal value, for the Druids were doctors as well as teachers and priests. They really knew a great deal about the use of herbs in disease, though they had all sorts of queer notions about gathering them. Sometimes the herbs must be cut by moonlight, and sometimes when the sun was bright,

ly the  
with a  
joyed.  
ession,  
l trail-  
n they  
ommon  
oe was  
en the  
chant-  
ts cut  
stletoe



or the  
priests.  
erhs in  
s about  
cut by  
right,

sometimes the priest who went for them must wear a white robe or go barefooted or cut them with a golden knife.

Some parts of the teaching of the Druids were good; for instance, the people were told not to be afraid to die, since they were going to live forever. They were taught much about the different coun- <sup>What was good in Druidism.</sup> tries of the world, the stars, the cause of night and day and thunder and lightning. The teaching was not very accurate, but it was better than nothing, because it set the people to thinking, and noticing what was around them. On Salisbury Plain in southern Eng- land are massive stones arranged in two circles, one within the other. This place is called Stone- <sup>Stonehenge.</sup> henge, or the Hanging Stones, and it is thought that they may be the remains of a Druid temple.

**7. The Romans at home.** When Cæsar went back to Rome and told of his invasion of Britain, the senate ordered a thanksgiving of twenty days in honor of what they called a glorious victory. The Romans were the greatest nation in the world in those times, though the "world" meant little more than the territory about the Mediterranean Sea. They built handsome temples, they made beautiful statues, and they had great poets and orators and historians. They were fond of good roads, and wherever they went, one could be sure of finding smooth, firm highways. They liked pure water, and they spent large sums of money to bring it into Rome. They were the wisest makers of laws that the world had ever seen. To be a Roman citizen was an honor, and gave a man many privileges. In the days of Saint Paul, when the chief captain bound him and was about to scourge him, the prisoner asked quietly, "Is it <sup>Acts xxii. 25.</sup> lawful for you to scourge a man that is a Ro- man, and uncondemned?" Then the chief captain was





tlement, because the Roman word for *camp* was *castra*. If the modern name of a place ends in *coln*, like *Lincoln*, that, too, is of Roman origin, because the Roman word for *colony* was *colonia*.

The Romans built large, handsome country houses. The walls were beautifully painted, and the floors were paved with marble of many colors. Around these houses were spacious gardens, adorned with statues and rich in all kinds of fruit that could be made to grow on the island. Even to-day, in digging in different parts of England, people often find pieces of statuary and vases, and ornaments of gold or of silver, that were once used to beautify the British homes of the Romans.

Homes  
of the  
Romans.

The conquerors were living in luxury, but the native Britons were obliged to pay enormous taxes to support all this comfort and elegance. Many of them had to work in the mines or on the roads, and to live in little mud hovels. Thousands were made to enter the Roman army, and some few, who were sons of chiefs, learned the Roman language and became officers.

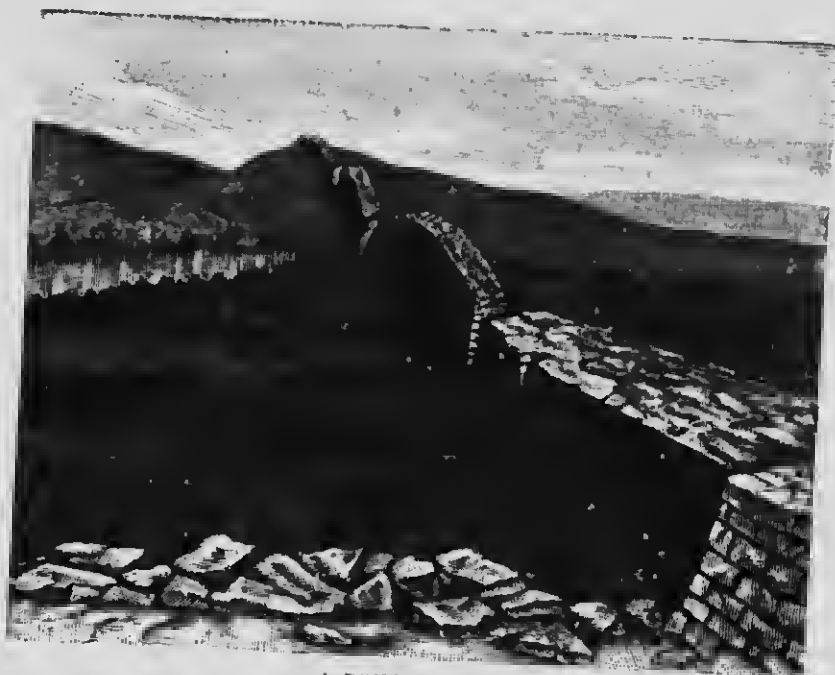
Homes of  
the Britons.

The Romans wished to be able to send troops quickly wherever there was need of them, and so they built two long roads across Britain in the shape of an X, besides several shorter ones. They were often troubled by the attacks of the Scots from the north of Ireland, and the Picts, or "painted people," who lived in what is now Scotland, and also by the coming of the Saxons from Denmark and the countries near it. To shut off the Picts, they built a line of forts across Scotland from the Forth to the Clyde; but before many years they found that they could not defend their possessions so far north, and then they built a solid wall extending from the Tyne to Solway Firth. On this wall

Roman  
roads and  
forts.

there were stone strongholds and watchtowers, and once in every four miles there was a fort where soldiers were always stationed. To keep away the Danes, there was a whole line of forts built, extending around the southeastern coast of Britain.

9. **The Romans leave Britain in 410 A. D.** If the Romans could have given all their attention to Britain,



A ROMAN WALL

they would have been able to overcome the whole island, but there was trouble in Rome. The barbarous tribes that lived to the north and east were pressing nearer and nearer to the city, and the Romans must defend their own country. Every year fewer Romans came to Britain, and every year some of the conquerors had to return to Italy. At last, in 410, soldiers and commanders departed from the island, and never again did they set foot on British soil.

While the Romans had been in Britain, the conquered people had learned from them much that was good. They had learned how to make excellent roads and how to drain the swamps. They had seen that houses could be built that would be far more comfortable than huts of poles. They had found that it was not enough for soldiers to be brave and fearless; they must also be drilled and know how to obey their commander, so that an army could be managed as if it were a great machine. The most valuable thing of all that they had learned, however, was that there were other people in the world who knew more than they, and other ways of living that were better than theirs.

Gain from  
the Roman  
rule.

With this gain there was also a loss, for many of them had begun to feel that the way to be happy was to live in luxurious houses and be waited upon by slaves instead of working for themselves. Then in their fighting, although they were just as brave as ever, they had become accustomed to thinking that their leaders must be Romans; and when, a few years later, the time came that they must both fight and lead, they felt helpless and wished that the Romans were with them again.

Loss from  
the Roman  
rule.

### SUMMARY

Julius Cæsar first led the Romans into Britain. He found a people that were warlike, of some mechanical ability, and with a slight knowledge of agriculture. Rome celebrated the invasion, but made no immediate attempts to conquer the country.

One century later, the Romans subdued Britain as far north as the Solway, made settlements, and ruled in the land for nearly four hundred years. Their dominion may be traced by remains of roads, walls, and villas, and by the presence of a few Roman words in the English language.

## CHAPTER II

### THE SAXONS AND THE DANES

410-1066

10. **The Saxon Conquest.** After the Romans had gone, matters grew worse and worse with the Britons, for the Scots and Picts were coming down upon them from the north and northwest, and the Saxons were coming from over the sea and landing on the eastern and southern shores. These marauders burned the houses and crops, stole the treasures, and either killed the people or carried them away as slaves. At last the sufferers sent a piteous letter to Rome. "The Groans of the Britons." It was called "The Groans of the Britons," and it begged that the Romans would come and help them. "The barbarians," it said, "drive us to the sea, the sea drives us back to the barbarians; and between them we are either slain or drowned." There were other barbarians, however, than those that distressed Britain, and now great hordes of them were coming down upon Rome, so that the Romans had more than they could do to take care of themselves, and not one soldier could be spared to help the poor Britons. What should the distressed people do?

The chief men met together and talked it over. At last one of them said:—

"The Romans do not help us, and there is no one else to call upon. The Saxons are stronger than the Scots

and Picts. Let us, then, ask the Saxons to come over and fight for us. We can give them the island of Thanet for their home, and we shall be free from the robbers of the north."

The appeal  
to the  
Saxons.

The strangers were invited to come. They came, they drove away the Scots and Picts, and they settled on Thanet. Before long, they found Thanet too small, so they drove the Britons away from the southeastern corner of the land, and took it for themselves. More and more of the Saxons came, and farther and farther to the west were the Britons driven. They were not cowards, and they resisted so valiantly that it was more than one hundred years before they were really overcome. Tennyson's "Idylls of the King" tell of the King Arthur who stood so boldly against the invaders. The end of it was, however, that most of the Britons were killed or else became slaves, while the few who escaped had to flee to the mountains

The Saxons  
come in  
449.



ANCIENT JUTISH BOAT

Found buried in a peat bog in Nydam, South Jutland.

of Wales to save their lives. Britain was in the hands of the Saxons.

11. **The Saxons on the continent.** These new conquerors had lived in Jutland and about the mouth of the Elbe River. They were called Saxons, Angles, and Jutes, but the Britons spoke of them all as Saxons, perhaps because the short, broad knife that they carried in battle was called a *sax*. Savage as they were with the Britons, the Saxons had many good traits. They were brave and warlike on land and sea. They had so much respect for women that when, in their earliest poem, a wicked woman is intro-

Character  
of the  
Saxons.



THE OLDER HOME OF THE ENGLISH RACE

duced, the author speaks of her as if he were greatly surprised that a woman should be evil. They cultivated the ground, lived on simple food, and were always ready to share whatever they had with any one who came to be their guest. They were not willing to live in cities, but wished every family to have a house with some land around it. Their leaders never told them what they must do, but they all met in the open air and talked over

what was best; then they decided the question by voting. They worshipped many gods, and among them were the seven from whom the days of the week are named, —the sun, the moon, Tui, Woden, Thor, Frea, Seotre. Our word *Easter* comes from their *Eostre*, who was the goddess of spring.

Before the Saxons came to Britain, they composed an epic poem called *Beowulf*. The story of it is that a certain king had built a hall for his dwelling-  
place and that of the brave men who stood by his side in battle. At one end of the hall was a raised platform, where the lord and his family and his most honored thegns, or nobles, sat at feasts. Two long lines of pillars went the length of this hall. Between them were stone hearths, where the meat was cooked in the blazing fires. On either side of the hearths were tables for the other thegns, and beyond the tables, perhaps separated from them by tapestry, were places for the men to sleep.

*Beowulf*,  
the old  
Saxon  
poem.

In this great hall they ate and drank, and listened to harpers, who sang to them of the great deeds of the heroes of their race. The wife and the daughters of the lord often came in and passed the mead to the thegns; and when one had been especially brave, a great honor was shown him, for the wife of his lord put a golden necklace around his neck or a heavy golden bracelet on his arm, or she gave him a sword with some magic letters called runes engraved on it, and these were sure to bring him success in battle.

They would have felt very happy in this hall, had it not been that sometimes at night a fearful monster named Grendel came stalking through the mists and stole away some of the thegns to devour them. No sword could wound him; whoever vanquished Grendel must over-

come him by main force. The old king and the thegns were in despair, when the brave young hero Beowulf appeared. He killed both this monster and another one



SAXON BUILDINGS

The hall in the middle, the church on the right. The nobleman and his wife are distributing alms to the poor.

that came to avenge the first, and so gave peace and happiness to the king and his thegns. Beowulf was loaded down with rich presents, and he went home in triumph with his men. Many years later, Beowulf was killed in an encounter with a fire-breathing dragon that had hidden away in a cave a great quantity of gold and silver, together with swords and chains and bracelets and necklaces.

This poem was not written until perhaps four hundred years after it was composed. One harper would sing it, and then another would sing it as he remembered it, putting in new lines whenever he forgot, and adding to the story wherever he thought that he could improve it.



Finally, the poem was written, and one of the manuscripts chanced to be saved.

**12. Christianity is preached in England.** The Britons had known something of Christianity long before this; but after the Saxons came, there was so little of it left in the country that people spoke of the island as a heathen land. There were Christians hidden away in the mountains of Wales; and in Ireland an eager missionary called Saint Patrick had told the Irish of Christianity, and they had flourishing churches and famous schools, while England was worshipping the heathen gods. The country was not entirely forsaken, however, for far away, over the sea and over the mountains, was a monk named Gregory, who was thinking about the needs of this land very earnestly. One day he had seen in the market-place in Rome some young Saxons who were to be sold as slaves. Most of the Romans had dark complexions, and these Saxons, with their fair skin, red cheeks, blue eyes, and golden hair, seemed to him as beautiful as angels. This monk finally became pope, and then he could carry out his wish that the Saxons should know Christianity. He himself could not go away from Rome, but in 597 he sent an earnest missionary named Augustine to preach the gospel to them.

597. Pope  
Gregory  
sends Saint  
Augustine  
to England.

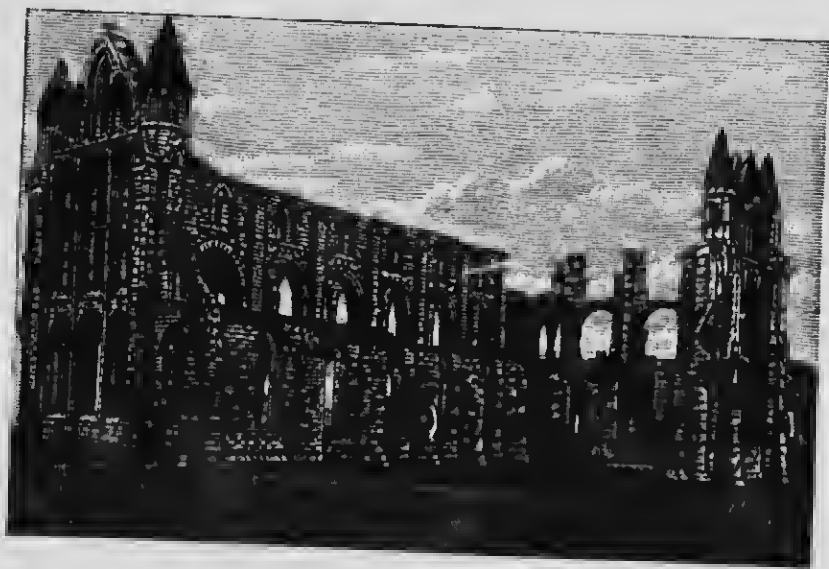
The king of Kent had a Christian wife, and so did not object to Saint Augustine's coming to England; at least, he was willing that the missionaries should land on Thanet. "Then," he said, "I will meet you there, and hear what you have to say about this new religion, and if it seems to me to be true, I will accept it."

The king thought that these strangers might possibly practise magic, and for fear of evil spirits he had the assembly in the open air, where demons would have less

power than in a house. Saint Augustine and the others came to the place of meeting. A beautiful silver cross was borne first, gleaming in the sunlight, and a picture, or image, of Christ. Then came the missionaries chanting the litany. The king watched and listened intently, but said nothing. The strangers offered up prayers for themselves and for the people whom they were so eager to teach, and then Saint Augustine stood before the king and told him about the religion of the one God. The Saxons were never hasty in accepting any new ideas, and the king went home to think about the matter. It was not long before he told Saint Augustine that he believed the new religion was true, and that he was glad to have the missionaries teach his people about it.

The king of  
Kent  
accepts  
Christian-  
ity.

13. Cædmon, the first English poet. About 670. Churches and convents soon began to rise in the land. One of these convents was on a cliff at Whitby, far up



THE RUINS OF WHITBY ABBEY

on the northeast shore of England. It was the custom at the feasts for each one in turn to take the harp and sing verses that he either composed or remembered. There is a legend that Cædmon, one of the dwellers at this convent, felt so disgraced because he could not sing any verses that, when the harp was coming near him, he slipped away and went to the stable. In a dream he heard a voice saying:—

"Cædmon, sing!"

"But I cannot sing," he said, "and that is why I came away from the feast."

"You must sing for me," said the voice.

"What shall I sing?" asked Cædmon.

"Sing about the creation of the world," answered the voice.

Cædmon sang, and, when he awoke, he found that he had not forgotten the verses. The abbess was told of the wonderful dream; and, after Cædmon had made more verses, she concluded that the new power that had come to him was a gift from God. His poem is about the creation, and is a kind of paraphrase of the Book of Genesis. This is, so far as we know, the first poetry that was written in England.

14. **The Venerable Bede, the first writer of English prose. 673-735.** For the first prose we must turn to another convent and to a monk whose name was Bede. He must have been one of the busiest of people, for this convent was also a great school. There were six hundred monks, and no one knows how many other men who came there to study. Bede helped to teach these men; he performed all the religious duties that belonged to a monk, and he also shared in the work of the farm. He says that he enjoyed winnowing and threshing, and giving milk to the little lambs and to the calves. With

all this work, he found time to write much poetry, and many volumes about science, music, and medicine. At length the king of Northumbria asked him if he would not write a history of the church in England, and so it came to pass that he wrote the "Ecclesiastical History." It is almost the only book that tells us



THRESHING AND WINNOWING

about the early days of Britain, and we have to select from this what is probably true, and what was only hearsay among a people who were ready to believe anything, if it was only wonderful enough. This is the book that says there are no snakes in Ireland, and it goes further, for it says that the smell of the air kills them, and that, if a person bitten by a serpent will only swallow a few scrapings from an Irish book, he will be cured.

As Latin was the language of the church and of the convent, Bede naturally wrote in Latin; but he wished to put the Bible into English so that the uneducated people might understand it. He worked on this translation till the last day of his life, dictating the Gospel of Saint John to one of his pupils. At last, when evening came, he closed his eyes in weariness. The young man said:—

"There is one sentence to write, dear master."

**The first  
English  
prose.**

"Take your pen and write quickly," said Bede.

"Now it is finished," said the pupil.

"Yes, it is finished," said Bede. He chanted a few words of praise to God and closed his eyes. This pupil is the one that tells us the story, and we may believe it to be true. It is a great pity that the translation has been lost, for it was the first piece of prose that was written in England.

Bede is often spoken of as the Venerable Bede. "Venerable" is a title of honor not quite so high as that of "saint." It was probably bestowed upon him some time after his death, but there is a legend that, when he was old, he became blind, and had a boy to lead him about. This boy was full of mischief, and one day he led Bede into a desert place, and asked him to preach to a great crowd waiting to hear him. Bede preached, and at the end of the sermon the naughty boy was badly frightened to hear all the stones cry out, "Amen, Venerable Bede! amen."

The title  
"Ven-  
erable."

15. Egbert, "King of the English." 829. In Bede's time England was divided into several districts. At the head of each was a king, or chief, and every one was trying to get more power than the others. This struggle went on for nearly a century after Bede's death, but at last, about 829, a king named Egbert, who lived in Wessex, in southern England, showed himself stronger than the rest, and one by one the others acknowledged him as overlord; that is, they paid tribute to him, and promised to obey if he called upon them to help him fight. He took the title of "King of the English," and, with a very few exceptions, every sovereign of England from that day to this has been a descendant of Egbert.

England was more nearly united than ever before. More churches and convents were built. These were

held sacred, and in all the quarrels that had arisen among the various kings, their property had never been touched. Not only did they have vessels of gold and of silver, and finely wrought lamps and censers swinging by golden chains, and jewels and embroidered vestments and beautiful tapestries, and altars covered with plates of gold ; but they had, too, treasures of quite another kind, hundreds and hundreds of manuscripts, written on parchment by the monks, for these convents were also schools, and every one of them had its "book-room." There the patient monks and their pupils sat day after day copying books, letter by letter, and painting ornamental capitals in most brilliant colors.

**16. The invasions of the Danes.** It was chiefly because of the riches of these convents that trouble was again to come to England. The land had been overrun, first by Romans, then by Saxons, and it began to seem now as if foreigners were to sweep over it for the third time. These foreigners are usually spoken of as Danes, though the name included those who lived not only in Denmark, but anywhere in the vicinity of the Baltic Sea. The Saxons and Danes were of the same race, but while the Saxons had become Christians, the Danes still worshipped the heathen gods ; and while the Saxons had learned to live peaceably on the land, the Danes thought that nothing else was half so glorious as to set out in a little boat with a company of wild, reckless followers, to go wherever the waves and the winds might bear them ; to land upon any shore, no matter where ; to destroy, burn, kill, fill their boats with treasure, with slaves, clothes, dried meat, — anything that they could seize, — and carry it all back to Denmark, to show how brave they had been. It was a custom among them that one of a man's sons should remain at

Wealth of  
the con-  
vents.

Character  
of the  
Danes.

home to care for the possessions of the family ; and the others always pitied this brother, who was doomed to lose the wild adventure that seemed to them the only



THE COMING OF THE DANES

kind of life worth having. They believed that the man who died in peace would go to the land of the forgotten, but that he who died fighting boldly in battle would go to a beautiful place called Valhalla ; **Valhalla.** and there he would fight all day, be healed of his wounds at sunset, and feast with other heroes all night.

These were the people who now came down upon England. The more stormy the sea was, the better they liked it. They landed in the darkness, stole silently up the rivers, and, with a wild cry to the heathen gods, burst upon a convent or an unsuspecting little village before the people were fairly awake. Some of the victims were killed at their thresholds, some even in their beds ;

and the robbers floated jubilantly down the stream, singing wild songs of victory, and returned to Denmark in boats loaded to the gunwale with booty.

King Egbert was able to drive these robbers away, and so was his son after him; but in the reigns of Egbert's

**Wretched-  
ness of  
England.**

four grandsons, matters grew worse and worse for the Danes came in great swarms. There would be an alarm from the east, and before the king could go to the rescue, another alarm would come from the south. Houses were burned, people tortured or killed or taken to Denmark as slaves. If a man planted a field of grain, he had little hope of being able to reap it. Churches and convents were pillaged and burned. Everything that was made of gold or of silver the robbers carried away. The precious manuscripts were of no value to them, and they took special care to burn every one that they could find, because they believed that the mysterious letters were magical signs that would work them harm if they were not destroyed.

**17. Reign of Alfred the Great. 871-901.** The fourth of the grandsons of Egbert was a young man named Alfred, who was only twenty-two years of age when he became king. He was a great favorite among his people, but they were too wretched to have any rejoicing when he came to the throne. The only change was that he led the army alone instead of with his brother, and was called king instead of prince.

Faster and faster came the Danes. Alfred fought them bravely, but their forces were too strong. The whole land was overrun, and Alfred could no longer remain on the throne. As people looked at matters then, he would not have been blamed if he had left the kingdom to take care of itself and had gone to Rome for the rest of his life, but he had no idea

**Alfred is  
driven from  
the throne.**



of abandoning his country. He withdrew to a swampy part of England, and waited, training his men, and planning how to get the better of the enemy.

There is a story that Alfred once had to take refuge in the hut of a herdsman. The herdsman's wife did not know who the stranger was, and told him one day to watch the cakes that were cooking before the fire. He was so busy thinking that he forgot all about the cakes, and the woman said, angrily, "You are ready enough to eat them, but you are too lazy to turn them." Another story is that when he wanted to know how many men were in a Danish camp, he disguised himself as a minstrel and went boldly among the Danes. There he played and sang and amused his enemies until he had found out what he wished to know.

By and by, Alfred had gathered men enough to attack the invaders, and then came a fierce battle. The Danes were thoroughly beaten. They agreed to remain in the northeastern half of England and to acknowledge the English king as their overlord. Surrender  
of the  
Danes. The Danish word for "town" is *by*, and there are to-day many more towns whose names end in *by* in northeastern England than in the parts of the island where the English lived.

To free his kingdom from these robbers would have been enough for one king to do; but Alfred meant to accomplish a great deal more. First of all, he built forts and ships, for he did not feel sure Alfred's  
work for  
his king-  
dom. that the Danes would not come upon him again. Then he built churches and convents. He sent to different places where there were learned men, and offered them rich rewards if they would come to England and teach his people. There was great need of their instruction, for during the years of trouble with the Danes no

one had had any thought of studying. Even the priest when reading the service of the church, merely pronounced the Latin words without being able to translate them into English.

It was Alfred's wish that the young people of his kingdom should learn to read English, and that those who could afford to study longer should learn to read Latin; but there were few who could spare the time to study Latin, and, as far as we know, there were only two or three books written in English, so this busy king set to work to translate some Latin books. One of them was the "Ecclesiastical History" that Bede had written two hundred years earlier. Another was a kind of history and geography of the world. Alfred did more than merely to translate; for he never forgot that he was working for his people, and if he came to anything that they would not understand, he stopped and wrote a word of explanation. This geography was five hundred years old, and whenever Alfred knew more about a place than the author, he would add his own information; for instance, the geography describes Sweden, but Alfred had just talked with a captain who had made a voyage to the North Cape, and he wrote the captain's story in his book. Longfellow's poem, "The Discoverer of the North Cape," tells what this captain related to his king.

Another famous book, the "Anglo-Saxon Chronicle," was begun in Alfred's reign. It brought together all that could be learned of the chief events that had happened in England from the earliest times, and it is thought that Alfred himself wrote the accounts of some of his battles. The monks had charge of the book, and whenever anything happened in the kingdom, they wrote the story of it in the "Chronicle." This writing was kept up for two hundred and fifty years after Alfred's death.

Alfred as a translator.

The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.

the priests,  
merely pro-  
to translate

of his king-  
those who  
earn to read  
and spare the  
there were  
to this busy  
s. One of  
Bede had  
was a kind  
and did more  
that he was  
thing that  
I wrote a  
e hundred  
ut a place  
tion; for  
t Alfred  
voyage to  
ry in his  
ne North

ronicle,"  
ether all  
nts that  
earliest  
himself  
monks  
ppened  
Chron-  
nd fifty





Alfred revised the laws of the land. He was just that when a man was in the right, he always referred to have his case tried before the king.

He wished to give to God half his money and half his time, but there were no clocks, and how to measure the time was a question. At last it occurred to him to make six candles that would burn for four hours each. Then he divided each one into twelve spaces, and when the candle had burned one of those spaces, he knew that twenty minutes had passed. To keep the candles from draughts, he surrounded them with plates of horn, and so made lanterns.

Alfred  
measures  
the time.

King Alfred died in 901. He had saved his land from the Danes, he had given her a just code of laws, he had begun the English navy, he had built churches, convents, and forts, had opened schools and translated books. No other king in the history of the world has ever done so much for his country. He may well be called Alfred the Great.

Death of  
Alfred.  
901.

**18. Danish kings of England.** Alfred left worthy sons and grandsons, but the power of the Danes increased. In a little more than one hundred years after his death, the English king was forced to flee to France with his wife Emma and his two little boys; and a Dane whose name was Sweyne sat on the throne of England. Sweyne soon died, and his son Canute became king.

Canute exiled or killed the Englishmen who had any claim to the crown or who were likely to oppose him; but after he was safely on the throne, he became a king of whom the English were very fond. He was kind and just; he rewarded right and punished wrong; and he was willing to suffer when he himself had done wrong. In a sudden passion he killed a soldier, but instead of trying to excuse himself, he called

Rule of  
Canute.

his troops together and told them what he had done. Then he appointed judges and demanded that they should decide upon his punishment. They were not willing to do this, and asked him to name his own penalty. In those days, killing a man unintentionally was punished by a fine of forty talents of silver. Canute said that he should fine himself three hundred and sixty, and should add to this amount nine talents of gold.

Of course so upright a king was praised by all around, and it is a wonder that he had any common sense left.

*Canute on  
the sea-  
shore.*

There is a story that his courtiers told him he was lord of land and sea, and even the waves would obey him. To teach them a lesson, he had his royal chair placed on the beach when the tide was rising. Then the king made a little speech: "Ocean," said he, "this is my island, and you, too, are only a part of my domain. I command you not to wet even the border of my robe."

Nearer and nearer came the waves, while around the king's chair stood the courtiers, wondering what would happen, and fearing lest their ruler should punish them for their untruthfulness. At last a wave broke upon the sacred person of the king. Then he turned to his courtiers and said gently: "Do not forget that the power of kings is a small matter. He who is King of kings and Lord of lords, he is the one whom the earth and the sea and the heavens obey."

Although Canute was a Dane, he was very kind to his English subjects, and when he went on a pilgrimage to Rome, he wrote them a pleasant letter, telling them in a friendly, familiar way of the great personages whom he had met in his travels, and bidding his officers treat the people fairly, making no difference for wealth or rank. He seemed to prefer to

*Canute and  
the Eng-  
lish.*

had done.  
that they  
e not will-  
a penalty.  
punished  
said that  
xty, and

around,  
ense left.  
old him  
ne waves  
sson, he  
the tide  
Ocean,"  
y a part  
the bor-

and the  
would  
n them  
oon the  
s cour-  
wer of  
s and  
nd the

to his  
ge to  
elling  
great  
avels,  
ng no  
er to

put English rather than Danes into office. He ruled not only over the English realm but also over the Danish, and when he went to Denmark, he left not a Dane, but an Englishman to rule England in his place. He acted as if he wished to show all the kindness to Englishmen that he could to make up for the injuries that his ancestors had done to the land. One of his special favorites was a young Englishman named God-<sup>Earl Godwin.</sup>win. There is a story that while the fighting between Danes and English was still going on, a brother-in-law of Canute lost his way. He met this young lad and offered him a gold ring to lead him to his Danish friends. "Keep your ring," said the boy bluntly, "until you see whether I can do it or not. The English hate the Danes, and I may not succeed." He took the man home with him. They mounted two horses, and after riding all night, the lost Dane was once more among his friends. Afterwards he adopted the boy as his own son. Canute, too, became very fond of him and gave him the title of Earl of Wessex; and it was this Earl Godwin whom he left ruler of England when he went to visit Denmark.

Canute married Emma, widow of the king who had fled at his coming. She left her two boys in Normandy when she returned to England, and never <sup>Canute's wife.</sup>seemed to care anything for them.

When Canute died, every one was sorry, especially as his sons were not worthy of so good a father. They reigned, however, for a few years, first one son <sup>Canute's sons.</sup>and then the other, but the English were more and more displeased with their injustice and cruelty, and when they died, no one mourned. They were the last kings that ruled over both England and Denmark.

19. **Edward the Confessor.** The English began to

wish to have an Englishman again on the throne, and they chose Edward, son of Emma and the king who had fled to Normandy. This Edward was a middle-aged man, and, since he had lived in France from his boyhood, it is probable that he could not speak a word of English; but, as he was a good man and a descendant of the royal line, the English invited him to be their king, and when he came to them, they gave him a hearty welcome.

### SUMMARY

At the request of the Britons, the Saxons drove away the barbarians of the north. Soon they killed or expelled the Britons also and seized the land for themselves. They finally accepted Christianity, but the rapid spread of civilization was arrested by the ravages of the Danes. Alfred the Great restored the land to peace and safety, but after his death the Danish power increased so that for a time England was ruled by Danish kings.

The Saxons probably brought the poem of "Beowulf" from the continent. The first literature composed on English soil was the work of Cædmon, Bede, and Alfred the Great.



## CHAPTER III

### THE NORMANS

1066-1154

#### I. WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR. 1066-1087

20. **Edward's plan to bequeath his crown.** Edward was so good a man that people called him "the Confessor," and many of them believed that any one suffering with scrofula would be cured at once if he could only touch the hand of the sovereign. Edward seemed to think that a king could leave his crown to any one that he chose. He had a young kinsman across the water, one William, Duke of Normandy, from whose father and grandfather he had received much kindness; and once when the young man came to pay a visit to England, the English king had promised to bequeath him the kingdom.

The only man in England that was powerful enough to dispute this claim was Harold, son of Earl Godwin. It came to pass that Harold was wrecked on the Norman coast, and so fell into William's **Harold's shipwreck.** hands. The duke treated him as an honored guest, but asked him to swear on the bones of one of the saints that he would help him to become king of England at Edward's death. Earl Harold was sure that if he refused he would be thrown into the dungeon of the castle and kept there till he died. Then, too, people thought that it was not a very great sin to break an oath

sworn on the relics of one of the lesser saints, since a man could give generous offerings to the shrines of other and greater saints to make up for it. Harold took the oath. Then the embroidered cloth on which the bones lay was lifted, and the earl was horrified to find that under it were the relics of the greatest saints of Normandy, and



HAROLD SWEARS ON THE RELICS, FROM THE BAYEUX TAPESTRY  
William sitting in state to the left: Harold between the reliquary which contains the holy relics, and the altar, taking oath.

that upon these he had sworn. He returned to England, and for many years he was a greater power than the king.

Edward came to see that a king of England could not give away his crown, especially to a foreigner; and when he died, he recommended the people to choose Harold for their sovereign, since the only living son of the royal family was a boy too young to rule. The earl had decided that an oath not taken of his own free will was no oath at all, and he accepted the crown.

21. William of Normandy makes ready to invade England. When Duke William heard of this, he was

[1042-1066]

nce a man  
other and  
the oath.  
s lay was  
under it  
andy, and



STRY  
contains the

England,  
han the

ould not  
d when  
choosc  
y living  
e. The  
own free  
o.  
invade  
he was

1066]

## THE NORMANS

33

very indignant. He collected a great force of men and ships, off the coast of Normandy, and there he waited week after week for the south wind that should blow them across the English Channel to the shores of England. At last the favorable breeze came, but just as they were ready to set sail, a strange warship, much larger and finer than the others, came into the harbor. At the prow was the gilded figure of a boy pointing forward with one hand and holding an ivory horn to his lips with the other. The ship came nearer, and on board was the duke's wife, the Duchess Matilda, for she had had the beautiful vessel built secretly as a gift to her husband. She named it the Mora, or the Delay, because he had been so long delayed while waiting for the wind. William took the Mora for his flagship,

*The Mora.*



WILLIAM SAILS TO ENGLAND, FROM THE BAYEUX TAPESTRY

and high up on the masthead he unfurled the banner that the Pope had blessed and sent him long before to be used in this expedition.

The fleet sailed. There were several hundred ships

besides many transports, but it is probable that none of them could carry more than forty or fifty men. **The voyage.** Along the gunwales the shields of the soldiers were arranged, and these kept off some of the spray; but there were no decks, and the ships must have been wet, uncomfortable places. Nevertheless, they carried horses as well as men, quantities of arms and provisions, and timber already cut and shaped to be made into a wooden fort.

**22. William lands in England.** The next day after William sailed, he landed on the coast of England at Pevensey, not far from Hastings. He leaped ashore so eagerly that he fell headlong. The soldiers were frightened, because they believed that this fall was a bad omen; but the duke was too quick-witted to be taken aback so easily. It was a custom among the Normans in granting a man land to give him a twig and a bit of turf to signify that the land was his. This gift **"seizin."** was called "seizin," and William clutched a handful of turf, sprang to his feet, and shouted: "No bad omen is this; I am only taking seizin of the land that is rightfully my own."

Not a ship had been on the sea to prevent their coming, not a soldier was on the coast to oppose their landing. One reason was that Harold's fleet was **The lack of opposition.** made up chiefly of fishing vessels, and his army was made up chiefly of men who were not only soldiers but farmers. When these people had served a certain length of time, they were allowed to go home that the fishermen might attend to their fishing and the farmers to their farming; and they could not be brought together again without some delay. In the standing army there were only a few men, and Harold had been obliged to call these to the north of England to repel an invasion of

the Danes, headed by one of his own brothers, who hoped to win the kingdom for himself. Harold hastened to the south, but before he could reach London, William had landed, had put up his fort, and had begun to pillage the country in all directions.

**23. Battle of Senlac, or Hastings, 1066.** Then came the great battle of Senlac, or Hastings, October 14, 1066. Harold had arranged his soldiers on the hill-side behind a barricade of wooden stakes, firmly bound together and strengthened with wattles, or pliant twigs. Some of his men were well armed and protected by coats of mail, but many had no armor and only such weapons as



BATTLE OF SENLAC, FROM THE BAYEUX TAPESTRY

Normans on horseback, Saxons on foot.

each one could find for himself. Early in the morning the fighting began. Hour after hour the battle went on. The Normans charged up the hill again and again, but the English repulsed their attacks. Then William ordered his men to shoot up into the air so that the arrows would fall upon the English. Many were slain, and Harold himself was struck in the eye.

The Normans had better arms and better military training, but the English had the better position. It began to be clear to William that **Norman strategy.** strategy as well as valor was needed to win the victory. Before the battle began, Harold had said to his men, "We are not the invaders, we are here to defend the land. Let no man go forth to make an attack, but let each one stand firm in his place and strike down every Frenchman that comes within his reach." If this order had been obeyed, it is probable that the English would have won the day; but when the Normans pretended to retreat, some of the English forgot that a soldier must be obedient as well as brave, and dashed after their foes. Suddenly the Normans turned and cut down their pursuers. The barricade had been broken through. Nightfall came, Harold had been slain, and William had conquered.<sup>1</sup>

**24. William's election.** William was wise enough not to claim to be king just because he had won this battle. He called together the assembly of the chief men of England and asked if they would choose him as their ruler. Whether they wished to do so or not, they were not strong enough to refuse. He was appointed king, and on Christmas Day a most brilliant assemblage of English and Normans met in Westminster Abbey, which Edward the Confessor had built and where he was buried, and there they crowned William, Duke of Normandy, as king of England.

**25. The Bayeux tapestry.** In the town of Bayeux in France is a piece of embroidery called the Bayeux tapestry. It is a strip of linen about two feet wide and seventy yards long. It is possible that Matilda, wife of King William, embroidered this with the aid of the ladies

<sup>1</sup> The order of events as given by Creasy is followed.

of her court. It tells in Latin inscriptions and in pictures worked in worsted cross-stitch the whole story of the conquest, from Harold's coming to Normandy to the battle of Senlac. The pictures are such as a little child would draw, but it was probably looked upon as a wonderful piece of work.

**26. Feudalism.** In those days people believed in feudalism, that is, they thought that all the land of a



WESTMINSTER ABBEY IN THE DAYS OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR, AS REPRESENTED ON THE BAYEUX TAPESTRY

country belonged to the king, and that he had a right to give it to **any** one that he chose. The one who received it was required to pay a certain amount of money and to provide a certain number of soldiers to serve so many days every year. Bareheaded and without weapons he must kneel before the king, and placing his folded hands within those of his fendal chief, he must solemnly swear: "I will be your man with life and limb, and I will keep my faith and loyalty to you for life and death." Then the king would give him a formal kiss of acceptance.

Each one of those who swore loyalty to the king in this way had a number of men who swore in similar fashion to him, and if one proved to be unfaithful, his land was taken away and given to some one else.

Many of the English promised to be true to William, paid a fine, and received their land again from him; but there were others who did not, and their holdings fell into the hands of the king. He could, of course, claim the lands of those that had fought at Senlac, and these forfeitures gave him vast areas to distribute among the French who had come with him and had helped to conquer the country. He was very shrewd in this distribution, however, and with the exception of his half-brother Robert, there was not one of all his barons whom he would trust with much land in any one district, lest he should become strong enough to rebel against him.

**27. William's keenness.** He was mercilessly severe to those who opposed him, but for those who were true to him he thought no rewards too great. Even the "Anglo-Saxon Chronicle" says that he was a just man. He always seemed to know exactly what to do in difficult circumstances; for instance, the English in their anger and despair assassinated many Normans, and then made their bodies appear like those of Saxons. William straightway made a law that any dead body found in the woods should be regarded as that of a Norman, unless two English men and two English women would swear that it was the body of a near relative of theirs. If four such witnesses could not be found, the whole district had to pay a large sum of money as penalty for the murder of a Norman.

Another decision that showed William's quickness of thought was in the case of his half-brother Odo, a bishop whom he had made Earl of Kent. When the king went



to visit his domain in Normandy, the English people were left in the power of Odo, and were treated so harshly that, when William returned, he was very angry, and arrested his brother. The bishop protested, and said that a clergyman was free from all penalties except those imposed by the church; but William would not yield. "Bishop and brother I would gladly let go," said he; "but the Earl of Kent, who has abused my people, he goes into my prison," — and into the prison he went.

**28. English grievances.** While the English admitted that William was just, and that he gave peace to the land, he did several things that seemed to them most tyrannical. Even in Edward's reign many of the chief offices in church and state had been held by Frenchmen, and now under William there was hardly an Englishman in a high position anywhere in the land. **Normans in office.** This was very hard to bear, especially as the Norman masters often looked upon the English as their inferiors and treated them cruelly and insolently; but there is something to be said on William's side, for a king would naturally prefer to have as his officers men of his own nation who could talk with him in his own language. There is a tradition that he tried to learn to speak English, but found it easier to conquer the land than to learn the language.

These Normans who were in power were allowed to build stone castles with walls enormously thick, so that they might be safe against any revolt of the **Norman natives.** The strongest part of these castles **castles.** was called the tower, or keep, and here the Norman and his family lived. On the main floor was the hall, or general living room. The windows were small, and the castle was often a cold, damp place, but in the hall there were great cheery fires, there was tapestry on the walls,

and here the family were very comfortable. Down below the hall were gloomy dungeons, where a noble might throw any one who had offended him and was less strong than he. Around the tower was a courtyard, shut



A NORMAN CASTLE KEEP, ROCHESTER CASTLE<sup>1</sup>

in by a thick wall with a moat and drawbridge, and a heavy portcullis that could be dropped in a moment if there was not time to close the gate.

**The Tower  
of London.**

<sup>1</sup> This is called by Professor Freeman the noblest example of Norman military architecture of the next generation after William I.

William had these castles built in the principal cities, and the Tower of London is one of them.

There were three of William's laws that made the English especially angry. One was called the curfew law. The name comes from the French *couver-feu*, to cover the fire, and the law decreed that at a certain hour in the evening, every fire should be covered and every light put out. This was an old custom in France to prevent the burning of houses, but it was new to the English, and they felt that it was nothing but tyranny.

**The Curfew Law.**

Another thing that made them angry was the establishing of the New Forest, as it was called. For this, William cleared a tract of sixty thousand acres not far from his palace in Winchester, burning the houses and leaving the people to find homes as best they could. For whatever reason he may have done it, the English felt sure that it was because of his wish to have a good hunting ground near his home; and they were the more convinced that they were right when he decreed most severe penalties if a man shot a deer in the Forest, or even if he was found there with a bow and arrow. "Evil will come to him and his," they said, "for this wicked thing that he has done;" and when one of his sons was killed by a stag in the New Forest, they shook their heads and said, "That is not all; it is only the beginning of the punishment."

**New Forest.**

But, after all, the act that most enraged the helpless English was the making of a record of people and property in order to know the wealth of the kingdom and how to apportion the taxes. The people called it the Domesday Book because, they said, what was once written in it was as final as the day of doom. To compile this, William sent men all over the

**Domesday Book.**

kingdom to find out just how much property there was in every corner of it. The people were indignant, not only because they thought that their taxes might be increased if William knew everything that they owned, but also because it seemed to them a great impertinence for the officers of the king to come into their houses and demand to know just what they possessed. The "Anglo-Saxon Chronicle" says bitterly :—

"It is shameful to relate that which he thought it no shame to do. So very narrowly did he cause the survey to be made that there was not an ox or a cow or a pig passed by, that was not set down in the accounts, and then all these writings were brought to him."

**29. William's death. 1087.** In spite of all the indignation, the survey went on, as did whatever else this strong king undertook. For twenty-one years he reigned, and then came the end. His eldest son Robert had rebelled against him, and given him a great deal of trouble, but William left him the French dominions. "I pity the land that he rules," said the father, "but I have promised him Normandy, and he must have it." To Henry, the youngest son, he left five thousand pounds in silver; and in behalf of William Rufus, or William the Red, the second son, he sent a recommendation to the English that they should choose him for their king.

### SUMMARY

In 1066, William, Duke of Normandy, a relative of the late Saxon king, won the crown by a battle in which Harold, the king chosen by the English, was slain. William rewarded his followers with English lands and English offices. The building of stone castles began. Several of William's laws aroused the indignation of his new subjects, but the "Chronicle" admits that he was just, though severe.

The conquest brought to England the impulse of the bold Norman spirit, the greater refinement of the French language, and a strong government which gave peace to the land and did much to make a united nation.

## 2. WILLIAM RUFUS. 1087-1100

**30. William Rufus becomes king.** When William the Conqueror lay on his death-bed, there were only strangers around him. His wife had died several years before; his oldest son Robert was at the court of the French king, a man who had often led him into revolt and mischief; his youngest son, Henry, had hastened away to secure the five thousand pounds of silver, and to see that it was shut up in a safe place; and William Rufus had gone as fast as a boat would carry him to Winchester in England, where the royal treasures were kept.

He got possession of the gold and silver, but that alone would not make him a king, and it seemed at first quite possible that he would never sit on the throne. The reason was that there were two parties in the land, almost equally strong. One party, the Norman lords, wished to have Robert for their ruler, because **Normans vs. English.** they held land in both England and Normandy, and with their haughty independence they thought that while one king was bad enough, two would be unendurable. The other party was made up chiefly of English people, and they felt that the less their king had to do with Normandy, the better.

The two parties were of almost equal strength, but there was a third power, and that was the church. The archbishop of Canterbury was a very wise man, **Power of the church.** and he saw clearly that it was better not only for an English king to rule over no other country, but

for him who was the choice of the English people to become king of England. Therefore, the whole influence of the clergy was in favor of William, and he was crowned.

**31. William Rufus's greed for money.** He ought to have been grateful to the church for her support, but



NORMAN SOLDIERS

his only thought seemed to be how to get possession of her wealth. He not only seized upon church property, but, what was much worse, he gave her abbacies and bishoprics to any man who would pay him well. If no one offered him a large amount for a position, he simply left it vacant and took the income for himself. Perhaps the only good thing that he did for the church was to give her a

good archbishop. The archbishop of Canterbury had died, and William in his usual fashion had left the office vacant so that he might have the income; but it came to pass that the king was very ill, and greatly frightened lest he should die and be punished for the wrong that he had done. He claimed to be exceedingly penitent, and asked what he should do to prove his repentance.

"Make Anselm archbishop of Canterbury," was the reply. This was done, but William's penitence vanished with his illness, and he was so indignant at having been induced to give up the great revenues of Canterbury that he opposed Anselm in everything that he undertook; and finally the good archbishop left the country in utter despair, and did not return until the king was dead. In this frenzy for money, thieves and murderers were willingly set free if they could only offer a bribe large enough to influence the king. There is a story that the son of a rich Jew had become a Christian. The father said to himself: "If the king should ask him to return to the faith of his fathers, he would surely yield;" so he went to the king and gave him a large amount of money to ask the son to give up Christianity.

The young man would not give up his new belief even for his sovereign, and the father said to William Rufus: "I am sorry, my son refuses to obey the word of the great king. Therefore, I pray you, give me back my money."

Then said the king: "And am I to have no pay for my efforts? The words of a king are golden and demand golden payment. I could fairly keep the whole sum, but in my generosity I will keep but half," and half he kept.

32. **Why William Rufus wanted money.** Besides his reckless extravagance, there were two reasons why William Rufus was so eager to have money that he was ready to starve the poor people, cheat the men of wealth, and force the churches to give up even their gold and silver dishes and ornaments. One was that he was so afraid of revolts that he kept a great many soldiers ready to fight for him at any moment; and the other was that he had never really given up getting Normandy into his

hands. Perhaps the only reason why there was not a revolt was that when the English people began to find William unendurable, the French barons would look toward Robert; and as soon as the barons began to seem determined to have Robert for a king, the English would support William as the less of two evils. Neither party was satisfied with such a condition of affairs; but it was beginning to be clear that in England, at any rate, a king and his proud barons could not rule the country quite as they chose without paying any heed to the wishes of the people.

William still hoped to get possession of Normandy. Robert was careless and lavish, and once when he wanted money, he had willingly sold a strip of Norman territory to his brother. Finally Robert wished to go on a crusade. The sale of a part of his land would not suffice, and, in order to get the ten thousand pounds that was needed, he promised to William all the revenues of Normandy for the next five years.

**William  
Rufus  
secures the  
revenues of  
Normandy.**

**33. Crusades.** The crusades were expeditions undertaken by various Christian nations against the Turks who ruled in the Holy Land. It had long been regarded as a deed of great merit to go on a pilgrimage to Rome, and even greater to press on to Jerusalem. People believed that no matter how wicked they had been, their sins would all be forgiven if they made this journey. Some even laid aside the clothes that they wore when they entered Jerusalem, expecting to go straight to heaven if they were buried in these garments.

Aside from the religious benefits that people who became pilgrims thought they should obtain, there was a great fascination about such a journey. The travellers would see strange countries

**Pleasures  
of the  
journey.**



and meet with strange people. There would be many opportunities to win glory and its rewards, and the thought of possible dangers only added to the charm of the pilgrimage. It is no wonder that rich and poor, good and bad, were eager to go on these wonderful expeditions.

While the Arabs ruled the Holy Land, pilgrims were protected and welcomed because they brought so much

money to Jerusalem; but at last the Turks became rulers, and they imprisoned the pilgrims and tortured them, or even murdered them. In 1095, a Frenchman, called Peter the Hermit, returned from a

**Peter the  
Hermit.**

pilgrimage. He was an eloquent man, and when he told how much the pilgrims had to suffer and how wicked he thought it that the Holy Land should be in the hands of men who hated the Christians, thousands of people resolved to try to take Palestine from the power of the Turks. They called such an expedition a crusade, because a red cross was fastened to their clothes, and the Latin word for *cross* is *crux*.

For a duke like Robert to go on a crusade meant more than putting on his armor, mounting his horse, and galloping away.

**Robert  
becomes a  
crusader.**

There must be arms and horses and provisions, not only for himself, but for the servants and dependents who went with him. There must be money for countless expenses along the way, for alms-giving and for generous



ROBERT DUKE OF NORMANDY, A CRUSADER, FROM HIS EFFIGY IN GLOUCESTER CATHEDRAL.

The figure is clad in chain mail, and the crossed legs indicate the Crusader.

presents to churches and shrines. One may well see that a duke might need to pawn his duchy for such an expedition. Robert went on a crusade in 1095, and for five years William Rufus gathered in the taxes of Normandy.

**34. Death of William Rufus.** In the year 1100 there was a bright August morning when William seemed depressed and gloomy. Some one told him a priest had dreamed that the king strode into the church and insulted the cross.

"What then?" asked William, trying to conceal his misgivings.

"Pardon, King William, but the dream was that He who hangs on the cross struck down him who had mocked."

"That's the vision of a priest," said the king scornfully. "Here, give him one hundred shillings, and he will have better dreams."

After dinner he rode in the fated Forest. An arrow shot by some unknown hand pierced his heart, and he fell dead. Late that afternoon a charcoal burner came upon the king lying on the ground with the arrow yet in his breast. The peasant lifted the body into his rude cart, and the next day it was buried in the cathedral at Winchester.

Not many months before the death of William Rufus, Duke Robert's son Richard had been killed by an arrow in the New Forest, and now the country people would go to the place where William's body had been found and look at the ground in silence; then some one among them would say: "When one has done evil, then will evil come to him and to his children and to his children's children."

## SUMMARY

William Rufus became king and was supported by the English and the clergy, though opposed by the barons. Fearing revolts, he plundered the church and oppressed the people in order to maintain a large standing army. He advanced money for Duke Robert's crusade, and received in return the taxes of Normandy for five years. He was murdered in the New Forest.

## 3. HENRY BEAUCLERC. 1100-1135

**35. Henry I. becomes king.** It was a general feeling in those days that when a king died, the laws that he had made were no longer in force, and that until a new king was in power, people might avenge old wrongs, steal, or even murder, without much fear of punishment. When William the Conqueror died, his sons were away, trying to secure their treasures; the attend- **A lawless**  
ants and the nobles seized everything that they **land.** could lay their hands upon, and the funeral expenses of the king were actually paid by a kind-hearted knight.

When William Rufus was shot in the New Forest, his brother Henry, who seems to have been one of the hunting party, galloped away to Winchester as fast as his horse could carry him, for in Winchester was the storehouse of the royal treasures, and he meant to get possession of them. There was another man, however, who galloped just as fast, and that was the keeper of the treasury. When Henry demanded the keys, the treasurer said: "Prince Henry, you have paid homage to your brother Robert and so have I, and I will not give up the keys." Then Henry drew his sword, and to save his own life, the treasurer yielded. If Robert had been on the spot, it is probable that the Norman barons would have stood by him, and that there might have been much



DURHAM CATHEDRAL

Built mostly in the reign of Henry I.

trouble; but Robert had not yet returned from his crusade, and in a few days Henry was crowned.

The English were glad to have him for king rather than his brother, for Henry was born in England, and had learned to speak English. Then, too, whenever they thought of Robert, they remembered that he was duke of Normandy, and was a friend of the Norman barons who had oppressed them.

Every one seems to have had a nickname in those days, and the people called Henry *Beauclerc*, or *the Scholar*, because he could read and write, and **Henry's** **nickname.** only the clergy were expected to be so accomplished. One story\* says that he won his fame because he translated "*Æsop's Fables*" from Latin into French.

**36. Anselm returns.** When William the Conqueror was king, he meant to rule the people, whether he pleased

them or not. Henry meant to rule the people and also to please them. First, he set to work to gain the friendship of the clergy. The man who had helped his brother William to steal the treasures of churches and convents he put straightway into prison. So little watch was kept of the prisoner, however, that his friends brought him a rope hidden in a pitcher of wine, and he escaped to Duke Robert without the least difficulty. Henry brought Anselm back to England, and in a short time, the good archbishop began to look into the claims of abbots and bishops to the positions that they held. Whenever he found that the men were unworthy or had secured their honors by gifts to King William, Henry immediately put other men, and generally good ones, into their places.

**37. Henry's charter.** Many of Henry's deeds were a gain to his people, but one of them has been a gain to the people of England from that day to this. It was only the signing of his name on a bit of parchment, but that parchment was a sacred written promise to treat his subjects fairly; and one century later, when a certain English king began to be unjust to his subjects, they brought forward this charter, and told him that the one who wished to be their king must keep these promises.

**38. Trouble with Robert.** Robert did not easily give up his wish to become sovereign of England, and Henry was equally determined to win Normandy. The barons in both countries preferred Robert, because he was thoughtless and careless and lavish, and they believed that, with him for a ruler, they could do exactly as they chose. The church supported Henry, and Anselm brought it about that Robert gave up his claim to England, and that Henry gave him three thousand marks a year and a strip of land adjoining Normandy.

Two strong friends of Robert's were in England, and

although the brothers had agreed that neither should punish the partisans of the other, Henry at once showed that he had no idea of keeping the compact, and the two friends fled to Normandy.

It had also been agreed that neither country should receive the fugitives of the other ; so when Robert heartily welcomed these two men and gave them land and money, Henry crossed the Channel to take possession of Normandy. Soon after he landed, he went to church. The end of the building was piled up with all sorts of household goods and other property of the peasants. This was explained when the bishop began his sermon, for he said :—

“King Henry, the land is full of violence. Fire and sword, robbery and murder are everywhere. This is why the defenceless peasants have brought their goods to the church that the church may protect them. Your brother Robert does nothing for the land but to waste its revenues and abandon it to plunder. Take up arms and save us.”

It was the custom to wear long hair, long beards, and shoes with long, pointed toes ; and the bishop began to talk about these, and begged the king to be the first to give them up. Then he produced a pair of shears and cut off the king's long hair, for Henry was quite willing to sacrifice his hair, if by so doing he could win the Norman clergy for his friends. The fashion was set, and there was an amusing scene, for the courtiers all hurried up, each one eager to be the first to follow the king's example.

The setting of a new fashion was not all, for soon came some hard fighting. One town after another fell into Henry's hands, and at last came the battle of Tenchebrai. Henry was the vic-

**Battle of  
Tenchebrai.  
1106.**

tor, and now that he had been six years on the throne of England, Normandy was in his hands, and Robert was a captive. A prisoner Robert remained for twenty-eight years, and in prison he died.

**39. Henry's reforms.** One thing that especially needed reform was the behavior of the men who coined the money for the kingdom, for they put so much cheap metal into the coins that a man who went to market with a pound was often unable to buy a shilling's worth of food. When Henry first began to realize what trouble this was making, he was in Nor-  
**Punishment of coiners.** mandy, but without waiting to return, he sent word for all the coiners to meet at Winchester, and commanded that every one who had made poor money should lose his right hand. He did not even wait to choose a better time for this severity, but called them together at Christmas, and within twelve days more than fifty of them had suffered.

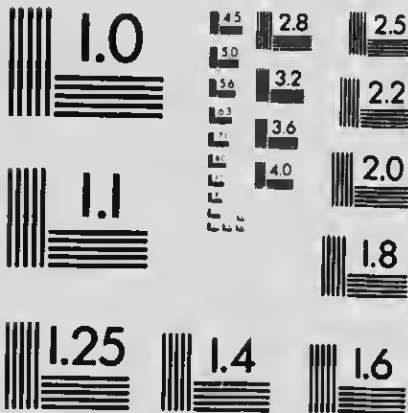
There were other men, called purveyors, whose deeds needed examination. It was their business to secure food and wine for the king and his court. This food was looked upon as a tax, and had at first  
**Laws made for purveyors.** been paid without any especial grumbling by the people near whose homes the king held his court; but gradually it had come to pass that a visit from the king was almost as bad for any district as an invasion by an enemy would have been, for the purveyors not only took what they wished to use, but they seemed to like to destroy whatever they could find. If there was too much wine to drink, they would use it to bathe their horses' feet; and if there was too much grain, they would trample it into the ground. When Henry found this out, he told the purveyors just how much food they might take without pay, and what price they should give





# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



**APPLIED IMAGE Inc**

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

for whatever more might be needed. Whoever broke this law was to pay a heavy fine, or even to be hanged. Henry was a great traveller, and held his court in so many different places that the decree must have relieved a large number of people.

**40. Severe taxation.** Henry's government was in many ways so good for his subjects that it is a great pity



FEMALE COSTUME, TIME OF HENRY I.  
The long and knotted sleeves are very remarkable

his severe taxation should have made their lives miserable; but this taxation was the one thing that he would not give up. The "Anglo-Saxon Chronicle" says: "He who had any property was bereaved of it by heavy taxes and assessments, and he who had none starved with hunger."

In this poverty and privation, stealing was carried on to such an extent that forty-four thieves were hanged at one time. People in the country suffered most, because these severe taxes were made no smaller even when a poor crop left the farmers almost penniless. It is no wonder that all through the thirty-five years of the reign of Henry, the "Anglo-Saxon Chronicle" records as a great misfortune a storm or a wind or a flood or a failure of fruit, or a sickness that affected the cattle or the fowls. Troubled as they were, the English were always fearful that worse might come; and over and over again the "Chronicle" tells of strange stars or circles of light or an unwonted glow in the sky, or a moon that "waxed and waned con-

trary to nature." When there was merely an unusually low tide so that people could walk across the Thames, these poor, tormented Englishmen trembled lest it should presage the coming upon them of some new misfortune.

**41. Henry's marriage.** Henry married an English woman named Matilda, a niece of the little Saxon boy who would probably have ruled after Edward the Confessor if he had been old enough. The Norman nobles laughed at this marriage, and called the king and queen "the farmer and his wife;" but the English were delighted, because this Matilda was a descendant of their beloved Alfred the Great. King Henry, too, was, through his mother, a descendant of Alfred; and when a prince was born, the people rejoiced, for they thought that their next king would be a Saxon rather than a Norman. Unfortunately, a few years later this prince went on a visit to France, and on the way home the ship was wrecked, and all on board were lost save one. For two or three days no one dared to tell the king, but at last a little boy was sent to break the sad news. The little fellow was so frightened that he burst into tears and fell at the king's feet. He could only stammer between his sobs: "The prince, O king, — the White Ship!" The king understood what had happened even without asking a question, and, though he lived many years after this, people who knew him said that he was never again seen to smile.

**42. Henry plans for his daughter to succeed him.** He had been planning to win as wide domains as possible in order to leave a generous heritage to his son; and even when the son was no longer living, he did not give up the determination that a child of his should succeed him, though his only remaining child was a daughter, and no woman had ever sat on the throne of England. He

called the archbishop of Canterbury and all the other chief men of the kingdom to meet together. Then he demanded that they swear to make the Princess Matilda queen of England when he himself should die. They all took the oath.

**43. Henry's death.** By and by there came a time when the sun grew dim and dark at midday, and the stars shone out with a pale, sickly light. The people were frightened. "For, surely," they thought, "this is in token of some fearful event that is coming to pass;" and when they knew that Henry had died in Normandy, they were more miserable than even when they were suffering from his severe taxation. "He was a good man," said they, "though we were in great awe of him." They had reason to be afraid; for, as the "Chronicle" says, "Every man began to rob his neighbor." There was no one to make these thieves and robbers obey the laws, and the poor people were more wretched than ever before.

**44. Who should rule?** Much of this trouble came about because Henry had been so determined that his daughter should rule. In a feudal country, the lords who held land expected to fight for the king, but they also expected him to lead them in battle. To be sure, the chief men had sworn to support Matilda as their queen, but they all averred that they had given this promise on condition that she should not marry a foreigner. Henry had obliged her to marry a Frenchman, Geoffrey of Anjou, and therefore the bishops and barons declared that they were free from their oath. Moreover, Matilda was so haughty and unyielding that she made enemies wherever she went. Where should England look for a sovereign?

## SUMMARY

Henry's prompt action in seizing the crown forestalled the opposition which might have arisen from the barons in behalf of his brother. By birth, language, and marriage, he was an Englishman, and save for his severe taxation, he meant to please his subjects as well as to rule them. He issued a charter of liberties, reformed abuses in the church, punished dishonest coiners, and regulated the exactions of the purveyors. By the battle of Tinchebrai, Normandy fell into his hands. He was determined that his daughter Matilda should succeed him; but, though bishops and barons had sworn to support her claims, his death was followed by anarchy.

## 4. STEPHEN OF BLOIS. 1135-1154

45. **Accession of Stephen.** Matilda had two sons, but they were not old enough to reign. Then there were three young men, sons of one of the daughters of William the Conqueror. These young men were in Normandy, and in the midst of the general lawlessness that followed the death of Henry, Stephen, the second son, made his way to London, and was received by the Londoners as their king. His mother had married the Count of Blois, so he was not strictly a member of the Norman line, but the first of the House of Blois.

Stephen had spent a great deal of time in England. He was liked by the English, and there was no special opposition to his sitting on the throne. He was crowned in three weeks after Henry's death, and at once he gave the people two excellent charters, promising to treat them fairly and to do his best to be a good ruler. If he had been as strong as he was agreeable, England would have been saved many years of trouble, but his reign was nothing but contests from beginning to end, for Matilda had no idea of giving up her claim to the crown, and

Stephen was not powerful or wise enough to oppose her successfully.

**46. Behavior of the English barons.** The barons supported now one and now the other. In fact, they did not care much who was on the throne, if they were only free to do what they chose. More and more castles were built, for Stephen was too weak to prevent their erection. Every noble was a king over the district around him, and most of these nobles were tyrants. Whenever they could get possession of a man who had any property, they would put him into one of their terrible underground dungeons, often among snakes and toads. Sometimes they would tie a knotted cord about his head and twist it until it cut into the brain; or they would put around his neck a heavy iron collar covered with sharp points, so that, whether he lay down or sat up, he was in the greatest agony. It is no wonder that to escape from their tormentors the poor people gave up every penny that they possessed. The nobles would burst open the churches, and when they had taken all that was of value to them, they would set fire to the buildings. People became so timid that if two or three men came riding up to a village, those who dwelt there would run for their lives, thinking that the robbers were coming upon them.

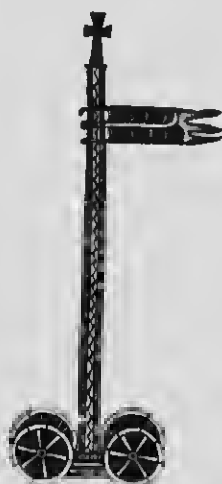
After two years Stephen went over to Normandy. The barons there expected to obey him just as they had been obliged to obey his uncle Henry; but they soon found, somewhat to their surprise, that they were much stronger than this new king. They were delighted that after Henry's long reign they had at last a ruler who could not prevent them from doing just as they pleased. What they pleased to do was to behave as badly as the barons across the water, and in a short time Normandy had become as lawless a place as England.

barons  
they  
were  
castles  
their  
district  
tyrants.  
no had  
their ter-  
es and  
about  
they  
covered  
or sat  
r that  
gave  
would  
en all  
o the  
three  
there  
were

andy.  
y had  
soon  
much  
that  
who  
eased.  
s the  
andy

**47. Contest with Matilda.** All this time Matilda was pressing her claims to the throne. Her uncle, the king of Scotland, invaded England in her behalf, and at Cowton Moor a battle was fought, called the Battle of the Standard. In this struggle clergymen were the leaders, for in those days a bishop was often as capable of being at the head of an army as of a church. For a standard they used a sort of wooden frame, or pillar, carried about in a wagon.

**Battle of  
the Stand-  
ard. 1138.**



THE STANDARD

On the pillar were four consecrated banners, and above them was the cross. One of the bishops stood in the wagon, and he was constantly shouting encouragement to the soldiers.

In one place after another the fighting went on for many years. At one time Stephen was taken prisoner, and Matilda was practically queen for a few months; but she was so proud and arrogant that the very people that had most wanted her for queen began to desert her. At another time she came near being captured, for Stephen was be-

**Matilda's  
escape.**

sieging the castle at Oxford, in which she had taken refuge; but one day there was a heavy snowstorm, and that night Matilda and a few guards dressed themselves in white and slipped away silently over the snow and across the frozen Thames to a place of safety.

The release of Stephen had been brought about, but Matilda, too, had made a great gain, for her husband, Geoffrey of Anjou, had been fighting successfully in Normandy, and his conquest of the duchy had made him too powerful a prince for the claims of Matilda to be neglected any longer. The

**The strug-  
gle ends.  
1153.**

country was worn out with fighting and with a weak government, or rather no government at all; both Matilda and Stephen were tired of the contention, and at last a treaty was signed by which it was agreed that Stephen should rule as long as he lived, and that at his death Henry, son of Matilda and Geoffrey, should receive the crown. How long this treaty would have been kept is a question, but the next year Stephen died and Henry became king.

**48. Three languages in England.** During this century there were three languages used in England. Latin was spoken in the courts of justice and in the church service. French was spoken at the court of the king, and was looked upon as the language of polite society. English was spoken by the masses of the English people. The literary language was Latin. French romances and songs were brought from France, but an Englishman would have thought it very strange to write a book in any other language than Latin. To use English would have seemed to him like writing in "baby-talk," and the "Anglo-Saxon Chronicle" ends in 1154 at the death of Stephen.

Though English authors wrote in Latin, the subject of their books was almost invariably the history of the country. It may be that while the selfishness of William Rufus and the weakness of Stephen had shown them that what was the loss of one part of the nation was the loss of all, the strong, firm rule of the Conqueror and of Henry had given them an idea of what a power a united country might become. At any rate, the men who wrote were thinking of their country and writing books about her. One of the most interesting of these writers was a Welshman, called Geoffrey of Monmouth, who wrote a "History of

**History is  
written.**

**Geoffrey of  
Monmouth.**

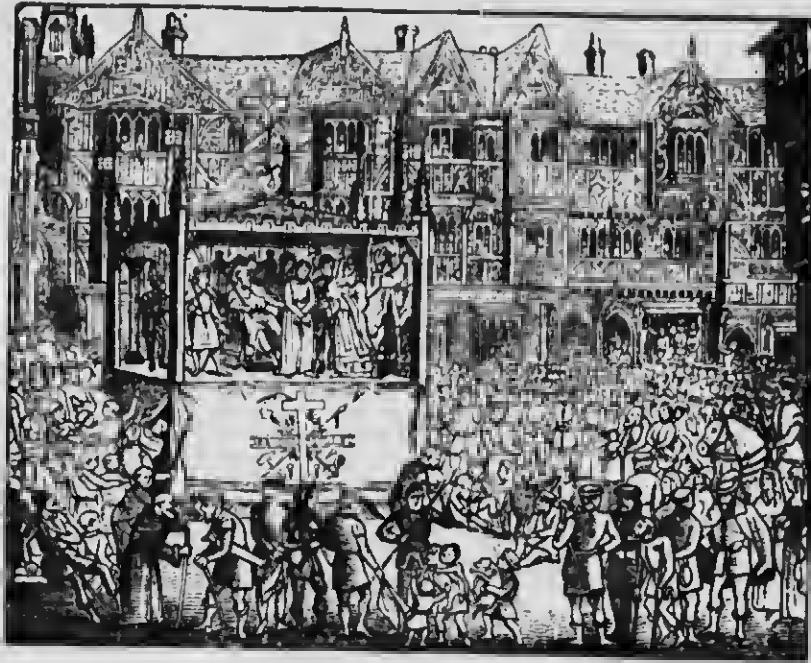


British Kings." There is more of legend in it than of fact, and in this book are found the stories of King Arthur which Tennyson has made into poems in his "Idylls of the King."

**49. Mystery plays.** Another thing that was brought about by the sufferings of the English people was a great desire to know more of religion. When they were so miserable, their only hope was that after they died they would be happy enough to make up for what they had borne on earth. Very few of them could read, and it was difficult for them to understand any but the simplest of sermons. As so few teachers know how to speak simply, the poor people would have been left in great ignorance, had it not been for the pictures in the churches, and for the mystery plays.

These pictures represented scenes in Bible history or in the lives of good men, and the people could walk about the church, and learn the stories from the pictures. The mystery plays must have been a very great delight. These plays were scenes in Bible history, and they were acted by the priests. They were not meant for amusement, but for teaching. First, there were prayers; then the priests and their assistants acted out the story of Cain and Abel, or of the creation, or of building the ark. At Christmas they acted the appearance of the angels to the shepherds, and at Easter they acted the resurrection. By and by, so many people came to see the plays that the church was not large enough; and then the priests acted in the churchyard, putting up a high stage, or platform, so that people could see and hear better. When still more people wished to see, first the priests and then guilds, or companies of tradesmen, drove about the city in great two-story wagons, stopping at certain places to act the play. The upper

story of these wagons represented heaven, the lower one was earth, and below the earth was the abode of the evil spirits. The angels had golden hair and white robes, while Satan wore a hideous suit of leather, covered with black hair and feathers and ending in claws at the hands



A MYSTERY PLAY AT COVENTRY

and feet. The actors did everything that they could to make the plays seem real to the people; for instance when they acted the creation, they suddenly let loose all the birds and beasts that they could get together, as if the animals had just been created.

There was a good deal of amusement in these plays, and in one comical scene Noah scolds his wife because she will not go into the ark. With our way of looking at such matters, they sometimes seem a little irreverent.

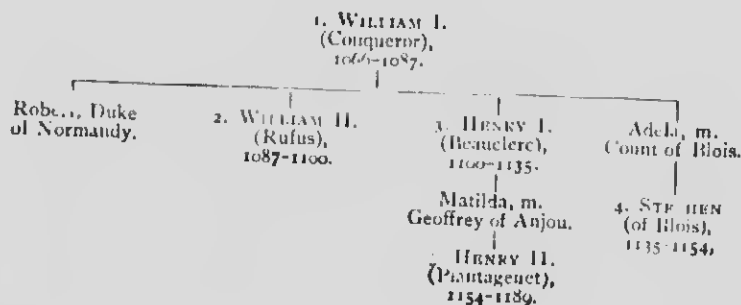
When the angel brings "good tidings of great joy," one shepherd boasts, "I can sing it as well as he," and then he makes a comical attempt to imitate the angelic song. With all these absurdities, however, people went to see the plays as reverently as they went to church; and from them they certainly did get a familiarity with much of the Bible story that they could hardly have gained in any other way.

### SUMMARY

Henry's determination that his daughter should rule was the cause of years of strife between her party and that of Stephen, Henry's nephew. During most of this time, Stephen was nominally king, but his rule was so inefficient that Normandy as well as England was in disorder. Finally, a compromise was made; Stephen was to reign as long as he lived, but was to be succeeded by Matilda's son Henry. Bad as so weak a government was, its very lawlessness brought about a strong desire for peace and a firm rule. The English thought more of their country as a whole, and several authors began to write the history of the land.

Three languages were still used in England. Religious instruction was given to the people by means of pictures and mystery plays.

### THE NORMAN KINGS



## CHAPTER IV

### THE ANGEVINS, OR PLANTAGENETS

1154-1399

#### 5. HENRY II. 1154-1189

**51. The name "Plantagenet."** The father of Henry II. was Geoffrey of Anjou, and from this name Henry and his descendants are called the Angevins. Another name, or nickname, that of "Plantagenet," was given them because this Geoffrey had a habit of wearing in his cap a sprig of the yellow-blossomed broom plant, whose French name is "plante-genét." When Henry came to the throne, he had more land than any previous king of England had ever ruled. He had received wide domains from his father and his mother and with his wife, and as his territories in France were close together, the whole western half of that country was in his hands, besides all of England.

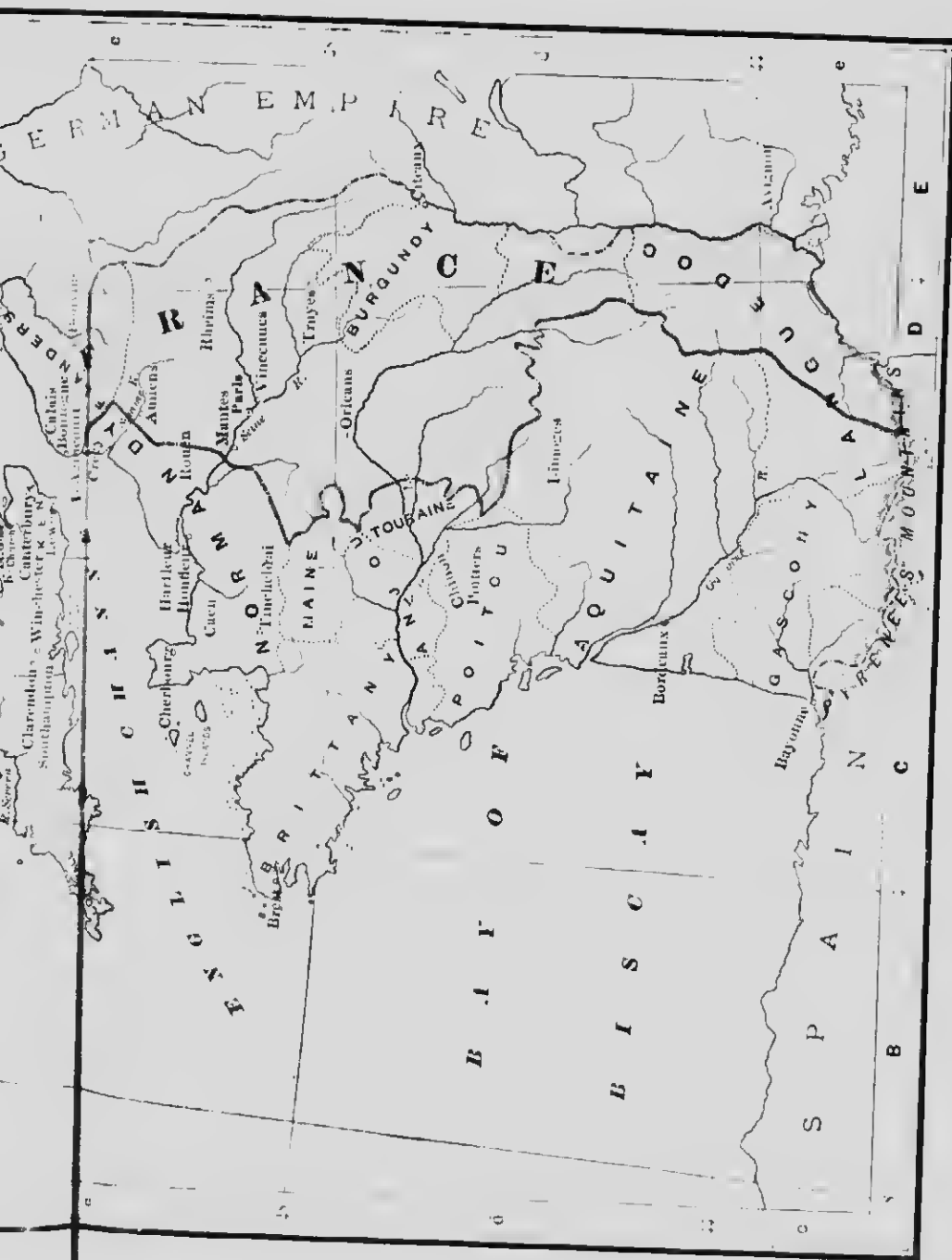
**52. Henry II. arrives in England.** When Stephen died, Henry was in Normandy, and he did not hurry to England lest some one else should seize upon the crown. Indeed, the English people had a right to feel a little impatient, for it was six weeks before they had a chance to see their new ruler. When they did see him, they were well pleased. He was young, but he had already shown quite an amount of common sense and strength of character; and the English had suffered so much from the weakness of Stephen that they would almost have welcomed a tyrant, if he had given promise of a

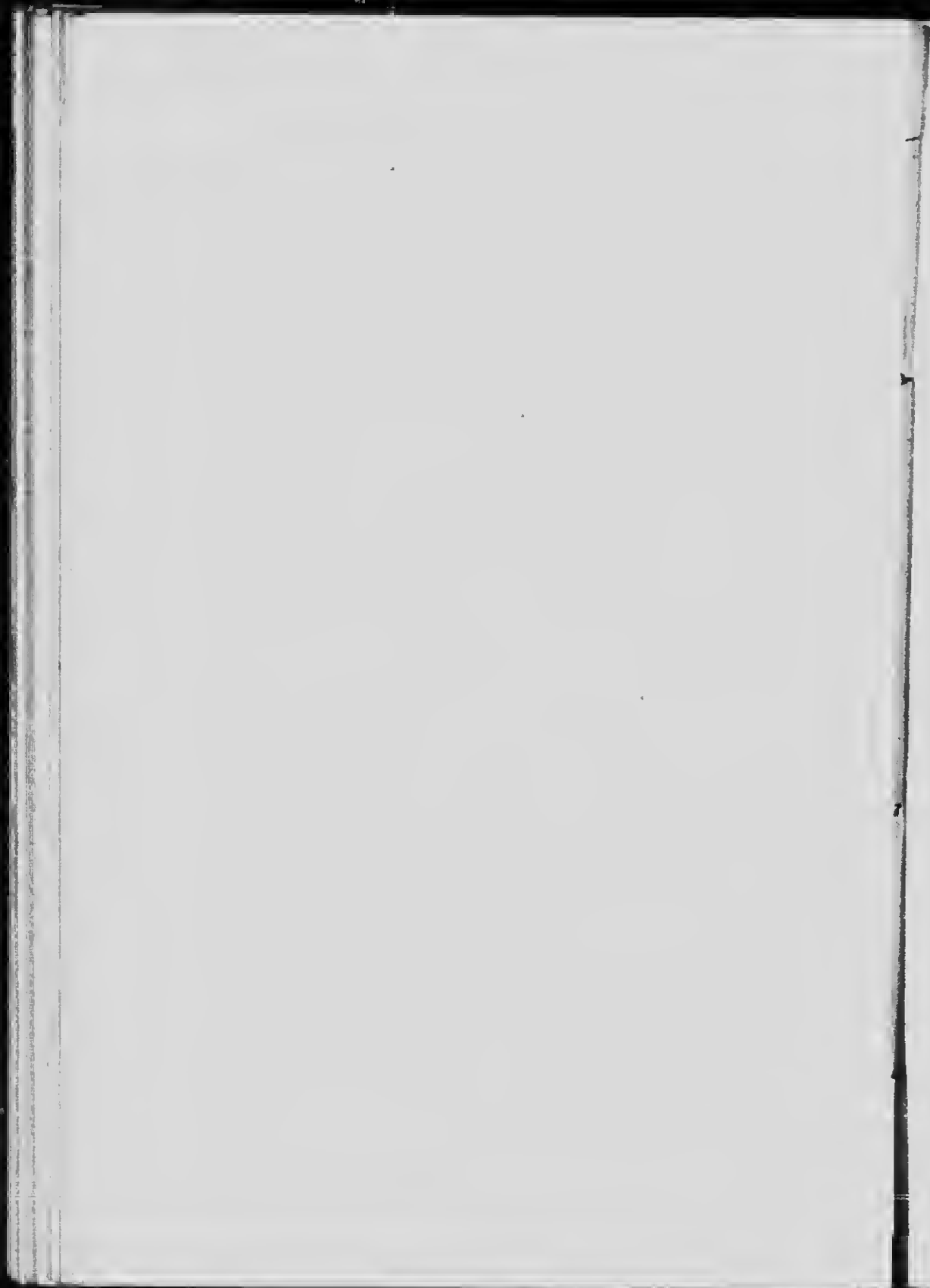


[illegible]

Anglo-American Empire colored **RED**

# YORTHS







steady, firm government that would punish the evil and protect the good.

**53. Destruction of the castles.** England was in a bad condition. For nineteen years there had been pillage and fighting. It had not been a united land, but rather a collection of little countries with a castle in every country, a baron in every castle, and every baron doing exactly as much evil as he chose. There was no question that the first thing for the king to do was to tear down these castles; and tear them down he did, several hundred of them. Without a castle, a baron had little more power than any other rich man, and the people rejoiced when they saw the forces of the king demolishing the strongholds that had caused so much suffering, and letting the light and air into the horrible dungeons where prisoners had endured such agonies. Henry had a perfect right to destroy these places, since for one hundred years it had been a law that no one should build a castle without the king's permission; and the barons had had no permission, but had built whatever they chose, because they knew that King Stephen could not prevent them.

**54. Reform of coinage.** There was the same old trouble to meet about the coinage, for the barons had been coining money and using entirely too much base metal. They had forced the people to take the coins, but if a man had money in his hand, he never knew how much he could buy with it. Henry decreed that no one should use this money, and that no one but himself should coin money.

**55. Scutage.** In the course of five years, Henry's government was so well established in England that he was able to do what no other king would have dared to venture, that is, to go away from his kingdom for four years.

Through his wife he had a claim on some land in France, and he wished to get possession of it. Where to find his soldiers was a question, for while by the feudal laws every baron who held land was required to furnish a certain number, not one man could be compelled to follow the king out of the country. William the Conqueror had had the same difficulty to meet when he came to England, but he had met it by persuasions and by lavish promises. Henry met it by a plan that had perhaps more to do with the overthrow of feudalism than any other one act. He made no attempt to force his barons to go, but said to them that if they preferred to stay at home and pay him a tax instead, he would not object. This was a wise scheme of the king's, for since many barons preferred to remain in England, he was provided with a generous sum of money, and he could hire well-trained soldiers who wished to fight, instead of setting out with a company of unwilling followers. This tax was called scutage, because the Latin word for *shield* is *scutum*.

**56. Thomas à Becket.** There was one man in England who in the end gave Henry more trouble than all his other subjects in both England and France. This man's name was Thomas à Becket. He was a person of great talent, great wealth, and great love of luxury and display. He lived in a house almost, if not quite, as handsome as that of the king. It was full of the richest furniture that could be bought, and the servants were as finely dressed as if they had been people of rank. To this luxurious mansion came crowds of guests, and nothing else seemed to make à Becket so happy as to entertain them as if they were so many princes. Most elaborate banquets were served to them of the choicest, most costly dainties that could be brought

**His luxurious life.**

to England. They feasted from golden plates and drank from golden goblets.

This was à Becket's life at home. When he was away from home, he had even more of glitter and display; and when he went as an ambassador to France, his gifts were so lavish, his train so long, and his manner of travelling so extravagant, that people gazed and marvelled, and thought that this could not be an ambassador, it must be the king himself.

It is no wonder that they thought so, for this simple deacon was accompanied — if we may trust the old chroniclers — by a guard of one thousand priests, <sup>à Becket's followers.</sup> nobles, knights, and other followers. There were also two hundred and fifty pages. The pages sang, and the standards waved, and then came the long train of wagons, loaded to the full with offerings for the churches, the sacred vessels of his own church, robes and vestments of the richest material, heavy with embroidery and glittering with precious stones.

À Becket was a special friend of the king's, and when Henry wished to make a law that would give the church less power, he did not doubt for a minute that à Becket, deacon as he was, would fall in with his ideas and do his best to please the sovereign who, caring little for luxury himself, had given his councillor the power to gratify his most costly whims.

**57. Henry's contest with à Becket.** It had been the custom for a clergyman to be tried by the church and not by the regular courts of justice. The penalties inflicted by the king's courts were very severe. They made nothing of cutting off people's hands or feet or of putting out their eyes, for crimes that we should punish to-day by a short imprisonment. The church, <sup>Church or court?</sup> on the other hand, rarely punished a clergyman

in any other way than by giving him a position of less honor or by depriving him of his income for a certain time. The clergy did not approve of these cruel punishments and protected as many people from them as possible. As a general thing, no one but a priest was expected to know anything of books, and little by little it had come



À BECKET DISPUTING WITH HENRY II.

The king to the left seated on his throne, à Becket attired in his pontifical habit and holding the cross in his hand.

about that whoever could read and write was looked upon as a clergyman, and no matter what crime he had committed, he was free from the punishment that other men would have had to suffer.

Henry meant to take away this privilege and to treat all men alike when it came to a question of keeping the laws; and with this plan in mind,

À Becket as  
archbishop.

he made à Becket archbishop of Canterbury. He was greatly surprised when the new archbishop seemed suddenly to have become another man. This lover of luxury put on the dress of a monk. He wore rough haircloth next to his skin and scourged himself every day. Instead of nobles, he entertained beggars, washing their feet and sitting at the same table with them. He ate the coarsest of food, and drank bitter water instead of his dainty wines.

Henry was amazed, but he said to himself with a quiet smile: "A Becket always did like to make a display, and now he is exhibiting himself as a saint. He will change again before long."

Soon the test came. A priest had committed a most shocking murder, and Henry demanded that he be tried in court. The archbishop replied that the man **Henry's demand.** had been tried by the church and degraded from his office, and that he could not be tried again for the same offence. Then Henry called the clergy together and laid the matter before them. "Will you submit to the ancient laws and customs of the kingdom?" he asked.

A Becket, as holder of the highest office in the church was the one to reply, and this is what he said: "We will observe them, saving the privileges of our order," a reply which promised exactly nothing at all. So the struggle went on. The king believed **A Becket's reply.** that he was upholding justice, the archbishop believed that he was upholding the rights of the church. Finally à Becket had to flee.

Henry meant that his son should succeed him without any opposition, and, therefore, he had the young man crowned and associated with him in the government. It had become a custom for the arch- **Excommunication.**

bishop of Canterbury to perform the ceremony of coronation, and when in his exile à Becket learned that the king had been crowned by the archbishop of York, he felt this as another insult, and straightway brought it about that the Pope excommunicated several councillors whom à Becket thought in fault. This excommunication



THE SCENE OF À BECKET'S MURDER IN CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL

was the formal curse of the church pronounced upon the offending party. He was to be accursed whether he was sleeping or waking, standing or sitting, on land or on water, eating or drinking, coming or going. God was entreated to bring sickness and blindness upon him, and if he died in his sins, to torment him forever.

Even after this there was so much of a reconciliation

between à Becket and Henry that the archbishop returned to England. Henry was in France, and the next news brought him was that à Becket had persuaded the Pope to excommunicate several bishops who had assisted at the coronation of the prince.

**58. À Becket's murder.** When Henry was really angry, he was almost like a madman, and now he called out in a fury: "Will no one deliver me from this insolent priest?" He always declared that he did not mean that he wished à Becket to be murdered, but there were four men who so understood the speech. They set off for Canterbury and struck down the archbishop in the church. The whole land was aghast. The priest who had been killed at the very altar was looked upon as a saint. Henry was frightened, and he was sincerely sorry for the words that he had spoken in his anger, and whose consequences had been so far beyond his thought. He gave up every point upon which he and the dead archbishop had differed. The Pope believed in his penitence and granted him forgiveness.

**59. Henry's penance.** About this time all kinds of troubles came upon the land, — invasion, revolt, tempest. Both Henry and his people believed that this was in consequence of the murder, and that the king must do more to prove his penitence. Henry mounted his horse and rode to the town of Canterbury. Then he put on a woollen shirt and a coarse cloak and walked barefoot over the rough stones of the streets to à Becket's tomb in the cathedral. Here he knelt and prayed. Then bishops, abbots, and the eighty monks took a rod, each in turn, and the powerful king, who for twenty years had ruled England and Normandy as he would, now dropped his cloak and received a blow from the hands of every one present.

After this the people felt that Henry had really been forgiven, especially as within a few days one invader was conquered on land and another driven back over the sea. A very beautiful shrine was made at Canterbury, and here the bones of a Becket were placed. Many churches throughout Europe begged for even the smallest relic of him, and many thousands of people came from far-away countries to kneel before his shrine.

**60. English rule in Ireland.** At the time when Henry's messengers were in Rome trying to secure the Pope's pardon for their sovereign, the king himself thought that with all the hatred aroused against him, it would be as well for him to be out of the country, and he was glad that it seemed necessary for him to go to Ireland.

This island was divided into provinces, and there was one chief, or king, for each province, and also one to whom the others paid some general deference as to an overlord. One of these kings, driven out of the land for his wrongdoing, had paid homage to Henry, and obtained his permission to enlist Englishmen to help regain the throne. The most powerful man that he secured was an earl who was nicknamed Strongbow. The English forces were successful, and when this king died, Strongbow, who had married the princess, became king in his place. Of course it did not please Henry to have one of his subjects king in the island, for he had meant to gain the power there for himself. Then it was that he went to Ireland. He had many ships, and they were well filled with soldiers. Strongbow was alarmed and did homage, as did many of the Irish princes. English rule was established, but in only a portion of the island, known from this as **The "English Pale."** When Strongbow died, Henry sent his own son John to rule the island. Henry had



treated the Irish chieftains with courtesy and attention, but John, a silly hoy of twelve years, made fun of their homely dress and encouraged his attendant: to insult them. In a year the insolent boy was recalled to England.

**61. Henry's judicial reforms.** After Henry felt himself fully pardoned for the death of the archbishop, he went on with a reform in the courts of justice that his grandfather, Henry I., had planned. The early Saxon way of proving a man's innocence of a crime was to require him to plunge his arm into boiling water or to carry a red-hot iron so many paces. If after a certain number of days the arm was well or was healing healthily, the man was called innocent, because it was claimed that God had protected him. In the same belief that God would clear the innocent, the Normans had introduced the usage of requiring two men who had differed to fight a duel. Then it became a custom for each baron to hold a sort of court, but as the baron was responsible to no one for the justice of his decisions, there was every temptation to give the case to the one that feed him most generously. Henry strove to have justice administered fairly throughout the land; and to bring this about, he divided his kingdom into districts, and sent his judges through them at stated times.

**62. Henry's sons rebel.** It seemed to be the fate of the Norman kings to meet nothing but ingratitude from their children. Henry II. had four sons, and it was his plan that the eldest should be king of England, that the next two should hold wide domains in France, and that the youngest should rule over Ireland. The eldest claimed his inheritance at once. He would have either England or Normandy, he said. The queen favored the demand, and with his mother's sympathy the young

man fled to France, accompanied by two of his brothers. These two boys, one fifteen and one fourteen years of age, had also demanded of their father the land that he had intended for them at his death. They rebelled, and with the king of France they planned an attack upon England. Henry was then ill, but when he was told of this revolt, he said: "I have one comfort left. My son John has never conspired against me. Give me the list of the rebels." Behold, at the very head of the list was the name of Prince John. "Let things go as they will," said the broken-hearted king. "I have nothing more to care for;" and in two days he died.

**63. The Holy Grail.** In these different reigns, under kings good or bad, strong or weak, the country was gradually working her way upward and onward. A writer now appeared, one Walter Map, who wrote on the same subject that was chosen by Geoffrey of Monmouth, but Map made poems of the old crude legends. One of his stories that of the Holy Grail, came from the Continent. The Grail was the cup used by Christ at the Last Supper. The legend is that it was carried to Pilate, who gave it to Joseph of Arimathea. Joseph brought it to Glastonbury in England, and there it was to remain as long as its guardians were pure and good. At last the time came when one was unworthy of his trust, and the cup vanished, though it might sometimes be seen by those that were holy in thought and deed; and in the stories of King Arthur it was a favorite quest of the knights to ride the world over and meet all hardship and all adventure in the hope of once having a glimpse of the sacred vision. Tennyson describes its appearance to a nun whose heart was pure and holy. There was first the sound of beautiful music coming nearer and nearer; then, —

"Streamed through my cell a cold and silver beam,  
And down the long beam stole the Holy Grail,  
Rose-red with beatings in it, as if alive,  
Till all the white walls of my cell were dyed  
With rosy colors leaping on the wall;  
And then the music faded, and the Grail  
Past, and the beam decayed, and from the walls  
The rosy quiverings died into the night."

**64. The Grail and the crusades.** It is easy to see how this story became such a delight to the people of that time, for it was just in line with what was coming to be in their thoughts more and more, and that was the crusades. The first crusade had not aroused a great amount of interest in England; but two years before the death of Henry, news came that Jerusalem, which had been in the hands of the Christians, had again fallen under the rule of the Saracens. All England was excited, and the king himself was prevented from becoming a crusader only by the advice of his council and the revolt of his son Richard. It was the idea of an earthly journey and some very earthly fighting, resulting withal in great religious gain, that made the story of the Holy Grail so intensely interesting to the men of the crusading days. The knights of King Arthur had journeyed and had fought for religious gain; so would they, too, journey and fight that they might attain the heaven whose gates would open wide to the man who had striven to win the earthly Jerusalem. As men heard the story of the Grail, they were eager for the crusade; and all who longed to make the great journey listened the more intently to the words of the poet.

#### SUMMARY

Henry II. ruled his wide domains well. He tore down the castles of the tyrannous barons and brought order into the

land. His offer to receive scutage struck a blow at feudalism. He substituted what developed into trial by jury for trial by combat, and he strove to treat all men as equal before the law. In this reign the English conquest of Ireland began.

#### 6. RICHARD CŒUR DE LION. 1189-1199

**65. The ideal gentleman.** The ideal gentleman of that day was the knight. He must serve a long apprenticeship in some friendly castle, first, as a page, whose



A SQUIRE BECOMING A KNIGHT  
Girding on of the sword and fastening of the spurs

business was above all things to learn to be obedient and courteous. Then he became a squire, and his duty was to attend upon the lord of the castle, carve his meat and fill his wine-cup, carry his shield or helmet, give him a lance if his was broken in a tournament, help him to mount if he was thrown from his horse in his heavy armor, and drag him out of battle if he was wounded.

**66. Ceremony of becoming a knight.** After seven years as a squire, he himself might become a knight, but he must first spend a day and a night in a church, fasting and praying. Then, in the presence of his friends and others, he solemnly promised to be loyal to the king, to defend

the church, and to protect every lady that might need his aid. After he had promised, some lady of high rank buckled on his spurs and girded on a sword that had been blessed by the priest. Then the prince or some noble struck him lightly on the shoulder with the flat of the sword, saying, "In the name of God, Saint Michael, and Saint George, I dub thee knight. Be brave, ready, and loyal." Young noblemen became knights as a matter of course, and no one thought highly of even a king unless he had all the knightly virtues and accomplishments.

**67. The good and the bad in knighthood.** In some ways knighthood was good. Men were more interested in fighting than in anything else, and this training taught them not to be so brutal in their fighting, to be generous to their enemies, to be courteous to women, to respect age and authority, and to care for music and poetry. On the other hand, the knight was not required to be courteous to people of lower rank than himself, and he was as rough as ever when he was dealing with those whom he thought his inferiors. It is stated that at a great tournament, or mock-fight, in which three thousand men contended, the knights that were hurt were taken care of, but no one thought it worth while to do anything for those of their humbler followers who were wounded.

**68. Richard Cœur de Lion.** Richard, King Henry's third son, was an ideal knight, and although he was an exceedingly poor king, whose only notion of ruling a country was to get as much money from it as possible, yet, because he was a brave knight, people could never praise him enough. They called him "Cœur de Lion," or the "Lion-Hearted," and were never tired of singing songs about him and his warlike deeds. He reigned ten

years, but during only a few months of the time was he in England. All his early life he had spent in France, and he could not even speak the English language.

**69. Richard as a crusader.** When King Henry II. died, Philip, king of France, and Leopold, duke of Austria, were planning to go on a crusade. Richard wished to go with them, and no sooner had he been crowned than he set to work to raise the necessary funds. He taxed his people severely, extorted money from the Jews, sold bishoprics and other offices to any one that would pay for them, and granted various privileges to the towns for large amounts of gold. This was a good thing for the towns, for each new privilege bought of the king was described in writing, and the writing was signed by him, so that every bit of parchment that a town gained made it a little more free than it had been before.

The three young men set off on their crusade with a great flourish of banners and long trains of followers; but they had not been many weeks

**The crusade fails.**

in the Holy Land before Philip began to feel that Richard was gaining all the glory of the expedition. Moreover, now that Richard was king, he was not so yielding as he had been when Philip was helping him to conspire against his father. The result was that Philip went home and left Richard to get along as best he could. Then Leopold raised his standard over a captured city, and Richard tore it down, saying that a king's standard came before a duke's. Richard was always in the midst of his



A KNIGHT TEMPLAR  
OF THE TIME OF  
RICHARD I.

From an effigy in Salisbury Cathedral

men, and he was not at all afraid to put his own hands to whatever work they were doing. He was once helping them to build a fort, but when he asked Leopold to join in the work, the duke was angry and said that he was neither a mason nor a carpenter. Richard struck the duke who went home in a rage. The English king had not men enough to conquer the Saracens, so he, too, had to go home. He went on his way sadly, for he knew that if it had not been for his hot temper, Jerusalem might have been in the hands of the Christians.

On the way home he was wrecked and had to go through Austria, and although he was in disguise, some one found him out. Leopold put him into prison, and soon gave him into the hands of the emperor of Germany, and for a long while no one knew where he was. There is a story that a minstrel of Richard's court, named Blondel, roamed about wherever he thought his king might be. He would sing under the window of every prison; and at last, when he stood one day by a gloomy stone tower, singing a song that he and Richard had often sung together, he was delighted to hear his master's voice take up the air and sing the second verse.

**70. Richard is ransomed.** There were two men who were anxious to keep Richard in prison. One was Philip of France, for he thought that if Richard was

Richard is imprisoned.



RICHARD I. IN PRISON

a prisoner, he himself would have a good opportunity to get possession of Normandy; and the other was Richard's younger brother John, for he thought that if Richard was out of the way, no one would interfere with his own rule in England. These two men went about their schemes. Philip accused Richard of various crimes, and John offered the emperor twenty thousand pounds a month to keep his brother in confinement. Richard, however, soon proved his innocence of the crimes, and the emperor agreed to set him free for a ransom. This ransom was so large that it was hard for England to find the money, but the English were proud of their crusader king, and it was raised. Richard returned to England for a short time and received a hearty welcome from his subjects, for, however he might extort money from them, he was still their ideal knight.

**71. Richard's character.** A story told of the last scene of his life is characteristic of him in his cruelty, his generosity, and his determination to get what he thought was his own. Treasure had been found in the land held by one of his vassals, who refused to follow the custom and give it up to the king. Richard besieged the castle, and would not grant any terms of surrender. When the castle fell, he ordered every man to be hanged excepting the archer who had wounded him. This man was brought into his presence, and the king asked: "How have I harmed you, that you should kill me?"

The young man replied stoutly: "My lord king, you killed my father, you killed my two brothers, and you meant to kill me. Revenge yourself on me as you will, since at last you have come to your end after you have for so many years inflicted evil upon the world."

The king had long before forgiven his treacherous brother John, and now, though he was suffering in-



tensely from the wound, which he knew would end his life, he was still generous and bade his soldiers set the young man free.



MILITARY AND CIVIL COSTUME IN THE TIME OF RICHARD I.

### SUMMARY

The knight was the ideal gentleman of the time, and Richard was the ideal knight. The story of his reign circles around his career as a crusader. To raise money for the crusade, he sold many privileges to the wealthy towns, so that at the end of his reign of ten years they held as their most valued possessions charters which secured to them a great increase of liberty.

## 7. JOHN LACKLAND. 1199-1216

**72. The murder of Arthur.** Richard had left no children, and now Jo'n, youngest son of Henry II., became king, though no one really wished to have him for a ruler. A brother older than John had left a boy, named Arthur, after King Arthur of the Round Table, but he was only twelve years old, and the chief men of England were afraid that there would be war if a child was on the throne. John was jealous of Arthur, and in three or four years the boy disappeared so suddenly that people felt sure that John had murdered him.

It had long been the custom for the king of France to be a sort of overlord of the French lands of the duke of Normandy, though sometimes the duke was the more powerful of the two men. Philip now sent a formal summons to John, as duke of Normandy and therefore vassal of the French king, to appear before the French court to answer for the murder of Arthur; and as he did not come, Philip punished him by taking possession of more than half of the English king's lands in France. It is perhaps because of this that John received his nickname of "Lackland."

**73. John's quarrel with the church.** John's next trouble was with the church. The archbishop of Canterbury had died, and it was a question whether the man that the king chose or the man that the Pope chose should have the position. The Pope's choice was Stephen Langton, an upright, learned man of sound judgment and utter fearlessness of spirit. John refused to receive him. The Pope placed the kingdom under an interdict. The churches were draped with black, and their doors were closed. The dead could not be buried in consecrated ground, and no mar-

John's  
punish-  
ment.

Interdict.

riage could be solemnized within the walls of the church. This was the state of England for four years. Then the Pope excommunicated the king, and commissioned Philip to seize the English crown. At this, John yielded, and was ready to make any promise and pay any amount, if only he might keep his position.

**74. John's cruelty and injustice.** Philip could have made very little trouble for John if the English king had not all this time been treating his subjects so badly that some of them began to think they would rather have Philip for a ruler, and no one of them knew whether he would stand by his king or not. The charters that had been given to London and to other cities John had refused to respect, and he had forced many of the barons to give him large sums of money. The Jews especially had suffered in his determination to get their wealth. There is a record that one of them had borne agonizing torture without yielding to the unjust demands of the king, and finally John ordered one of his victim's teeth to be knocked out every day until he should give up his gold. The poor man submitted, after losing a tooth every morning for seven days. John had been as rapacious with the poor as with the rich, for he would even take away a man's tools by which he earned his bread, if the man could not pay the sum demanded. Men had been put into prison and refused a trial. Indeed, the only sure way to win a case was, not to have a just cause, but to make the king a present of money, horses, a suit of clothes, or even poultry or fish; for this king, who would take such great sums from the rich, did not scorn the smallest trifles, if a man could be forced to give nothing more. In punishing any misdeed, he would demand as large a sum as could be forced from the man accused. He taxed people, not by any regular law, but for as much as he could get.

**75. John asks for absolution.** When Archbishop Langton came to England, John went to him to ask for absolution, or the pardon of the church. The archbishop had learned just how John's subjects were suffering from his cruel treatment, and he boldly refused pardon until the king should promise to obey the laws of his ancestors and treat his people justly.

**76. Quarrel with the barons.** John promised without a moment's hesitation, but he soon showed that he had not the slightest idea of keeping his word. The fearless archbishop called together the clergy, barons, and other prominent men to meet in a church in London. When the other business of the meeting was ended, Langton told some of the barons that he had found the charter that Henry I. had given to his people a century before.

The barons seemed to have forgotten all about this charter, and they were delighted to find that they had so good a weapon. "When King John sees this," said they, "he will never dare to refuse what his great-grandfather promised so long ago." Then the charter was read aloud, and there before the altar the barons and the archbishop promised one another that they would stand by their rights. These barons were much more patient than those of the days of William the Conqueror, for they agreed to wait one year to see if the king would not improve.

The year passed, and then they again met in a church and took a solemn oath that if the king refused them justice they would make war upon him. Even after this they waited until Christmas. Then they went to John and asked him to repeat before the nation the promises that he had made to Langton when he received absolution. John was badly frightened, but

**The lost  
charter.**

**The barons'  
oath.**

he contrived to put them off till Easter. He thought that there would be some way out of the trouble by that time; but at Easter he was in an even more hopeless



MAGNA CARTA ISLAND, RUNNYMEDE.

condition than before, for now there was a great army all ready to fight against his tyranny.

What could he do? A king who would treat his subjects so unjustly would not hesitate to deceive them; and when John found that he must yield, he John  
yields. sent a polite message to the barons, saying that he was willing to meet them wherever they wished and to promise them whatever they desired.

71. **June 15, 1215. Magna Charta.** The barons requested him to come to Runnymede, a meadow on the Thames near Windsor, and there, June 15, 1215, he signed his name and affixed his seal to a piece of parchment that is now, brown, shriveled, and torn, in the British Museum. This is the famous Magna Charta, or

Great Charter, and just as the charters of towns secured for them many rights, so this secured for the whole English nation the right that their ruler should treat them justly.

The people were delighted, for they hoped that John would keep his word, and that England would now be happy and peaceful; but the king went into a perfect fury of rage. He threw the furniture about, and rolled over the floor like a madman, gnashing his teeth and biting at sticks and straws.

What were these promises which John had to sign and which, he said, made him "no longer a king but a slave"? One was that he would not delay justice or take bribes; another, that all fines for misdeeds should be fixed by law; another, that he would impose no taxes without the consent of his council; another, that he would give up his custom of seizing a large share of the property that any noble left when he died, for before this, John had been in the habit of taking as much as he chose, and if there were young children, he would take nearly all the income of the estate

The promises of Magna Charta.

*Joannes dei gra Rex Angl. Dux Guyen. Dux Normann. Aquit. & Comes  
Andeg. Archiep. Eborac. Cantuar. Beronib. Justic. totius Angl. ebor.  
comib. Preposit. Monach. & Abb. Balliv. & milib. Sicut  
Nullus liber homo capietur vel imprisonetur, nec dissolvatur, nec exilietur,  
aut exulet, aut aliquo modo destruitur, nec legem cum vicinis nec super eum mittunt nisi per legem terrae.*

FACSIMILE EXTRACT FROM MAGNA CHARTA

till the children were grown up. The most important pledge was that no free man should be imprisoned or punished in any way except by the lawful judgment of his equals. The barons promised that they would treat their vassals just as, on their part, they had made the king agree to treat them.

The barons feared that John would not keep his promises, so they had drawn up another paper giving them the right to take his castles and lands and annoy him by every means in their power if he broke his word. And John had to sign this too! Twenty-five overlords were specially appointed to keep watch of him. This charter was sent throughout the kingdom and was read aloud in all the churches.

**78. John's revenge.** John was in a fury and went off to the Isle of Wight to think what he could do to revenge himself on the barons. No one in England would help him, so he sent to the Continent and hired foreign soldiers to come over and fight for him. At first this plan seemed to be successful, for by their aid he took several strong castles from the barons; but it was worse for him in the end, for these soldiers were so cruel and wicked that the whole English nation hated John more than ever for bringing such people into the land.

**79. The Dauphin comes.** Again the barons met, and this time they were in such despair that they could think of nothing else to do but to invite the Dauphin, eldest son of King Philip of France, to be their ruler. He had married John's niece, so they tried their utmost to feel that he would really be an English king. The Dauphin was delighted to come, but he and his men behaved worse than the other foreign soldiers. They took possession of goods and castles, and even began to think of banishing the barons who had invited them to come.

**80. John's death.** Between John and the Frenchmen the barons hardly knew what to do, but just then John suddenly died. It is said that when he was crossing a dangerous place on the seashore, a high tide swept away quantities of the treasure that he was carrying with him, and that even his crown went under the waves. John had not been in the least penitent for the wrong that he had done his people, but he was so sorry to lose his treasure that he fell into a fever and died.

Wicked man as John was, it was an excellent thing for England that he had been its king, for if a man only half as bad had stood in his place, the barons would not have been aroused to make him sign the Great Charter. Several kings since the days of John have tried to deal unjustly with the nation, but in the end the English people have either driven them from the throne, or made them yield and keep the promises of the Charter.

### SUMMARY

John's supposed murder of his nephew brought about the loss of the French lands, a loss that was a gain, for the interest of the Norman barons became more fully centred in England, and they began to see that what was to the advantage of the English was also to their advantage. John's tyranny and injustice led to revolt on the part of the barons, and his quarrel with the church gave to the barons a fearless leader in Archbishop Langton. The result of the struggle was that John was forced to sign Magna Charta. This charter is the token not only of successful resistance to tyranny, but of a realization that the interests of church, nobles, and people were one.

### 8. HENRY III. 1216-1272

**81. The child king.** The only member of the royal family left to inherit the crown was a little boy named



Henry, who was but nine years old. Before this time it had never occurred to any one that it would answer at all to choose a child for king; but now the English must either choose him or else take some one not a member of the family that had ruled them for so long. They chose the child, and crowned him with a little circlet of gold, for the heavy crown that had been washed away into the sea had not been found.

This Henry III. was a gentle, amiable boy, but rather dull and slow. All laws were made in his name, but the barons were the real rulers until he was eighteen. There was no especial trouble in getting rid of the Dauphin, and, indeed, matters in general went on very well until



CORONATION OF HENRY III.

The king is represented as holding a model of Westminster Abbey, which he enlarged and beautified. The other two figures are the bishops of Winchester and Bath.

Henry was of age, though one law that the barons made would have greatly astonished William the Conqueror. This was that no one should be punished by death, even if he did go hunting in the royal forests.

**82. Henry's character.** As soon as Henry had full power in his own hands, England began to have a hard time again, for he would gratify his desire to display whether his subjects were pleased or not. When his

sister married the emperor of Germany, Henry gave her such splendid jewels and dresses and horses and golden dishes that people stared in amazement that even an empress should have such magnificence. Of course the English had to pay for all the lavishness, and when, the very next year, their king himself married, the demands were still larger. No one had ever heard of such extravagance as there was at the celebration of this marriage. Two or three years later a royal prince was born, and then the king, not satisfied with the generous presents that people made on such occasions, actually sent men about the country to ask for gifts. When he wanted money some years after this, he visited the homes of his subjects, and at the end of each visit he would invite his host to make him a present.

If this Henry III. had been a king of whom the English people could have been proud, they would have given to him as generously as they did to Richard; but his government was weak, he had never put an enemy to flight, and the clear-headed Englishmen began to realize how foolish it was to make themselves poor that such a king might have money to throw away. The people were long-suffering, but whenever they seemed ready to make a stand, the king would break down and weep and say that he meant them no wrong. He would promise whatever they asked, and perhaps he really meant to keep his promises, but he was so weak that he broke them at the first temptation. At last the moment came when the people would bear no more.

**83. Opposition to Henry.** Henry had been on the throne for more than forty years. His subjects' indignation had increased, because, in addition to all his other expenditures, he was sending to the Pope much larger sums than England could afford, and now on a promise

that one of the English princes should rule Sicily, Henry had agreed to give the Pope a great amount of money to help to make a conquest of the island. He The Sicilian question. called Parliament together, brought in his son wearing the Sicilian dress, and told the assembly what an honor it would be to England for the prince to be king of Sicily.

This was not a good time to ask for so much money to be sent out of the kingdom, for the English were carrying on a war with the Welsh, and there was a terrible famine besides. The barons refused to yield to Henry's demands, and finally a strong party was formed against him. The leader in this opposition was Simon Simon de Montfort. de Montfort, Henry's brother-in-law. The crown prince Edward also sided with the people, but when it really came to war, Edward would not desert his father, and he led the royal army.

De Montfort and the people won. They were not fighting to get rid of the king, but to make him treat his subjects fairly; and, instead of putting him off the throne, they called a Parliament in his name. This was in 1265, and the assembly was different from all previous Parliaments, for now not only clergymen and barons, Beginning of the House of Commons. 1265. but citizens and country gentlemen, were asked to come together to discuss the affairs of the nation. This was the beginning of the English House of Commons, the representation of men that have neither land nor rank.

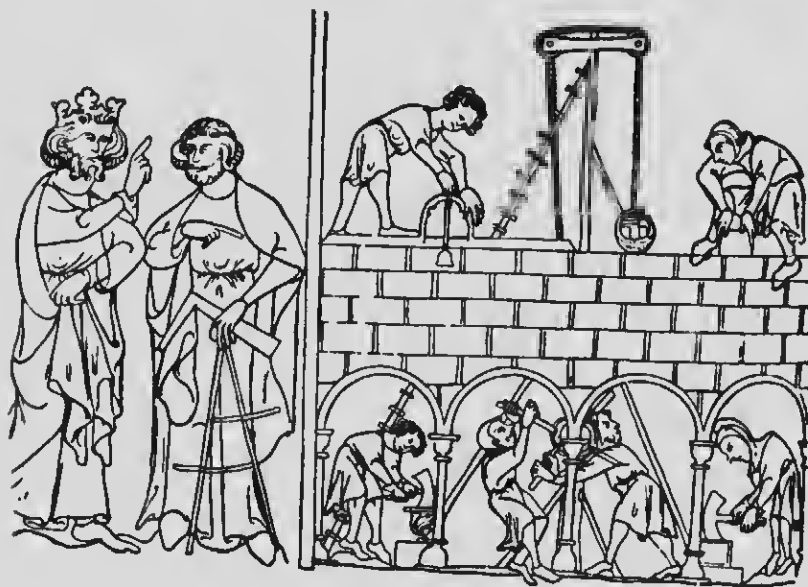
It is possible that Earl Simon, after endangering his life by heading a party against the king, may have felt that he was justly entitled to more power than the other barons. At any rate, they became Battle of Evesham. 1265. jealous, and a league was formed against him by Prince Edward. Of course there was fighting, and in

the battle of Evesham the earl was slain. An old ballad, probably written soon after the battle, says : —

“ Full cruelly they struck that day  
All with the brandished brand,  
But in the end Sir Edward's men  
They got the upper hand.

“ But by his death Earl Simon hath  
In sooth the victory won,  
Like Canterbury's martyr he  
There to the death was done.”<sup>1</sup>

This ballad shows how the people felt toward Simon de Montfort. When the battle of Evesham was raging, so



BUILDING OPERATIONS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY III.  
The king, to the left, is giving directions to the architect

terrible a thunderstorm suddenly arose that the monks in the abbey could not see the words of the psalms they

<sup>1</sup> F. York Powell's version.

were singing, and the soldiers had to stop fighting because they could not see their foes. Thousands of people thought this storm was sent to show that God was angry because the earl had been slain; and so many began to look upon him as a saint that a law was actually passed forbidding any one to say that miracles had been wrought at his grave.

**84. De Montfort's work.** Although to one looking on, it might have seemed as if, now that the earl was dead, his work was lost, yet his bold claim that men without either land or rank had a right to be represented in the government was a long step forward in securing to the people the freedom of thought and speech that did so much to render tyranny powerless.

### SUMMARY

Just as the wickedness of John aroused the opposition that resulted in Magna Charta, so the folly and extravagance of Henry III. called forth a demand for the representation of the people in Parliament. By the efforts of Simon de Montfort, citizens and country gentlemen, as well as nobles and great landowners, were asked to meet to discuss the affairs of the nation. From this beginning the House of Commons developed.

### 9. EDWARD I. 1272-1307

**85. The children's crusade.** When Henry III. died, his brave son Edward was in the Holy Land on a crusade. These expeditions had been going on ever since the days of William Rufus. Great numbers of the bravest young men of France and Germany and England had been slain. Thousands of children had died too, for one crusade was made up almost wholly of children, many of them not more than twelve years of age. These children had no idea of fighting, but they thought that

if they could only tell the unbelievers about Jesus, they would all become Christians.

Many of the children ran away from good homes, and sometimes their parents did not dare to hold them back, for they thought that perhaps God wished to rescue Jerusalem by means of these little ones. Few of the children had ever been far from home, and whenever a village came in sight, they would ask, "Is n't it Jerusalem yet?" They sang hymns on the long journey, and one of them we sing to-day, beginning: —

"Fairest Lord Jesus,  
Ruler of all nature."

It was a very hot summer, and many died of the heat. Then in crossing the Alps, even more died of the cold. The children thought that when they came to the sea a path would open for them, but the waves still beat upon the shore. Two merchants offered to take them over the water in their ships, and it was not known until many years later, that the merchants had carried them away and sold them as slaves.

**86. Gain from the crusades.** The crusaders did not gain possession of the Holy Land, but yet these expeditions were of great value, for people learned new ways of living. They learned to use new words and to think new thoughts. Men are often uncharitable just because they are ignorant, and the crusaders learned to look more kindly upon even the Saracens with whom they had fought, for they had seen that the heathen foes were often brave and truthful. One great change that the crusades helped to bring about in England was in regard to the ownership of land. Much of the land of the kingdom had been in the hands of a very few men, who were called lords of the

Land  
changes  
owners.

manor because they owned large farms, or manors. People living on the manors were not permitted to leave them, and must work so many days every year for the owner. When these lords wanted funds for a crusade, they were glad to accept money instead of work, and sometimes they would allow the workmen to buy a piece of land for themselves. The result was that at the end of the crusades many owned land, and all these people were especially anxious to have a good government, for they began to feel that if they owned a piece of England, then what was good for England was a gain to them.

**87. England's welcome to Edward.** The English people rejoiced to have Edward for king. He had fought against their champion, to be sure, but they felt that he really sympathized with them and fought only to support his father. Whether he was dead or alive, they did not know, since he had gone to the far-away east; but as soon as Henry III. was buried, the chief men of the kingdom met in Westminster Abbey, and in the hope that Edward was living they took a solemn oath that they would be true to him.

When he returned two years later, they gave him a most princely welcome. For more than two weeks everybody who could come to the great halls in London was feasted and had all the wine that he could drink. The houses were bright with hangings of silk and tapestry. Rich men threw money from their windows by the handful, and, strangest of all the ways of rejoicing, five hundred horses were let loose in the streets, and whoever chose might keep one for his own.

**88. Edward's reign is memorable for three reasons.** The king was called Edward I., for people counted only from the time of the Conqueror. There are three

reasons why his reign is worth remembering. The first is that before its close he had adopted the ideas of the dead Simon de Montfort, and had admitted to his Parliament representatives of the townsmen and of the lesser landowners.

The second is that he conquered Wales. The Welsh were descendants of the early Britons whom the Saxons had driven to the west; and, although they had often been obliged to pay tribute, they had never really submitted to the rule of an English king, and they had a prophecy that some day their own King

**Representa-  
tive Parlia-  
ment, 1295.**

**Conquest of  
Wales, 1282.**



PLANTAGENET KING AT TABLE

Arthur would come back and help them to drive away the invaders. Edward won several victories, and finally obliged the Welsh to acknowledge him as their ruler. Of course they did this most unwillingly, but matters seemed a little better when Edward told them that he



would give them a prince who had been born in their land and who had never spoken a word of **The Prince of Wales.** English. Behold, when their prince was presented to them, he was Edward's baby son, who had been born in Wales a few months before and was too young to speak a word of any language. He was called Prince of Wales, and that is why the eldest son of the English sovereign usually receives that title, though he has no more power over Wales than over any other part of the kingdom.

The third reason for remembering the reign of Edward is his attempt to conquer Scotland. This was far more difficult than to subdue Wales. In Scotland there were the descendants of a people **Attempt to conquer Scotland.** called Scots, who had long before come from the north of Ireland and had given their name to the country. There were descendants of Picts and of Danes; of Englishmen whom William the Conqueror had driven from their homes; also some descendants of Normans. All these people were united in wishing Scotland to be free, but they took an unwise step which put them into Edward's power.

The Scottish king had died, leaving no children, and thirteen distant relatives claimed the throne. Edward was called a wise ruler, and the Scots asked **Bruce or Balliol?** him to choose among the thirteen. He replied that the Scots must first acknowledge him as overlord. They agreed, and he decided in favor of Balliol, though a man named Robert Bruce had a claim that many thought equally good.

Soon Edward began to behave so much as if he himself were king of Scotland that even Balliol **The Stone of Scone.** revolted. Then Edward came with his army, put Balliol from the throne, and subdued the Scots.

When he went home, he carried with him to London a stone upon which the kings of Scotland always sat when they were crowned. It



CORONATION CHAIR WITH STONE OF  
SCONE

is called the Stone of Scone, and the people believed that it was the very one that Jacob had for a pillow when he dreamed of the ladder and the angels; and that it had been carried from Bethel to Egypt, Spain, Ireland, and finally to Scotland. Edward put it into a chair in Westminster Abbey, and it is on this stone that the king of England sits at his coronation. The only comfort that the Scots had in its loss was an old prophecy that wherever the stone

was, there the Scots should rule.

Scotland was not conquered. She only waited for a leader, and soon a brave, strong man appeared named William Wallace. He knew that he could not meet the great numbers of English that would come against him, so he planned to starve them out, and when the English were coming, the people would burn what they could not carry, and then run away. After a while, however, the great English army overpowered the few Scotsmen. Wallace was captured and put to death.

The heir of Robert Bruce was his grandson, a young man by the same name. Edward had kept him at the English court, but one snowy morning he was missing. There were footprints of horses in the snow, but they pointed toward London, and no one guessed that the wise young man had had the shoes put on reversed. He escaped to Scotland and was crowned. At first he had to hide in the mountains, but he always had faithful friends, and he never was discouraged. After a while he began to be successful, and there came a time when no one knew whether he or Edward would conquer. The English king was old and feeble, but he was as resolute as ever, and he set out to subdue Scotland once for all. Before he was out of England, he fell ill and died. His last wishes were that his bones should be wrapped in an ox-hide, and that his son — the one who had been the baby Prince of Wales — should carry them at the head of the English army till Scotland should be subdued. This was not done, however, for Edward was buried with his forefathers in Westminster Abbey.

Young  
Robert  
Bruce.



WILLIAM WALLACE

89. Banishment of the Jews. 1290. About the middle of Edward's reign he banished the Jews from the

kingdom. Thus far the English kings had allowed them to stay and had treated them less cruelly than had the kings on the continent. This comparative kindness was not for the benefit of the Jews, however, but simply because they seemed to know how to amass money better than other people, and the kings found it convenient to be able to help themselves from the Jewish hoard. When the Jews made loans, it was always doubtful whether they would ever see their money again, and so to make up for this risk, they charged enormous interest. The English now claimed that this high rate of interest was an injury to the country. Then, too, many people never looked at a Jew without thinking of the crucifixion of Christ, and fancying that even the Jews of twelve hundred years later were to blame for it. At any rate, they were driven out of England, sixteen thousand of them, and it is possible that no other deed of Edward's reign brought him so much praise as their cruel expulsion.

**90. Literary progress.** In the two centuries since the battle of Senlac, the English people had made much progress in freedom of thought. They had also made progress in their manner of expressing their thoughts. The French had found it quite worth while to know English, and the English had found it convenient to know French. More and more, however, people were looking upon a knowledge of French as an accomplishment and upon English as the real language of the country. This English had been greatly changed since the days when the minstrels sang of Beowulf, and one of the changes was the result of borrowing words from the French. Words that were nearly alike in both languages were pronounced just as it happened; and as for the spelling, they were spelled in

English is  
enriched by  
new words.

whatever way came to mind first. In order that those who knew but one language might understand, the custom arose of using two words, one from the French and one from the English, meaning the same thing; and that is one reason why our English of to-day has so many synonyms, or pairs of words with nearly the same signification; such as cordial, hearty; desire, wish; act, deed; humble, lowly; confess, acknowledge. No matter how many words English may take from the French or from any other language, it always makes them wear an English dress; for instance, *telephone* is from the Greek, but we say *telephone-s* and *telephon-ing*, and the *s* and the *ing* are not Greek, but English.

The books that were written were chiefly about England and her history; some of this history is true, and some of it goes back to the half-fabulous days of King Arthur. The unwritten literature, **Ballads, the real literature.** however, is far more attractive. In the days of the weak King Stephen, the cruel barons robbed the people so unmercifully that many abandoned their homes and went to live in the forests. Then it was that men began to make ballads about bold Robin Hood, **Robin Hood.** the merry outlaw who took from the rich and gave to the poor, who played all sorts of pranks on sheriffs and wealthy bishops, but who was always ready to help any one in trouble.

It was a long time before the ballads were written, but they were sung throughout the land. As in the days of Richard a minstrel might go where he would and always find a hearty greeting, so any man who could sing a ballad was ever a welcome guest. People would gather in groups at any time to listen to him. The ballads were on well-known old stories, or on any recent event that struck the fancy of the singer. He

would never try to remember how another man had sung the song, but would sing what chanced to come to his own mind, and make up lines whenever he forgot. The song changed with every singer.

The accounts of early England that were written in this century are interesting, but even though the monks that wrote them would have been greatly shocked at the thought that their pages of dignified Latin were not so valuable as the street songs, it is, after all, the ballads



A BAND OF MINSTRELS

that are the real English literature of the century, the real voice of the masses of the English people.

### SUMMARY

One important result of the crusades was that the number of people holding land had greatly increased; another was that new thoughts and a wider knowledge had come to England. In this reign Wales was conquered; but, owing to the brave leadership of Wallace and then of Bruce, Scotland was only partially subdued. Bigotry and narrowness were shown in the expulsion of the Jews, but freedom gained in the representation of all classes in a regularly organized Parliament.

English became more and more the language of the people. History was written, but the best English literature of the period was the unwritten ballads.



## 10. EDWARD II. 1307-1327

91. **Edward II. and his favorite.** Now that Edward I. was dead, the Prince of Wales became king and was called Edward II. He sat on the throne, but the real ruler of the land was a young Frenchman named Piers Gaveston. He was a foolish, frivolous man, and Edward I. and his Parliament had banished him ; but almost the first thing that this new king did was to call him back. Then Edward had the unworthy favorite walk next to himself at the coronation ceremonies, and when the king went to France for his bride, he made Gaveston regent during his absence. He gave him great numbers of costly gifts, jewels, gold plate, and all kinds of beautiful things ; though many of them belonged to the crown, and he had no right to give them away. At last the country would bear with Gaveston no longer, and he was banished for having stolen public money and for other crimes. In a short time the king called him back, and proclaimed that he was a "true and loyal subject." The barons were not convinced of that, and he was put to death.

92. **War with Scotland continues.** All this time Robert Bruce was growing stronger, and at last he besieged Stirling Castle, the one stronghold in Scotland that remained in English hands. For the only time, Edward led his army in person. It was a large army, and Bruce had only a few men, but every Scotsman seemed to be a hero. At Bannockburn their leader dug trenches, or pits, in the way by which the English would have to come. Then he planted in these pits pointed stakes, and spread turf and rushes over them. Line after line of the English fell, and in spite of the mighty army against them, the Scots won a tremen-



dous victory. The king ran to save his life, for the Scots were not satisfied with one victory, but pursued the foe even across the border. After so disastrous a defeat, it is no wonder that the English were ready to make a treaty of peace.

**Battle of  
Bannock-  
burn.  
1314.**

93. **Edward is deposed.** Edward had other favorites by this time, and they were as frivolous as Gaveston. The queen, too, had a favorite, one Mortimer; and these



STIRLING CASTLE

two came over from France with an army and drove the king into Wales. The country had borne all that it could bear. Parliament met, and sent commissioners to the king to demand that he should resign the crown that he had worn so unworthily.

It must have been a most impressive scene. Instead of making any defence, the king burst into tears and thanked Parliament most humbly for having chosen his son to take his place. The Speaker of the House of Parliament then said: "In the name of all the people

of the land, I renounce the oath of fealty that was made to you."

To order a king to give up his crown was quite a new proceeding, and it shows plainly how the power of kings had decreased and the power of their subjects increased that any Parliament should venture to make such a demand. What would William the Conqueror have said!

Edward was taken to a castle and kept in imprisonment for several months. Then he was secretly murdered, many thought by his wicked wife and Mortimer.

### SUMMARY

The real rulers of the land were the unworthy favorites of the king. After the defeat at Bannockburn, Edward was forced to make a treaty with the Scots. The queen and her favorite drove him into Wales; and finally, the English people exercised for the first time their right to depose a weak and worthless sovereign.

### II. EDWARD III. 1327-1377

**94. Scotland becomes independent.** Almost the first that we know of Edward III., the boy of fourteen who was left in 1327 to rule the kingdom, is that the very next year this boy put himself at the head of the army and marched against Scotland. The wise leaders of the Scots proved to be better generals than the young king and his advisers, and it is said that the eager, disappointed boy wept bitterly when he was finally obliged to return to England and sign a treaty acknowledging the independence of the Scots.

This treaty was not at all pleasing to the people, and they blamed the wicked queen and her favorite Mortimer for bringing it about. When Edward was three years older, he saw that he must no longer allow the pair to

rule. Mortimer was arrested, and Parliament put him to death as a traitor. The queen was imprisoned in her palace.

**95. Cause of the Hundred Years' War.** Just as William the Conqueror had claimed the crown of England partly on the ground of his being cousin to Edward the Confessor, so this Edward III., when he was twenty-four years of age, laid claim to the crown of France on the ground of relationship to the late king. He even put on his coins, "Edward III., King of England and France." His chief allies were the people of Flanders, and the reason for their friendship was because they wished to buy wool.

Flanders  
aids Eng-  
land.

England produced large quantities of wool, but did not attempt to weave any except coarse cloths. Flanders bought the wool, made fine cloth, and sold it to England. During some troubles between Scotland and England, France, as the ally of Scotland, had seized upon English vessels carrying wool to Flanders, and this had stopped the work of the Flemish weavers and had greatly injured the business of the country.

A war to secure the crown of France for the ruler of England began, and did not end for a century. In the first few years of this struggle, there was a fierce naval fight and also a great battle on land, and the English won both. The naval fight was off the mouth of the Schelde. The English won such a victory that no one dared to tell the loss to the French king.

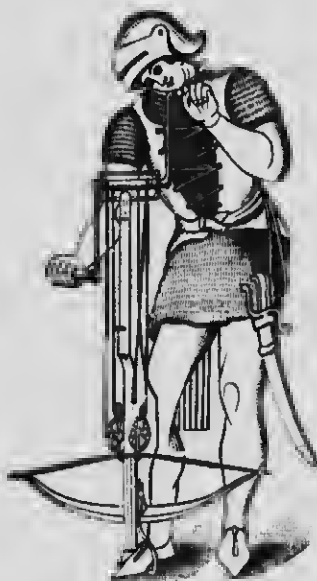
**96. Edward invades France.** In 1346 Edward landed in France, and just as the Conqueror fell when he landed in England, so Edward fell when first he touched his foot to French ground.

"Sir king, go back to your ship," his men pleaded. "Land some other day, for truly, this is a bad omen for us."

"Why?" asked the quick-witted king. "It is a good omen, for it shows that the land herself is eager to receive me."

Onward the army marched, plundering and burning, and sending on board the ships much treasure, and all the prisoners that would be able to pay a generous ransom. By and by the English came to Crécy, and there a battle was fought. The French had many more soldiers than the English, but the English troops were well trained and obeyed orders, while the French sometimes obeyed and sometimes did not. Moreover, the English had a good position, but the French had the sun in their eyes.

**Battle of  
Crécy.  
1346.**



A GENOESE CROSSBOWMAN  
Winding up or bending his crossbow

The French felt sure of winning the battle because they had hired fifteen thousand men from Genoa to fight with crossbows. These Genoese dashed forward with a loud cry; but the English stood still. They dashed forward again with a louder cry, but not an Englishman stirred. They came the third time, and now they shot. Then the English archers stepped forward just one pace and shot a storm of arrows. A little earlier there had been a shower, which had wet the strings of the crossbows that the Genoese used, but the English had been able to keep their strings dry. The result was that the arrows of the Genoese did little harm, but every English arrow counted. Moreover, the English

could shoot much more rapidly, for the Genoese had to wind up their crossbows with a crank before every shot. The French ran, and the English pursued; and then some Welsh, who were armed with short, broad knives, dashed upon the fugitives, and the day was won for England.

Edward's son, the Black Prince, as he was called, perhaps from the color of his armor, was on the field, and once when he was in danger, his friends appealed to the king to come to his aid.

**The Black Prince.**

"Is he thrown from his horse?" asked the king.

"No," they answered.

"Then let him win his spurs," said the king, "and the glory of the victory shall be his."

When the battle was over, the king kissed the prince and said:—

"You are my good son, and you are worthy to keep a realm."

It is possible that cannon were used in this battle, but they were very small, and hardly did more than to frighten the horses.

After the battle of Crécy, the English pushed on to Calais and besieged the town. The brave defenders held out for a whole year, and when they surrendered, it was only because they were starving. Edward was so angry at the resistance that he said he would

**Siege of Calais.**



AN ENGLISH ARCHER

show no mercy unless six of the principal citizens would come forth in their shirts, bareheaded and barefooted and with ropes about their necks, that he might do with them as he would. The people of Calais wept at this hard decree, but the richest man in the town said, "I

will be the first to risk my life to save the people." Five others followed, and when they stood before the king, he bade that they should all be hanged.



THE BLACK PRINCE

From the effigy on his tomb  
in Canterbury Cathedral

Then Queen Philippa fell on her knees before him and said: "I came over the sea to you in much peril, and no boon have I desired of you. Now I beg that in the honor of the Son of the Virgin Mary and for the love of me, you will have mercy on these six citizens."

To this the king answered: "Ah, lady, I wish you had been in some other place, but I cannot deny you."

Thereupon the queen clothed the six men and feasted them, and set them free to go back to their own city

again. The one who tells us this story and many more like it was Queen Philippa's secretary, a man named Froissart. He lived in England and in France, and he wrote most interesting accounts of what he saw and what he heard.

After Crécy there was a truce of several years; then in 1356 came an important battle at Poitiers. The Black Prince was in command and captured the French king. Froissart says that the prince treated his prisoner with the utmost courtesy,

Battle of  
Poitiers.  
1356.

even waiting on him at table, and humbly refusing to sit by him, saying: "I am not worthy to sit by so valiant a man as your actions have this day shown you to be."

**97. England's new idea.** England was exceedingly proud of the victory at Crécy, but this battle gave her more than glory, it gave her a new idea. Before this, people had always thought that the only way to prepare a man for battle was to cover him with a heavy, clumsy coat of mail, set him on a horse, and put a lance into his hand. When they saw that the battle of Crécy was won by men who had neither coat of mail, spear, nor horse, they discovered that in battle a yeoman is as good as a knight. Before this, people had thought that the only way for poor folk to live was to stay on the manor of some knight, because he had a horse and armor and could protect them. The new idea that had come to England was that even people without horse or armor could protect themselves.

**98. The Black Death.** This fact alone might not for a long time have made any general change in the way of living, but two or three years later, while people were slowly beginning to take in this new thought, a terrible pestilence, called the Black Death, swept over Europe, coming last of all to England. It is thought that nearly half of the population died. In some of the cities so many were dead that grass grew in the principal streets; and in the country matters were even worse, for sometimes nearly all the people on a manor died. What caused the disease is not known, but we are sure that it was much more severe than it would otherwise have been because the houses were so dirty and small and dark and had so few windows. Piles of rubbish and puddles of filthy water were just outside the doors. In the city, the streets were narrow, there was no drainage, and there was not even the good air of the country.

**99. Some results of the French wars and the Black Death.** During the crusades, as has been said, the lords would often allow their tenants, or villeins, as they were called, to pay their dues in money instead of in work. Even then some that might have been free remained on the manor, because, if they went away, there was no work by which they could support themselves, since all the other manors had men enough. People had learned during the crusades that a man who was born a villein need not always remain a villein. Crécy had taught them that they could protect themselves without the help of a knight; and now that so many had died of the Black Death, there were always manors that needed workmen. Moreover, Queen Philippa, who was a Fleming, had brought men from Flanders to teach the English how to weave fine woolen cloth; so that now if a villein ran away, he could work on a manor for money, or go to a city and learn to weave; and there was an old law by which if he could manage to stay away from the manor a year and a day, he was free, and could never be obliged to return.

There was so much work, and so few wished to work on the manors, that wages became very high. **High wages.** The king made a law that whoever demanded more pay than was given before the Black Death should be imprisoned, and if a runaway villein was caught, he was branded on the forehead with an *F* for *fugitive*. The price of grain had risen so that the old day's wages would not support a man for a day, and of course workmen demanded more. Poor people began to sympathize with one another more than ever before, perhaps because they had all suffered so much in the Black Death, and every one who had a little money would help those that had none.



Many ran away just because they wanted a change. These men were used to being watched all the time and told what to do every hour of the day, and when they had left the manor, they did not know what to think or how to behave with so much liberty. They became lawless, and soon they began to feel that it was an injury to them that others were richer, and they fancied that it was only fair to get all that they could from those that had more than they; many of them, therefore, became beggars and robbers. A man named John Ball went about the country preaching that property ought to be taken from the rich and divided among the poor. He said: —

"How are these lords any greater folk than we? How do they deserve wealth any more than we? They came from Adam and Eve just as we did. Why should they wear velvet and fur while we are covered with rags? Why should they have white bread and wine while we have oat-cake and water? Why are they gentlemen any more than we?"

Everybody began to repeat the rhyme, —

"When Adam delved and Eve span,  
Who was then the gentleman?"

100. Mistakes of the church. The poor especially were feeling much interest in religious matters. They

John Ball's  
preaching.



JOHN BALL PREACHING FROM HORSE-  
BACK

had suffered in the Black Death, and they longed for aid and comfort. The church did not seem to realize her opportunity to help those that were begging for help, but went on gathering in large sums of money hoth to keep in England and to send to Rome. Great amounts were given to foreign clergymen who held positions in England, though they had never seen the country. They had their income sent to them, but they hired some one at a low rate to do the work of the parish.

William Langland, who seems himself to have been a priest and to have spent his early life in poverty, wrote a famous book called "Piers Plowman," in which **Piers Plowman.** he described the struggles of the poor, how much they had to suffer from cold, and how hard it was for them to save enough of even the coarsest food to last through the winter. He told each class of people how they might become better, for, unlike John Ball, he had no wish to overturn church or laws, and he believed that all would be well if every one would only do his best. This book was written in English, though many French words were used; and long before the end of Edward III.'s reign a law was made that in courts of justice all cases should be pleaded in English. This is proof that English had become the language of the people of England.

### SUMMARY

Edward was forced to acknowledge the independence of Scotland; but he laid claim to the throne of France, and this claim led to the Hundred Years' War. The victory won by the yeomen at Crécy showed that a villein need not depend upon a noble for protection. The Black Death gave his work on the land a greatly increased value, while the manufacture of fine woolens in England enabled him to support himself

if he escaped from the manor. The first effect of these changes was a large increase in the number of beggars and robbers; the final effect was the overthrow of villeinage.

## 12. RICHARD II. 1377-1399

101. **The Peasants' Revolt of 1381.** The Black Prince had died one year before his father, and again a boy, Richard II., was placed on the throne. Richard was the son of the Black Prince, and was as brave as his father and his grandfather had been. Edward III. had put himself at the head of the army when he was only fourteen, and this boy, when he was of about the same age, mounted his horse and rode fearlessly up to a mob of angry men.

This is the way that it came about. The Hundred Years' War was going on with France, and there was also war with Scotland. More money was needed than the ordinary taxes would provide. Finally a new plan was tried, and that was to tax every person in the kingdom twelve pence, a sum that would be equal to about as much as a laborer could earn in two weeks. People were already feeling angry and indignant with the nobles and the other wealthy men of the land, and this demand was more than they could bear. A tax-<sup>Wat</sup> collector insulted the daughter of Wat Tyler, a <sup>Tyler.</sup> working man, and in a moment her father's heavy hammer had laid him dead on the ground. Crowds came together near London, and crowds came together all over the kingdom, as if the father's blow had been a signal. Wat Tyler talked to them about their wrongs, and John Ball talked to them, and they became more angry every minute. They put to death some people who, they thought, had done them harm, and they destroyed some property. They were especially anxious to burn the lists

that were kept on every manor of the names of the villeins and the work required of each, for they fancied that if these lists were burned, no villein could be forced to return to the manor.

Finally, they were allowed to come into London, for so many Londoners sympathized with them that the coun-  
**Revolters** cillors did not dare to attempt to shut the gates,  
**enter** lest the sympathizers should do harm within  
**London.** the city, and the peasants should do harm outside the walls. Once in the city, the peasants behaved remarkably well at first, but before night they drank quantities of wine, and then they became so excited and furious that no one knew what would happen the next morning.

When morning came, part of the mob left the city, and then sent a petition to the king, making four  
**Petition** requests : that they should be free men ; that  
**of the re-** even their leaders should not be punished ; that  
**vollers.** land should be rented at a uniform rate ; and that they might buy and sell wherever they chose. The king promised to grant what they asked, and many of them went home ; but some had stayed in London and did not know what the king had said. The more violent of the insurgents seem to have been among those who remained in the city, and Wat Tyler was with them. He had no idea of yielding, and he threatened to strike down the mayor of London. Wat was himself struck down, and in a moment his followers were ready to shoot.

**Richard's** There would probably have been a terrible  
**courage.** slaughter if the boy king had not dashed away from his attendants to the front of the mob, and called out, "I am your king, and I will be your leader."

The mob were so pleased with the boy's courage that they never seemed to doubt that he would keep his

promises ; and perhaps he would have done so if he had been free, though, when he promised, he did not know of some murders that the mob had just committed ; but Parliament utterly refused to even think of giving up villeinage, and punished the people most severely. It is said that fifteen hundred were executed. So ended the famous Peasants' Revolt of 1381.

End of the  
Peasants'  
Revolt.

102. **John Wiclif.** It was a great mystery how it happened that peasants all over the kingdom should rise at the same instant. The only organization people could think of that might have brought this about was the one framed by a clergyman



JOHN WICLIF

named Wiclif. He had felt that there was much in the church and in the priests that ought to be reformed ; and one thing was the lack of the teaching and help that ought to have been given to the humbler people of the land. He formed bands called "Poor Priests" and sent them throughout the country. They

"Poor  
Priests."

wore bright red cloaks and went barefoot, with staff in hand, from village to village, preaching the gospel to the poor.

That would hardly have raised a revolt, but Wiclif had a peculiar doctrine that may have helped to do harm. He said that God owned all property, and that He let men hold it if they would serve Him. "Then," said Wiclif, "if a man is not serving God, he has no right to property."

Probably Wiclif meant that even if property was in a man's hands, it might not be really his own in the truest sense, because, if he was not trying to serve God with it, his wealth would do him no real good; but many unthinking people would interpret his words as meaning that any one might take away a man's property if he was not making good use of it; and as the masses of working people were then feeling, they would think that no one who had more money than they could be using it properly.

Wiclif will always be remembered, not so much for his connection with the "Poor Priests" as for his translation of the Bible, for before him it had never been translated into English. There was no printing as yet, and the copies were exceedingly expensive. It is said that the New Testament cost an amount equal to one hundred and fifty dollars to-day; and when a book was bought, there had to be witnesses, and as much formality as there is now about buying a house. Even the University of Oxford is said to have had for its library only a few manuscripts kept in a chest. Of course, it took a long time to copy a book in plain writing; but wealthy people often wished for books whose capitals were brilliantly painted or *illuminated*, and such books cost a great deal more.

Wiclif's  
"doctrine  
of the king-  
dom of  
God."

Wiclif  
translates  
the Bible.  
1380.

Cost of  
books.

The colors of these capitals have lasted so well that they are to-day just as beautiful as ever.

103. **Chaucer.** Not all the books were on theology. Through Richard's reign and through much of his grandfather's before him, a famous poet lived, named Chaucer. He was probably born in London, held office in the court, was taken prisoner in war, but was soon set free. His great work is a long poem called the "Canterbury Tales." The story of it is that he starts to go on a pilgrimage to the shrine of Thomas à Becket at Canterbury. At the Tabard Inn he finds a company of



GEOFFREY CHAUCER

men and women, all on their way to the same shrine, for, he says, when spring comes, people long to go on pilgrimages. The inn-keeper is a merry, good-natured man, and he proposes that they all go together and tell stories on the way. Then on their return, whoever has told the best story shall have a good supper at the expense of the rest.

Chaucer's book is made up of the stories that the pilgrims told. There were all sorts of people, a knight, a squire, a monk, a nun, a scholar, a cook, a sailor, a

**The Canterbury Tales.**

parish priest, and many others; and therefore there are all sorts of tales. In those days it was thought perfectly right for a man to take any story that he had heard, tell it in his own way, and call it his; so Chaucer took the plot of a story from wherever he found it, but it is his way of telling a tale that we like especially. He makes us feel as if we had really seen the people whom he describes. That Chaucer, who spent so much time at



A GROUP OF CANTERBURY PILGRIMS

court, should have written his poem in English is proof that neither Latin nor French, but English, made richer by many new words from the French, had become the literary language of the land.

**104. Richard's marriage.** No class of people had



been very fond of Richard. The rich said that he sympathized with Wiclif and the poor, while the poor were indignant at his extravagance. He was arbitrary, and often took his own way without the least regard to the laws. Even what he did with the best motives sometimes made people angry; for instance, when his wife died, he thought that it would make peace with France if he married the little eight-year old Isabella, daughter of the French king. There is a tradition that a great English noble knelt at the feet of the little girl and said: "Fair lady, by the grace of God ye shall be our lady and queen of England."

Then answered the child, all of her own accord: "Sir, an it please God and my lord my father that I shall be queen of England, I shall be glad thereof, for it is showed me that I shall then be a great lady."

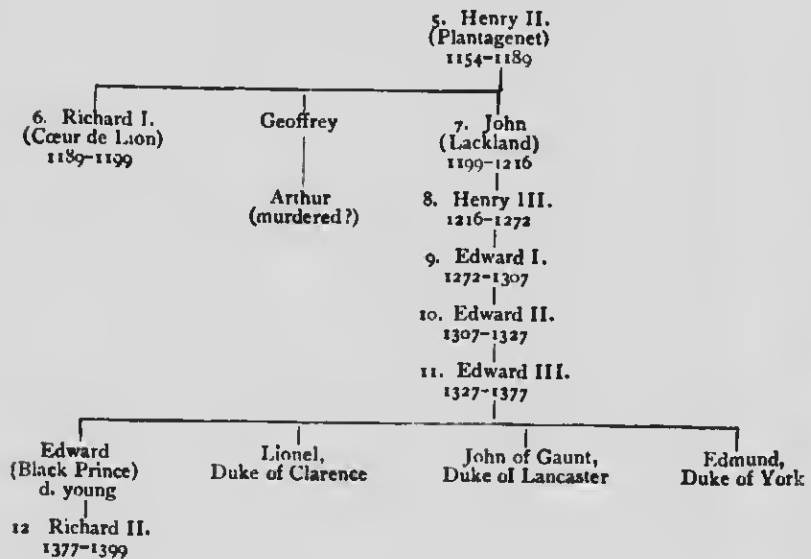
The marriage ceremony was gone through with, and at the marriage feasts the child queen sat beside the king. When, near the end of his reign, Richard left her to go to Ireland, he caught her up in his arms and kissed her and said: "Adieu, madam! adieu till we meet again."

**105. Richard II. is deposed.** While he was gone, one of his cousins, known afterwards as Henry IV. of Lancaster, appealed to Parliament to make him king on the ground that Richard had forfeited the throne by his tyranny and injustice. Parliament agreed with Henry. Richard was forced to abdicate, and Henry was chosen king. There was a little boy named Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March, who was descended from an older son of Edward III. than the son from whom Henry came, but England did not wish to put the crown on a child's head again, even if he had a better hereditary right. It may be that Parliament was wise, but this decision led to many long years of warfare and bloodshed.

## SUMMARY

The last quarter of the fourteenth century brought about further changes for the better in the condition of the poor. The Peasants' Revolt hastened the disappearance of villeinage. Wiclif's "Poor Priests" met the longings of the people to know more of religion, and his translation made it possible for an Englishman to read the Bible in his own language. Chaucer, last of the old poets and first of the new, wrote the "Canterbury Tales," not in Latin, but in English. The deposition of Richard in favor of Henry IV. led to the fiercely contested battlefields of the Wars of the Roses.

## THE ANGEVINS, OR PLANTAGENETS



## CHAPTER V

### THE -KINGS OF LANCASTER AND YORK

1399-1485

#### 13. HENRY IV. 1399-1413

**106. Opposition to Henry.** While Henry IV. was on the throne, he had much trouble with both his friends and his enemies. Many people felt that he was not the rightful king, and even before he was crowned, there were plots against him. King Richard had been imprisoned in a strong castle with Henry's men to guard him. Within a month it was said that he had died, but, although his body was carried to London and seen in Saint Paul's Cathedral by every one who chose, yet this death was so convenient for Henry that many people believed that Richard had been murdered.

On the other hand, there were many who were equally sure that the body shown in Saint Paul's was not that of Richard, but of some other man, and that the real Richard was hidden away somewhere in Scotland. The Welsh had always liked him, and they were ready to battle for his rights in the hope that he was still alive, or for the child Edmund Mortimer, if Richard was dead. Henry set out with his men to subdue Wales.

It was not at all marvellous that in a mountainous country like Wales there should have been heavy tempests in the autumn, but the English soldiers were always afraid of witchcraft, and they believed that the

leader of the Welsh had brought the storms upon them by magic. They were ready to fight any number of men, but storms raised by evil spirits were quite another matter, and they were so frightened that Henry actually had to turn about and go home.

**107. War with France.** The child queen of Richard, now a girl of fourteen, had been sent back to France. Her journey was made with all possible ceremony, and she had a splendid escort ; but France was angry both because she was no longer a queen and also because



HENRY IV. AND HIS COURT<sup>1</sup>

Henry did not send back with her the dower that she had brought to England. The result of this was that there was trouble with France.

**108. Trouble with Scotland.** Scotland was always inclined to be friendly with France, and now the Scots made various invasions into northern England. There were few real battles, but there were continual skirmishes along the borders of the two countries. On the

<sup>1</sup> From a book entitled *Regimine Principis*, translated from the Latin at the command of Henry IV., by Hoccleve, a disciple of Chaucer. Hoccleve is here represented as presenting the book to the king, who is seated attired in his royal robes, surrounded by his court.

Scottish side was the Douglas family, and on the English were the Percies. One family would start out with all their retainers for a day's hunting on the other side of the border. Then, if they met the other family — a thing that both parties hoped would come to pass — there would be a fight. Many stirring ballads were afterwards written about these skirmishes. The **Chevy Chase.** best one is "Chevy Chase," which begins: —

"The Percy out of Northumberland  
And a vow to God made he,  
That he would hunt in the mountains  
Of Cheviot within days three,  
In the maugre of doughty Douglas  
And all that ever with him be."

The Percies had been strong friends of Henry's; indeed, he could hardly have gained the throne **Battle of Shrewsbury. 1403.** without their aid. Moreover, they had finally driven the Scots out of Northumberland for him. Of course they expected a reward, but Henry had little money, and he could not be nearly so bold in demanding it of Parliament as he would have been if he had had a right to the throne that no one could dispute. The Percies were especially indignant because he had refused to ransom a kinsman of theirs who had fallen into the hands of the Welsh. Finally, they united with the Welsh, who were helped by France, and a fierce battle was fought at Shrewsbury on the borders of Wales. The king's forces were victorious, and young Harry Percy, who was so quick-tempered that he was called "Hotspur," was slain. This ended the rebellion, but there was much worse trouble yet to come from the fact that there was a little Edmund Mortimer in existence.

109. The first burning for heresy. 1401. The reign of Henry IV. will always be remembered as the first

reign during which any one was burned for heresy, or not believing what the church taught. Henry was not a cruel man, but he wished to be sure of the support of the church, so he gave his favor to a law that punished heresy with burning at the stake. The first one to die was a London clergyman who was a follower of Wiclif. There was one other death at the stake and only one, for the people as a whole did not believe in any such barbarity, and Henry did not dare to oppose too strongly the will of the nation.

**110. Death of Henry IV.** Henry IV. had a reign of only fourteen years. During the latter part of his life he suffered from some disease that no one knew how to cure. Whatever the trouble may have been, the attacks came upon him unexpectedly, and one day when he was praying in Westminster Abbey, he suddenly became hopelessly ill. Henry had never forgotten a prophecy made long before, that he should die in Jerusalem. Perhaps this was what had given him so much interest in the Holy Land that if he had dared to leave the kingdom he might possibly have led a crusade, for to die in Jerusalem was to go straight to heaven. When he was taken ill, he was carried to a room in the Abbey, and when he came to himself, his first question was, "Where am I? Where have you taken me?" "This is called the Jerusalem Chamber," said the attendants. "Thanks be to the Father of Heaven," said he, "that I shall indeed die in Jerusalem."

**111. Prince Henry and the judge.** His eldest son, who was also a Henry, was to succeed him. In his youth the prince was probably as fond of a good time as if he had not been of the royal blood. The story is told that on the arrest of one of his servants the young prince went to the judge in a rage and demanded that the man be set free.

Then said the judge: "Sir prince, I humbly beg that if you would not have your servant dealt with according to the laws of the realm, you would bring me a pardon for the man from his majesty the king."

The prince was so angry that he tried to rescue his servant by force, and dashed forward so that men thought he would verily kill the judge on the bench.

The judge said calmly: "Sir prince, remember that I am here in place of the king, to whom you owe the obedience of a subject and of a son. Moreover, you should give good example of obedience to those that will some day be your own subjects." The prince's hand fell to his side, and the judge went on: "And now for your contempt and disobedience, go you to the prison of the King's Bench, and there remain until the pleasure of your father be known." Dropping his weapon, the prince did reverence to the judge and went to the prison, "as he was commanded."

When this was told to the king, he said: "Thank God that I have a judge who fears not to administer justice, and a son who can obey justice."

#### SUMMARY

Henry's lack of hereditary claim to the throne opened the way to opposition and conspiracy. Trouble with France arose, and the sympathy of Scotland with the French led to border forays famous in ballad and story. By lords, king, and bishops, burning for heresy was declared legal, but it was so contrary to the will of the people that it was inflicted in but two instances.

## 14. HENRY V. 1413-1422

**112. Generosity of Henry V.** Henry IV. made his friends into enemies; Henry V. made his enemies into friends. The little Edmund Mortimer was now a tall young man who might have formed a party against the king, but Henry had no idea of keeping him in prison, and almost the first thing that he did was to set him free. Then, too, there were the Percies of Northumberland, who had revolted in the preceding reign and had been punished by the loss of their estates; and now to the son of Harry Hotspur King Henry gave back both title and lands. Henry trusted the Percies, and they were always true to him; and as for Mortimer, he, too, was a faithful friend to the king.

**113. Why Henry V. went to war.** When Henry was only Prince of Wales, his father had said to him, "When you are on the throne, keep your nobles busy making war abroad, for then they will have no chance to arouse revolts at home." This alone would not have led the king into fighting, though the only way for a king to win the applause of his people as a hero was to show himself a brave soldier; but there was another strong influence in favor of war, and that was the church.

The church in England possessed not only vast sums of money, but also great areas of land scattered over the country. Even while Henry's father was **Wealth of the church.** on the throne, there had been quite a widespread feeling that for so much property to be held in such a way that the king could have no income from it was throwing an unfair burden of taxation upon the rest of the kingdom. Many people believed that it would be right for the king to take possession of these broad domains, and the House of Commons had advised him to



do so. People were beginning to talk of this land more than ever, and the clergy felt somewhat alarmed. Henry was eager for military glory, and of course, if the kingdom was thinking of war, it would not be thinking about the lands of the church; hence, the clergy advised Henry to



A GROUP OF ENGLISH KNIGHTS AND FRENCH MAN-AT-ARMS

Knights clad in plate armor, man-at-arms prostrate under the horses' feet, person to the left a spectator in civil costume

go to war with France, and promised to help him with money and influence.

**114. Henry V. invades France.** Henry's great-grandfather, Edward III., had claimed to be king of France, and now Henry claimed the French crown. Many people felt that even if there had been no shadow of a claim, it would have been right for some strong king to come in and rule the land, for the French nobles were continually fighting among themselves, killing men and destroying property, and the king of France was insane

much of the time and could do nothing to quiet the country.

Henry set sail for the mouth of the Seine, and after besieging Harfleur, he began to march to Calais. As he hoped to rule over the land, he forbade his soldiers to injure any property, and ordered them to pay well for whatever food they used. The French nobles had never thought of paying for anything that they took or destroyed, and this just decree of Henry's probably prevented some opposition and made his way easier.

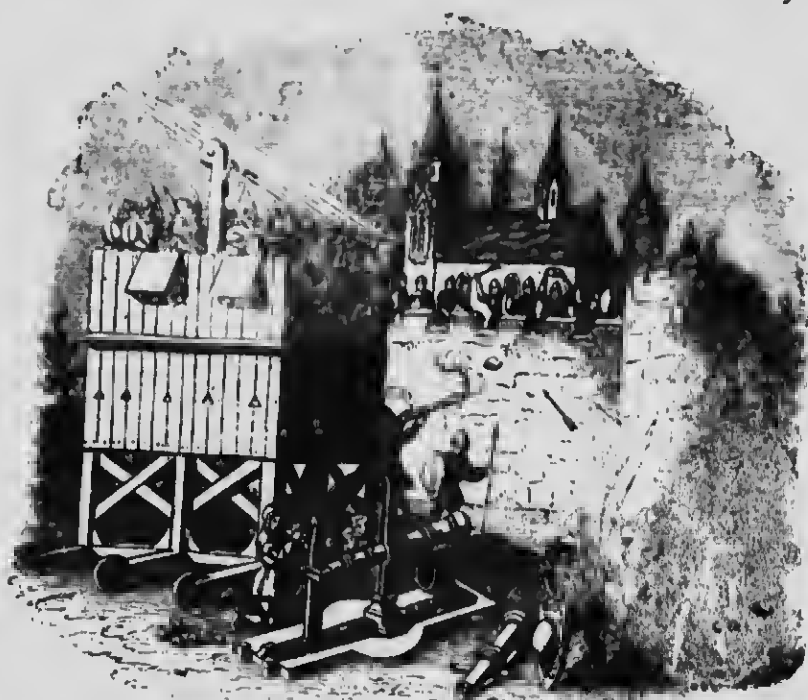
By and by he found himself facing a French army. It was never any trouble in France to collect men to fight, and the French had six times as many soldiers as the English. Most of the Frenchmen were nobles, and, although they knew that the English army was made up in great degree of yeoman foot-soldiers, and that these yeomen were the same kind of bold archers that had won the victory at Crécy, they forgot the lesson that the former defeat should have taught them, and only boasted the more that they who were nobles would have no difficulty in overcoming a troop of peasants.

The battle was fought on clayey ground that had just been ploughed. The evening before, it had rained, and the earth was so wet and soft and sticky that knights in heavy armor could hardly have made their way across the field on foot; and when they attempted to ride, the horses sank to their knees, and often one would break its leg, while the masters floundered about heavily in the mud. The knights were no cowards, and they did their best to press near to the English, but each one of these archers had a long, sharp stake, which he thrust into the ground in front of him while he shot; and try their best, the French could not

**Battle of  
Agincourt.  
1415.**

**Yeomen  
conquer  
knights.**

go through the forest of stakes. The English archers had no heavy armor, and they sprang lightly forward with their battle-axes. Many of the French knights who were uninjured had tumbled off their horses, and lay in



MOVABLE TOWER, ARCHERS, CANNON, ETC., OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY

the mud utterly helpless. Some one has said that the Englishmen with their battle-axes cracked open the suits of mail as if they had been so many nutshells.

It is said that when the battle was over the king asked: "What is the name of the castle yonder?" and when some one answered, "Agincourt," he said, "Then let this be called the battle of Agincourt;" and Agincourt it has been from 1415, when it was fought — just two hundred years later than Magna Charta — until to-day.

**115. Celebrating Agincourt.** Henry had to return to England for a time, and there was the greatest celebration that can be imagined. The English were so jubilant that when they saw his ship coming into the harbor, they even rushed out into the water and took him on their shoulders and carried him to the land.

**116. Conquest of France.** This victory, great as it was, did not conquer France; but two years later, Henry went on another warlike expedition, and this time he won everything that he wished, though his desires were not at all moderate, inasmuch as he demanded a large sum of money, the crown of the French kingdom, and the hand of the French princess. The money and the princess he carried with him to England. As for the crown, it was agreed that the insane king should wear it while he lived, but that Henry should really govern the kingdom; and that when the king died, Henry should become sovereign of France. This never came to pass, for Henry V. died two months before the king of France. Henry was buried in Westminster Abbey in a beautiful little chapel built in the shape of a capital *H* for *Henry*.

**117. A baby king of two countries.** He left a baby son, also named Henry, and as this child was son of the conqueror of France and of the French princess, he was at once proclaimed king of both countries. If he had been a strong, prudent man, he might perhaps have kept possession of the new domain, but he was only a little child, and the eldest son of the old French king was living. Therefore, every one knew that long before the baby prince would be old enough to rule, there would be more fighting with France.

## SUMMARY

Henry V. trusted those who might have been his enemies, and they became his friends. To avoid discussion and possible confiscation of church lands, the clergy encouraged him to bring forward his ancestral claim to the throne of France. Agincourt and other victories won him a large sum of money, the hand of the French princess, the regency of France, and a promise of the crown at the death of the French king. Henry died before the French king, and the claim to the French crown descended to the baby ruler of England.

## 15. HENRY VI. 1422-1461

**118. Henry VI. and his uncles.** In 1422, the baby king was proclaimed ruler of England and France under the name of Henry VI. There was one respect in which this accession of a sovereign might have been a fairy tale, for the baby had two uncles, and one was good while the other was bad. The good one was the Duke of Bedford, and the bad one was the Duke of Gloucester. The Duke of Bedford had to spend much of his time in France to take care of the French interests of his little nephew, and whenever he came back to England he had all that he could do to settle the quarrels that the Duke of Gloucester had aroused.

**119. Henry's hard childhood.** The poor little boy did not have a very happy childhood. He was brought into Parliament and held by his mother in the royal seat when he was only three or four years old, and when he was eight he was crowned; but he must have often wished that instead of being King Henry he had been one of the royal attendants, for when he was only six years old he was taken from his mother and given in charge to an earl who was a stern old warrior. This was according to the will of Henry V., who had wished to make sure that his son would be a good soldier.



of Bedford was trying hard to keep possession of the French kingdom for his little nephew, who certainly ought to have had at least two kingdoms to make up for his dreary childhood. The English had a good hold on northern France, and the duke was trying to drive the French army south of the river Loire, but the attempt was of no use so long as the French held the town of Orleans. This had strong fortifications, and month after month the English besieged it in vain. At last they could see that the city was weakening, and that every day was bringing the time nearer when it must surrender.

**121. Joan of Arc.** The French became discouraged at the failure to raise the siege. Charles VII., son of the old king of France who had yielded to Henry V. of England, was no leader. He liked to have a good time and to be comfortable, not to bear the hardships of camp life. He was willing to be king, provided that some one else would place him on the throne and put the sceptre into his hands. His nobles stood by him, but they could not lead his army or make the masses of the French people trust them. While they were wondering what to do, a strange message came to the prince from one of his officers. It said that a young girl, a simple village maiden, called Joan of Arc, was insisting upon meeting the prince, and that she declared she had seen a vision and heard voices that bade her rescue France. She said, "I should rather spin by the side of my mother, but I must go to the Dauphin." The people about her home had recalled an old prophecy that France should be saved by a woman, and they believed in her. A duke had sent for her to cure him of some illness, but she had said very simply that she could not do it, she could do nothing but save France. The officer reported that he had

asked her a number of questions, but that he could not make her change her story. Then he had had her sprinkled with holy water, and no harm had come to her, and now he begged the prince to see her.

She was sent for, and it is said that, although she was told that a handsomely dressed courtier was the Dau-

phin, she made no mistake, but knelt before the prince

and gave him her message, that voices from heaven had commissioned her to conduct him to Rheims to be crowned. As a proof of her truth, she said that she would lead the French army to Orleans, and drive away the English.

Then there was a long discussion about the words of the young girl.

Some thought that her voices were those of good spirits, and some thought that they came from the tempter himself. Finally, the council decided that they were good and might be trusted. So the village maiden was dressed in a suit of white armor and set upon a great white horse. In her hand was a



STATUE OF JOAN OF ARC  
Place des Pyramides, Paris

Joan be-  
comes a sol-  
dier.



sword, and before her was carried a shining white standard with a picture of two angels bearing lilies and of God holding the world.

Onward she rode at the head of the long lines of French soldiers. When they were near Orleans, she stopped, and sent a messenger to the English commander telling him it was the will of Heaven that he should surrender. His reply was that she knew nothing about the will of Heaven, and he threatened to burn the messenger for helping on the practice of magic. The French replied that if the messenger was harmed, the English prisoners in their hands would be sufferers. There was something mysterious about it, and while the starving people of Orleans were calling out jubilantly: "It is the maid of prophecy, and she is coming to save us," the English soldiers were feeling badly frightened; for if she was sent by Heaven they were afraid to fight against her, and if she was a witch, that was just as bad, since, if she had the aid of evil spirits, no one knew what she might do to harm her foes.

Joan raises  
the siege of  
Orleans.

When it came to a real battle, Joan fought as bravely as any old soldier, and as soon as the scaling ladders were put against the wall of the English fort, she climbed up before any of the men. By and by the English yielded, and the siege of Orleans was raised. This was what she had told the French would be the sign of her mission, and now the soldiers were enthusiastic. They had no fear to follow wherever she might lead them, and Joan had no doubt whither she ought to lead them. The voices that she had heard, she told Charles, had commissioned her to conduct him to Rheims to be crowned, and thither they must go.

Charles was ready to be crowned, but he did not care

to run into danger, and he greatly preferred that some one else should do the fighting. The English forces were between him and Rheims, but Joan persisted, and Charles finally yielded. Joan was victorious everywhere, and in the cathedral at Rheims Charles was crowned and anointed king of the French. Joan wept with joy. "I have done what was given me to do," she pleaded, "now let me go to my home;" but she was too valuable a leader to lose, and Charles would not spare her. She must stay and win more battles for him, he said. In vain she pleaded that her mission was ended, that the voices she had heard had not told her to do anything more; Charles still refused to let her go.

Then Joan did her best to lead the army, but all power seemed to have left her, and she lost as often as she won. When she had gained a victory, the soldiers sang her praises and were sure that Heaven had sent her; but if she had lost a battle, they were equally sure that she was a witch. Finally, the French army had to retreat, and they left her alone to fall into the hands of the English. Not one soldier tried to save her, and not a word did Charles speak in her defence. Not an effort did he make to rescue her when some months later the English burned her as a witch in the market-place of Rouen.

**122. The Hundred Years' War ends.** In 1453 the war ended, perhaps quite as much because both sides were tired of fighting as for any other reason. After the hundred years' struggle, Calais was the only bit of ground in all France that remained in the hands of the English.

**123. Good effects of the war.** It is pleasant to know that there were some good results of this war. One was that as the English kings needed a great deal of money

to carry on the war, and as the only way for them to get it was to ask the House of Commons, they learned that the best way to obtain money was to obey the will of the people. Another gain was that all ranks had fought side by side. The knights had learned to respect the yeomen; and now that the yeomen had found that they, too, were esteemed of worth in the land, they had less jealousy of the knights, and Englishmen began to feel a strong national pride.

**124. Discontent in England.** Nevertheless, there were several reasons why people in England were discontented and ready for a change. One reason was their indignation that after so much fighting the French lands should have been lost. Another reason was that men who voted for members of Parliament were not allowed to vote freely; and worst of all, as the baby king grew up, although he was quiet and gentle and kindhearted, he had no idea how to rule a kingdom in spite of all his stern training; and it often happened that guilty persons were not punished and innocent people were not protected. There were courts of justice, to be sure, but the jurymen were frequently chosen simply because they were friends of one of the contestants, and if they did not vote for his side, they were in danger of being beaten or killed on the way home. In 1453, just as the war ended, the king's mind failed him, and from then to the end of his life he was subject to attacks of insanity.

Another event that happened in 1453 was the birth of a prince. Then people were utterly discouraged. Even those who had felt that it would be better to bear their troubles patiently, as long as Henry VI. lived, could not endure the thought of another baby king and the troubles that a long regency would bring.

**125. Wars of the Roses begin. 1454.** Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March, in whose place Henry IV. had become king, was dead; but Edmund's sister had married a cousin, and they had a son named Richard. As Richard's father and mother were both descended from Edward III., and his mother came from an older son than the one from whom Henry came, many people began to feel that this Richard, Duke of York, had a claim



COSTUMES OF LADIES OF RANK DURING THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY

Remarkable for the head-dresses worn

to the throne, and so when Henry became insane, Parliament appointed Richard as Protector. When the king recovered, Richard declared himself to be in danger, and called out his men to fight for him. Henry was descended from the Duke of Lancaster, whose badge was the red rose, and Richard from the Duke of York, whose badge was the white rose; and this is why the contest which began only two years after the Hundred Years' War ended, was called the Wars of the Roses.

During the French wars it had come to pass that many nobles had become very rich, and could call upon large numbers of men to fight for them. The Earl of Warwick was one of these immensely wealthy people. It was said that he could bring forward thirty thousand men at any minute to fight for whatever cause he chose; and he meant to put the Duke of York on the throne. Of course many favored the king, and Parliament compromised the matter by deciding that after King Henry died the Duke of York should rule. Neither Parliament nor the people as a whole cared very much which royal house held the throne, but they were all tired of poor government, and they did want a king with sufficient force to rule his kingdom.

Affairs would perhaps have moved on smoothly if it had not been for that baby son of King Henry. His mother, Queen Margaret, was a very brave woman, and she declared that she would defend the rights of her child, and that he and no one else should wear his father's crown. She was of French birth, and to find help she went to different parts of France and also to Scotland.

Fighting began, and soon the king was captured, but it was not long before the queen rescued him, even from the hands of the Earl of Warwick himself. The Duke of York had been slain in battle, but he had left three sons. Edward, the eldest, claimed to be the lawful king, and had been collecting men and arms in another part of the country to maintain his rights. His army and the forces of Warwick united, and marching to London, they entered the city with as much rejoicing as if they had not just lost a battle and also their royal prisoner. Edward, now Duke of York in place of his father, was not yet

The Earl of  
Warwick.

Queen  
Margaret  
defends her  
baby son.

twenty years of age, but he was bold enough to go straight to Parliament and claim the crown.

**126. Edward of York becomes king. 1461.** Parliament discussed the matter, and finally decided that, as King Henry had joined the forces of Queen Margaret that were rebelling against a decree of Parliament, he had forfeited the crown, and it should be given to this Edward of York, who was now proclaimed as King Edward IV.

There were no such rejoicings as there had been at the coronation of King Edward I., for every one knew that some terrible fighting must come before many days; and

**Battle of  
Towton.  
1461.**

so it was, for soon a battle was fought at Towton in northern England. It was so fierce that more people are believed to have been killed on that one day than during the last forty years of the Hundred Years' War. Indeed, this whole struggle, which went on for thirty years, was a bloody time. Nominally, people were fighting to settle the question whether Parliament had a right to put on the throne whomever it chose; or whether, as the house of York claimed, the descendants of the eldest son should always rule, regardless of the will of Parliament. Really, however, men were fighting for wealth and power, and often to avenge private wrongs. Every noble of any position had, as has been said before, a great band of retainers to fight for him. It was regarded as the only honorable course for a man to avenge any relative that had been slain. Almost every one had lost relatives, and therefore there was no generosity shown to the vanquished. Those that won would put to death the prominent men on the other side and confiscate their property.

## SUMMARY

The long minority of the king made efforts to hold the French throne unavailing, and at the close of the Hundred Years' War in 1453 Calais was the only bit of France that still belonged to England. Although in this long war different ranks had learned a mutual respect, and the power of the Commons had increased, because the kings were obliged to apply to them for the large sums of money that were needed, there was much discontent in England. The chief reasons were the loss of the French lands, the weakness of the government, and the fact that many Englishmen were not allowed to vote freely. Finally, the failure of the king's mind and the prospect of another child ruler aroused a determination to put Richard, Duke of York, on the throne. The fierce Wars of the Roses began. Richard was slain, but by the power of Warwick Richard's son became King Edward IV.

## 16. EDWARD IV. 1461-1483

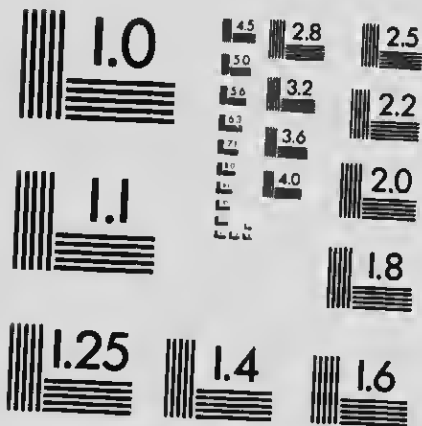
127. The "**King-maker**" changes sides. It was in 1461 that Edward IV. had been put on the English throne. His strongest ally was the Earl of Warwick, the "**King-maker**," as he was called, because he put down one king and set up another just as he chose. There was more fighting, but at last Queen Margaret was beaten in two important battles, and Henry VI. was taken prisoner. No one could have expected him ever to sit on the throne again, but strange things were to happen. The Earl of Warwick wished Edward to marry a French princess in order to increase the royal power; but now that the young man was on the throne, he was not so obedient as he had been, and without consulting the earl, he married a lady who, though of noble, was not of royal birth.





# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

This and other causes made Warwick so angry that he determined to leave the ungrateful Edward of York and support Henry VI. of Lancaster. He joined



EDWARD IV., HIS QUEEN AND SON

Anthony Woodville, Earl of Rivers, is giving the king a book and presenting his printer Caxton. Next to the queen is her son, afterward Edward V. The courtier in cap and robes of state is probably the Duke of Gloucester, afterward Richard III.

forces with Queen Margaret, and Edward was so frightened that he fled to Holland. The way was open then, and Warwick brought poor, feeble Henry VI. out of the Tower of London and set him on the throne.

**128. Edward IV. is restored.** Edward had not been idle, and after a few months he returned with strong forces, fought a battle with Queen Margaret, and took

**Henry VI.  
is again  
king.  
1469.**

her prisoner. Her son, the young man about whom all this fighting had been, was killed in the battle, and the queen was carried to the Tower of London. Henry VI. was then in the Tower, where he is believed to have been murdered. Warwick had been slain in battle one month earlier.

**129. Benevolences.** Edward was again on the throne, and he seemed to feel that, as he had had so hard a time, he was now entitled to enjoy himself. He needed money, so he confiscated estates wherever there was the slightest excuse. That did not provide enough revenue, but he knew that it would be of little use to ask Parliament for more, and he did not dare to attempt to tax the people without Parliament's consent; so he at last originated a scheme for getting funds in such a way that no one would dare to object. This was to invite wealthy men to make him a present, or *benevolence*, as he called it. "Benevolence" means "good will," and a few years later a witty man said that the name was a true one, though it did not mean that people gave with a good will, but rather that the king took what he had a good will to take.

**130. Printing is invented.** Wonderful stories had begun to make their way from Germany. It was said that in that country books were being sold at about one-eighth of what they cost in England. At first people did not believe the report, but when they found that it was really true, they said the books must have been made by Satan, for in those days everything mysterious was laid to Satan. It was chiefly Bibles that were sold, but that made no difference.

There was living in Flanders an intelligent Englishman named William Caxton. He had translated from the French a book called the "History of Troy," and

when he heard of the strange, new art of printing, he determined to learn all about it and to have his book printed. He did so, and he wrote about the book to a friend, saying that it was "not written with pen and ink, as other books be."

**William  
Caxton.**

**Printing is  
brought to  
England.  
1477.**

After a while he came to England and set up his press near Westminster Abbey, and there he printed more than sixty volumes. He would probably have printed Wiclif's translation of the Bible, had its sale not been forbidden. He did print, however, among other works, "Æsop's Fables," Chaucer's

**I** E nedyrh hym that woll haue longe  
lyff to knowe the craft of holseme go-  
uerne ple. And so for to kepe contynuelly the  
helthe of his body/ for els he maye not com to  
Q i.

FAC-SIMILE SPECIMEN OF CAXTON'S PRINTING

"Canterbury Tales," and a book about King Arthur. People felt at first as if the printing-press were only a toy, but the king was deeply interested in it, and the queen's brother translated three books for Caxton to print.

**131. Literature.** During the one hundred and thirty years preceding the end of Edward's reign, there had been too much fighting going on for people to write, but they were interested in many more subjects than they had been in earlier times, and every one that could afford such luxury had bought books, though these had been so expensive that a collection of thirty volumes was looked upon as a valuable library for even a wealthy gentleman to possess.

**Few books  
written.**

People were still composing ballads, for while few felt like writing books, yet the excitement and the sudden changes did arouse people to compose short, strong ballads, which tell a story in so few words that each one seems almost like a sudden battle-stroke. <sup>Many ballads composed.</sup> Caxton would have thought it quite beneath him to put in print anything so simple as ballads, though every one enjoyed listening to them, and the royal court and many of the houses of the great nobles had minstrels. Much respect was shown to men who could compose these poems and sing them. King Edward IV. gave each of his minstrels ten marks a year, clothing, lodging for themselves and their horses, two servants, four gallons of ale a night, wax candles, and other luxuries.

New ballads were composed, but people sang the old ones over and over again, every time changing some of the words, and that is why we often have several versions of the same story. The old ballads of Robin Hood, the merry outlaw who lived in the "good greenwood," had a strong influence on the English people, and it was almost wholly a good influence, for the stories of Robin made them think more of the pleasures of out-of-door life and of being kind to the poor. <sup>Influence of "Robin Hood."</sup>

One thing in the old Robin Hood ballads seems a little surprising to have come from those days of constant warfare, and that is that Robin ruled his men not because he was stronger than they, for most of them had beaten him in a fair fight, but because he was intellectually greater. He was wiser and brighter, and always knew what to do when the wit of his followers had failed.

## SUMMARY

The Wars of the Roses continued, and Henry was taken prisoner, but Edward's disobedience to the "King-maker" led to the temporary restoration of Henry. At last Warwick was slain, Henry was again imprisoned, and Edward was on the throne. To obtain money for his pleasures, he originated "benevolences." The great event of the reign was William Caxton's introduction of printing into England. Few books were written, but many ballads were composed.

## 17. EDWARD V. 1483

## 18. RICHARD III. 1483-1485

**132. The king who never reigned.** In 1483 Edward IV. died, and again a child was heir to the throne. This child was Edward's son, a boy of twelve years, and as he, too, was named Edward, he was called Edward V., though he never had a chance to reign. It was the most natural thing for his uncle Richard, Duke of Gloucester, to be made Protector, and he was very willing to take the office.

When Edward IV. married, he began to put the relatives of the queen into power, and before long it seemed to the nobles that every position of honor and trust and opportunity for gain was in the hands of her family, the Woodvilles. The result of this was that as soon as Edward IV. was dead, many nobles were eager to put the Woodvilles out of office. This was exactly what Duke Richard wanted. The more of his friends that he could have in high places, or even in any place connected with the government, the better for his plans; and this uncle and "protector" of the boy king had some very definite plans in mind for his own gain.

ken  
led  
was  
the  
ted  
am  
oks

rd  
his  
ne,  
gh  
al  
be  
ne

ne  
it  
of  
in  
lt  
y  
e.  
re  
n  
er  
y  
n

The little Edward V. was with his mother's brother in a castle near Wales, and was being carefully and wisely brought up; but the Protector declared that the child would be safer in London, and must, at any rate, go there to be crowned. Richard met him on the road, separated him from his followers,

Edward V.  
goes to  
London.



THE SANCTUARY AT WESTMINSTER  
From a sketch made in 1775

and carried him to the Tower of London, though the poor child begged piteously to be taken back to his mother and his old friends.

The queen had taken her daughters and her second son to Westminster, for it was an old law in the kingdom, called the "right of sanctuary," that no one should harm a person who had taken refuge in a church; and once when Edward IV. had pursued an enemy within the church walls, the priest had stood between the two, holding the consecrated bread, and at his command the king had submissively retreated. The children would have been safe in Westminster, but Duke

"Right of  
sanctuary."

Richard sent people to the queen, who persuaded her against her will to let the second son go to London; and before long this little boy was also in the Tower.

**133. Richard III. becomes king.** After the princes were in his hands, Richard did not conceal from those nobles who were willing to stand by him his intention of becoming king. He prevailed upon Parliament to say that the marriage of Edward IV. had not been legal, and that therefore his children could not inherit the throne. There were several executions of people who might have stood in Richard's way, and at last Parliament offered him the crown. There were three reasons for this act, — Richard was already in power; many nobles and others expected to gain by his being on the throne; and if the little princes were set aside, there was no one else whose hereditary claim was so good.

**134. Richard's rule.** Richard III. ruled well; indeed, he was afraid to do otherwise. He abolished "benevolences" and treated the people fairly and justly. He had the laws translated into English for the first time and printed; and in regard to printing he made an especially good law. It was that, although foreigners could not trade in England without paying a 'x, any one who wished to write, print, bind, or sell books might come as freely as if he had been born an Englishman.

Richard did not feel safe so long as those two little boys in the Tower were alive; for although Parliament had declared that they had no right to the crown, their usurping uncle knew that at any moment an attempt **Murder of the princes.** might be made to put the older of the two on the throne. The story was spread that they had mysteriously disappeared, but every one believed that Richard had killed them. It was whispered from one to another that he had had them smothered with pillows



when they were asleep. No one dared to ask questions, but many years afterward some workmen found two little skeletons buried at the foot of a staircase in the Tower, and it has been thought that they were those of the murdered princes.

**135. Rising  
against Richard.**

It is possible that if it had not been for this murder, Richard might have remained on the throne all his life; but after this, people were every day more angry and disgusted with him. Richard thought that perhaps he could win men to his party if he married one of the daughters of Edward IV.

She had already been betrothed to one Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, and she was Richard's own niece, but he believed that he could persuade the Pope to allow the marriage, and that this would end all trouble. Instead of being satisfied, the English people were so indignant at the thought of such a deed that they detested Richard more than ever; and now they set to work in earnest to see whom they could put on the throne in his place.



THE PRINCES IN THE TOWER  
From an ideal painting by J. E. Millais

Of Henry Tudor both Edward IV. and Richard had always been afraid, because he, too, was a descendant of Edward III. ; and they had pursued him so that **Henry Tudor.** he said he had been either a fugitive or in prison ever since he was five years old. His friends believed that as the whole nation was so angry with Richard, they could now place this Henry Tudor on the throne. He came from France, and went directly to Wales, because his grandfather had been a Welshman, and he felt sure that the Welsh would be on his side.

**136. Bosworth Field ends the Wars of the Rosess.** He was right, for the farther he marched, the larger grew the number of his followers, not only in Wales, but in England. Richard was getting his forces together, of course, and the two armies met at Bosworth Field, in the very heart of the kingdom; and here, in 1485, the last battle of the Wars of the Roses was fought. Richard was bravery itself, but he was slain. For these two years of power, he had stopped at nothing that he thought would make his position secure; for there is hardly a question that he had more than once committed most brutal murders to clear his way to the throne. It is true that he had ruled the land wisely and justly, and he had loaded many of his followers with wealth and honors, yet these very persons had deserted him when he most needed their help.

Richard's crown was found on the battlefield, "hanging on a hawthorn bush." After the battle, Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, stood on a little mound, with the dead bodies of friends and foes lying on either hand, and thanked the brave soldiers who had given him the victory. All the people rejoiced and shouted, "King Henry! King Henry!" and then a certain noble earl placed the crown on the head

**Henry Tudor is crowned.**

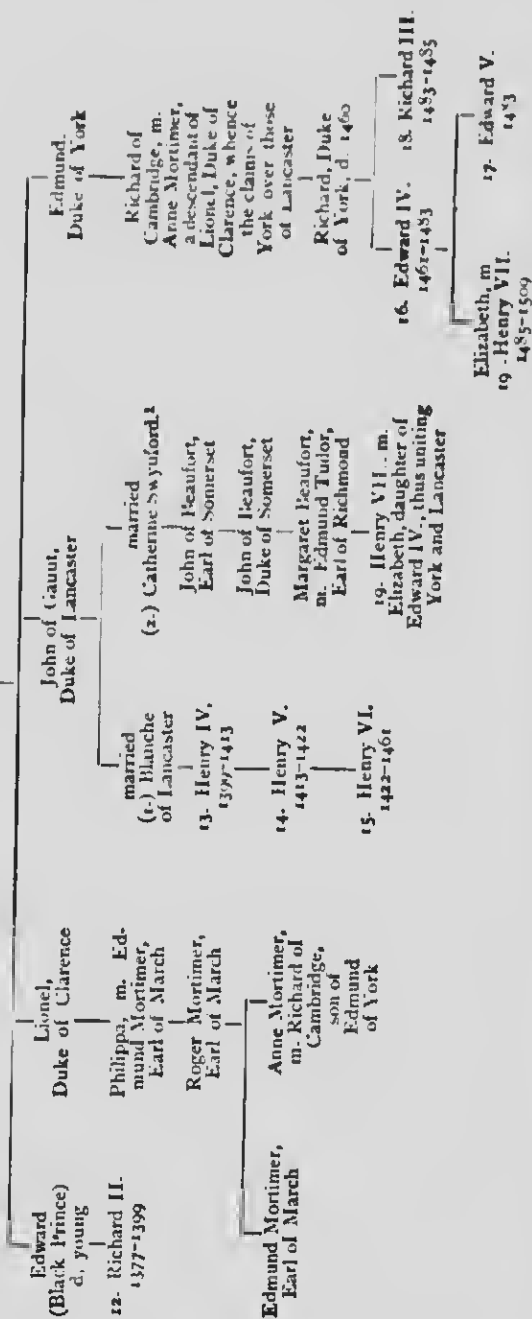
of the new king, or, as some say, gave it to him, and he placed it on his own head. Again the people shouted for joy and sang the Te Deum, for the wicked king was dead, and the future looked very bright before them.

### SUMMARY

Richard III. secured the throne by usurpation, and, it is probable, by the murder of more than one who was likely to interfere with his schemes. Having won the crown by unfair means, he dared not rule otherwise than well; but public opinion against him increased rapidly, and after a reign of two years he was slain in the battle of Bosworth Field, and Henry Tudor, of the House of Lancaster, became king. This was the last battle of the Wars of the Roses.

One thing in Richard's favor is that he was among the first to see the value of the printing-press, and that he did all in his power to encourage the making of books in England.

Edward III.



<sup>1</sup> The children of Catherine Swynford were regarded as illegitimate until an Act of Parliament and a papal decree gave this line royal rights in 1397.

## CHAPTER VI

### THE TUDOR SOVEREIGNS

1485-1603

#### 19. HENRY VII. 1485-1509

**137. A strong rule.** Henry VII. was now on the throne, and as his grandfather had been a Welshman named Owen Tudor, Henry and his son and his three grandchildren are known as the Tudors. They were all sovereigns who meant to have their own way, and they generally succeeded.

In one respect England was just at that time an easy country to rule, for the clergy desired a strong government, and more than half of the nobles, who might have opposed the royal sway, had been killed in the Wars of the Roses that had ended with the battle of Bosworth Field. The other nobles had much less power than their grandfathers had had, for now that so little of the old feudalism survived, they could not easily call together men to fight in support of whatever cause they chose. Henry weakened still more the power of the nobles to revolt by forbidding them to give liveries or badges to their retainers. The use of gunpowder, too, made the king much stronger than any party of nobles, since he had control of the cannon of the state, and the bows and arrows of the yeomen were a small matter when opposed to cannon. For these reasons it was not difficult for a strong-willed

Union of  
York and  
Lancaster.

ruler to make his country more united than it had ever

been before. There was now no excuse for continuing the Wars of the Roses since Henry, who was of the house of Lancaster, had married Princess Elizabeth of the house of York, the sister of the two little princes who had been murdered in the Tower of London.



ELIZABETH OF YORK

**138. Pretenders.** Of course there were some re-

volts, but none that Henry needed to fear. A boy was

once brought forward with the claim that he was a nephew of Edward IV., but not many believed in him, and he was soon taken prisoner. It was easily found out that his real name was Lambert Simnel. Henry was amused rather than angry, and told his officers to take the boy to the kitchen and let him work there in peace.



HENRY VII.

Not long after this another boy, or rather young man, named Perkin Warbeck, was brought forward as a claimant to the throne. He said that while the older <sup>Perkin</sup> of the two little princes in the Tower had been <sup>Warbeck.</sup> murdered, he himself was the younger; and he had a plausible story to tell of how he had made his escape. The young man had been taught most carefully the special things that the prince would naturally know; and as he was supported by two kings, an emperor, and other people of high rank, this attempt to claim the English crown was of much more consequence than that of Lambert Simnel. Many of the Irish and of the Scots were inclined to help Warbeck, and he made various efforts to win followers, going from one country to another, or to those districts of England where for any reason the people were feeling discontented. These efforts to gain the crown actually lasted for five years, but at length the pretender was shut up in the Tower and finally beheaded.

**139. Henry's methods of raising money.** A question that was far more important to Henry's mind than the claims of any pretenders was that of filling the royal treasury. The English people had had considerable experience in dealing with kings, and Henry was wise enough to know that if the masses of the nation were opposed to him, there would be little of either comfort or safety for him on the throne. It would not do, then, to tax the people as a whole too severely. Moreover, he could not tax them without the permission of Parliament, and he greatly preferred not to summon Parliament too frequently, but to go on quietly in his own way without giving much opportunity for the making of laws that might not be according to his wishes.

With Parliament not in session and the nation as a

whole in his favor, he could venture to take from the rich, and this he did. He called for the "be-  
**"Morton's Fork."** nevolences" which Edward IV. had originated and Richard III. had abolished. One Cardinal Morton is said to have invented a plan known as "Morton's Fork," by which Henry could get money from any one that had it. If a man lived expensively, the king's agent would say to him, "You are spending so much on yourself that you may rightfully be required to contribute to the expenses of your sovereign." This was one tine of the fork. The other was quite as bad; for if a man lived simply and without extravagance, the agent would say, "Your living costs you so little that you must have enough laid by to make a generous gift to the king;" and this was the other tine of the fork.

Another way to get money was by means of what was called the "Star-Chamber Court," so named because  
**The Star Chamber.** stars were painted on the ceiling of the room in which it was held. This court was made up of men who supported whatever the king wished to do, and their business was to bring up the offences of wealthy people who could not easily be tried in the ordinary courts, or whose misdemeanors did not fall strictly under the laws. It is safe to say that the offences were always punished by fines, and that these fines were made as large as the court thought the men could be forced to pay.

A third way of getting money was by reviving old laws that people had forgotten, and demanding fines  
**Reviving old laws.** whenever one was broken. By these means Henry accumulated a fortune that has been estimated at about ten million dollars.

In the marriages arranged for his children, Henry was always on the lookout for gain. One daughter became



the wife of the king of Scotland, and the eldest son, Arthur, was married to a young girl of fifteen, **Wealthy marriages.** called Katharine of Aragon, the daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain. When Henry's wife died, he did his best to secure another who would bring him a large amount of money. First, he sought the



GENERAL COSTUME IN TIME OF HENRY VII.

hand of the widow of the king of Naples, but the reigning sovereign refused to pay her the immense fortune that her husband had left her; and Henry then tried to get the sister of Philip, the ruler of Castile. Just at that time Philip died, and as Henry thought that Philip's widow would have more money than the sister, he applied for her hand. She was partially insane, but that did not matter to Henry so long as she would bring him a large dowry. Her father, Ferdinand of Spain, refused to sanction any such marriage, and was so little pleased with

the treatment of his daughter Katharine in England that it was not until after Henry's death and her second marriage, this time to Henry's second son, that her complete dowry was paid.

**140. Why England did not discover America.** It was chiefly because of Henry's dislike to spend money that the honor of the discovery of America fell to Spain rather than to England. Columbus tried in one kingdom and another to find a ruler who would provide him with ships and money, and at last he sent his brother to England to lay the matter before Henry. The brother was captured by pirates, but he had good courage and finally made his way to England. Unfortunately he was in rags, and his good courage would count for little if he had not also proper clothes in which to appear at the king's court. There was nothing to do but to go to work and earn some clothes. He set about making money by drawing maps, and at last he had an interview with Henry. The king was much interested, but the plans of Columbus would require a large expenditure, and he hesitated. He hesitated too long, and in 1492 Columbus set sail by the aid of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain, and England had lost her chance to discover the New World.

**The Cabots  
sail.**

Henry must have been sorry, for five years later he encouraged John and Sebastian Cabot, two Venetians who lived in England, to make a voyage. They went directly west and came to Newfoundland, which was spoken of as the "New Isle."

**141. Growth of the world.** In the days of Julius Cæsar it was said that Rome "ruled the world," but it was a very small world, for people knew little of any part except the lands bordering upon the Mediterranean Sea. In all the fifteen centuries since Cæsar's time the world had grown but little larger. Most countries had

been too much engaged in fighting to explore the ocean in search of more land; but now one discoverer after another set out, and when they came back they brought wonderful stories of the strange new country, where the rivers were wider and the forests greater than any in England. There were new birds and flowers, strange beasts and reptiles, rumors of great stores of gold, and, most amazing of all, there was a new race of people, unlike any that had been known before. It was like a marvelous fairy tale that had suddenly come true. How the people must have gathered around the men who had made the voyage, and how every boy that had watched one

of the ships come in must have longed to be a sailor, and go to see the wonderful sights of the land across the water!

If these lands lay in the west, who knew what might lie in the east? Vasco da Gama set sail to see whether he could go around the vast unknown country that lay to the south of the Mediterranean. He



THE CHAPEL OF HENRY VII., WESTMINSTER ABBEY

Vasco da  
Gama.

succeeded and came to Asia, another world as full of marvels as America, and, except for a small part of the coast, almost as unknown.

**142. Condition of the kingdom.** It was in the midst of these exciting times that the boy was growing up who was to become Henry VIII., king of England. His father and his mother were laid in the chapel of Westminster, whose windows were covered with a tracery of roses of red and roses of white to mark the union of the Houses of Lancaster and York. His father left him a realm that was united, prosperous, and accustomed to a firm rule; and in the royal treasury was such a fortune as had never before been in the hands of an English sovereign.

### SUMMARY

With Henry VII. began the "personal monarchy" of the strong-willed Tudors. Henry had so firm a hold on the crown by the decree of Parliament, by the result of battle, and by his marriage, that the efforts of pretenders to the throne were useless. To obtain money he resorted to benevolences and other questionable schemes, but any possible revolt of the nobles against a king who controlled the cannon of the country was hopeless. He left a full treasury and a peaceful, united country, well wonted to obey its sovereign. The discovery of a western world and the spread of knowledge resulting from the invention of printing prepared the way for the intellectual awakening that was soon to come.

### 20. HENRY VIII. 1509-1547

**143. A popular king.** When Henry VIII. came to the throne, the country had every reason to rejoice. He was about eighteen years of age, handsome, graceful, and with a frank, hearty manner that made every one like

him. He could leap farther and shoot an arrow farther than any of his companions. One of the old writers says, "It is the prettiest thing in the world to see him play tennis." When May-Day came, he was not satisfied to remain in his palace and have the green boughs brought to him; he clothed himself and his special attendants in white satin in honor of the season, and went to the woods with them. He was well educated, and he was fond of books and of music. He wrote songs, some of which have come down to us. One of them, queerly enough in view of his later life, is about his faithfulness in love. It says:—

"As the holly groweth green,  
And never changeth hue,  
So am I — ever have been —  
To my lady true."

He liked to wear handsome clothes and to have a good time; and after all the hard, gloomy years of fighting and bloodshed, it was a real delight to the English people to see this merry young man enjoy himself. They were sure that he would be kind to them, for almost the



HENRY VIII.

first thing that he did after he was fairly on the throne was to punish the men who had helped his father to extort money so unjustly. No one stopped to question whether it was these men or Henry VII. who had been the more in fault, and no one seems to have noticed that this upright young king made no attempt to give back the money.

**144. Condition of Wales and Scotland.** The Welsh no longer revolted, for as Henry was a Tudor, they felt that a Welshman was ruling England rather than that England was ruling them. Scotland, it is true, made an invasion, but there was a terrible battle at Flodden Field, and the Scots retreated with a loss of many thousands. Among those who were slain was the Scottish king, and now there was little fear of any further trouble with Scotland.

**Flodden  
Field.  
1513.**

**145. Three young rulers.** On the continent Henry wished at first for an alliance with France; and to bring it about he gave the hand of his sister Mary, a merry, fascinating girl of seventeen, to the aged French king, though she wished to marry a nobleman named Charles Brandon. The French king soon died, and now the ruler of France, Francis I., and the German emperor, Charles V., both ambitious young men, were each eager for Henry's influence and aid. Charles came to England to visit him, and Francis invited Henry to a meeting in France.

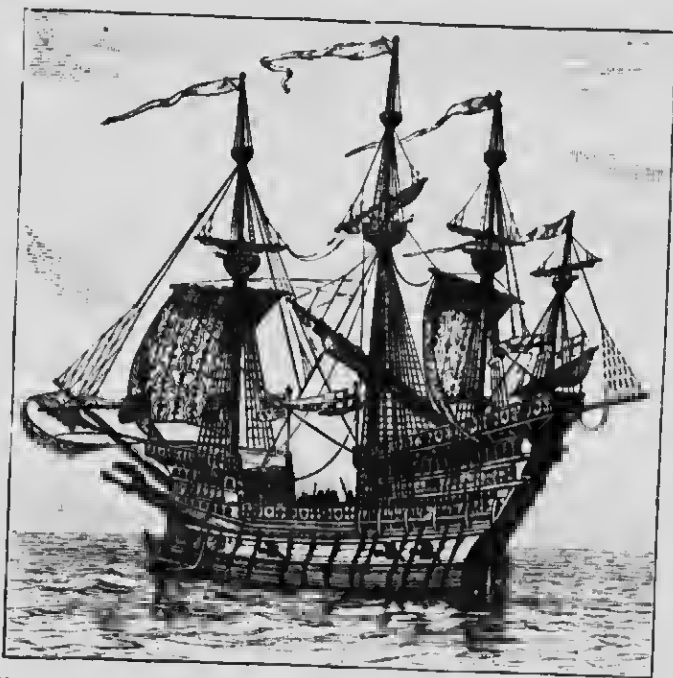
The English still held Calais, and this meeting was to be on a plain between their castle and one belonging to the French. Great were the preparations. Henry sent over more than two thousand workmen to build a temporary palace with stone walls and glass windows. The roof was to be of canvas "curiously garnished." The rooms were to be larger than

**The palace  
at Calais.**

those of any English house, and the walls were to be hung with tapestry embroidered with silk and gold. In two months the building was ready, and Henry sailed from Dover for Calais with a fleet of those top-heavy, castle-like vessels that look in the pictures as if they would topple over at a breath.

Three weeks the young kings spent on the "Field of the Cloth of Gold," as the place was afterwards called from the magnificence of the dress and the entertainment. There was tilting, and there were tournaments and all kinds of feats of arms, at which,

The Field  
of the Cloth  
of Gold.



ENGLISH WAR SHIP WHICH CONVEYED HENRY VIII. TO FRANCE

of course, the two kings always won. Finally, the sovereigns exchanged gifts and bade farewell to each other. In spite of all the lavishness and all the promises of

brotherhood, Henry's help was given to Charles ; but by and by when Francis was taken prisoner, Henry went to his aid, though he exacted liberal payment for his assistance. Henry's aim was to keep the power of Francis and of Charles as nearly equal as possible, lest one or the other should become too strong for England to resist.

**146. The Renaissance.** Henry was interested not only in statecraft but in the wonderful new learning that was spreading over the world. In 1453, the year that the Hundred Years' War closed, the Turks captured Constantinople. Many learned Greeks lived in this city, and they went away to Italy, especially to Florence. Long before Cæsar came to Britain, the Greeks were a remarkable nation. They had great poets and historians and philosophers, and their sculptors did finer work than any one has done since those days. For centuries people had forgotten all this. Hardly any one in England could read Greek, and the clergy called it a wicked and heathenish tongue. When the Greeks came to Florence and taught the Florentines to read their language, men began to realize what valuable old books there were in the world. This new interest in the old knowledge is called the Renaissance, or the *new birth*. It spread rapidly over the continent, for printing had come at just the right time to help people to get copies of the old manuscripts. England soon became interested, for English scholars went to Italy to study, and they brought books and knowledge back with them to their own country. The influence of the Renaissance had been felt in England even before Henry came to the throne, and he had always been ready to strengthen it.

**147. Henry as a theologian.** Henry had quite an ambition to be known as a literary man and a theologian,



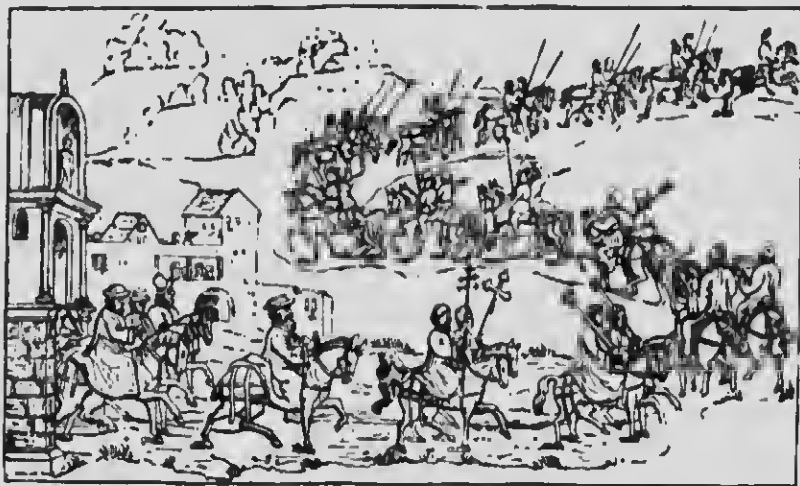
and before long the opportunity presented itself. In Germany, Martin Luther, who was a monk and a professor at the University of Wittenberg, had declared that certain abuses existed in the church which ought to be reformed, and the pope had excommunicated him.

Henry wrote a book on the subject in favor of the pope's position, and received as a reward the title of "Defender of the Faith."

**148. Henry's first marriage.** Thus far matters had gone according to the will of the king. He was powerful at home and abroad. His kingdom was prosperous, and he had won glory as a writer and theologian and as a faithful son of the church; but one thing began to trouble him greatly. Who would inherit his crown? He had a daughter Mary, but no woman had ever ruled the English nation. Before his father's death, when Henry was only twelve years old, it had been agreed that the boy should marry Katharine of Aragon, the widow of his older brother Arthur. It was against the law to marry a brother's widow, but the pope had given the special permission of the church, and two months after the accession Henry and Katharine were married.

**149. His struggle for a divorce.** Henry now declared that he ought not to have become Katharine's husband, even if the pope did give him permission, and he wished the present pope to declare that the marriage had never been lawful. It would be easier to have confidence in his scruples of conscience, if he had not already chosen the woman whom he wished to take in Katharine's stead. She was a young girl named Anne Boleyn, daughter of an English nobleman. As a child of seven she had gone to France when Henry's sister Mary married the old French king. When the king died, Mary married Charles Brandon,

and came to England to persuade her royal brother to forgive her husband and herself; but the little Anne remained in France with the wife of Francis I. When at last she returned to England and appeared at court,



WOLSEY AND HIS SUITE

Henry was greatly pleased with her beauty and animation, and he determined that she should be his queen.

He had a minister named Wolsey, who, as he trusted, could gain the pope's consent to a marriage with Anne.

**(Cardinal Wolsey.** Wolsey had for years devoted himself to carrying out every wish of the king and to increasing his greatness. This was exactly what pleased Henry. He could be free to do what he chose, and yet feel that everything was going on as he would have desired. As a reward, Wolsey had been made archbishop and lord chancellor, and finally cardinal. He lived in a beautiful palace, "where one traverses eight rooms before reaching his audience chamber," says an old writer. The description of his house sounds like a chapter from the

"Arabian Nights." There were beautiful carpets and silken tapestries. It is said that he had five hundred servants, and that some of them wore heavy chains of gold and garments of satin and of velvet, as if they were noblemen. When the cardinal went out, two attendants walked before him and called, "Make way for my lord cardinal." At the house-door he would mount a mule saddled with crimson velvet, and two men would go with him, each bearing a great silver cross, while a long line of nobles followed in his train.

Although he lived in such splendor, he was thoughtful of the poor, and tried to do for them what was just and kind. As all affairs of state and church were really in his hands, he did for many years very nearly what he chose. The Venetian ambassador wrote home that when he first came to England, Wolsey would say, "*His Majesty* will do so and so;" a little later he would say, "*We* shall do so and so;" and finally he said, "*I* shall do so and so."

**150. The Pope's refusal.** Inasmuch as Wolsey had shown so much skill in managing the affairs of the nation at home and abroad, it is no wonder that Henry believed his minister could get him a divorce from Katharine. Wolsey seems at first to have favored the idea, thinking that Henry would marry a French princess, and that while the king might have a son, and then there would be no question about the succession, he himself might by the influence of France and England be chosen for the next pope. However that may be, the pope was in a difficult position. To declare that the act of the preceding pope was wrong was a serious matter, and moreover, the queen was an aunt of the powerful Charles V. There was a long delay, but at last the pope refused to annul the marriage. Both Henry and Anne Boleyn be-

lieved that Wolsey had not done his best for them, and all in a moment the minister's wealth and position were taken from him. The vindictiveness of the pair went so far that he was arrested on a charge of treason, but he died before he could be brought to trial.



THOMAS WOLSEY

**151. Henry as head of the church. 1534.** Henry then appealed to the universities, trusting, it is probable, to bribes and threats rather than to the truth of his cause. Then he demanded that the English clergy should uphold him, and after a delay of five years he married Anne. The pope threatened him with excommunication

if he did not put her away, but Henry retorted in 1534 by forcing Parliament to declare that he himself was the only head of the church in England, and that whoever denied this was guilty of treason. Henry still retained his title of "Defender of the Faith," and had no sympathy with the Protestant Reformation, which had begun with the teachings of Luther. The result of this peculiar condition of things was that if a man was a Protestant and agreed with Luther, he might be burned as a heretic; while if he was a Roman Catholic and said that the pope was the head of the church, he might be beheaded as a traitor. Some of the best men in the kingdom were put to death,

**Burned or  
beheaded?**

and among them were two especially upright, conscientious men, Bishop Fisher and Sir Thomas More. More was a man who could see what was right, no matter what the people around him thought; for instance, children were still treated as cruelly as the little Henry VI. had been, but More would never allow any harshness in his family. He knew so well what a kingdom should be that he wrote a little book called "Utopia," meaning *Nowhere*, which tells the story of a happy country where no one was rich and no one was poor, where no one worked too hard, and no one was idle. Every one had a pleasant house and garden and leisure to read. Gold was used for the chains of criminals, and pearls and diamonds were given to children for playthings. Kings ruled for the sake of their people, and every one was treated justly and kindly.

Utopia.

The pope excommunicated Henry, but the king retaliated by taking possession of the smaller English monasteries, a deed that had been suggested a century before. Their lands were given to royal favorites, their gold and silver vessels and images were melted and made into coin, and their books, many of which would to-day be worth far more than their weight in gold, were torn up or burned. The monks and nuns received small pensions, and that was their only recompense.

Henry  
seizes the  
monas-  
teries.

**152. Suffering of the poor.** This destruction of the monasteries, many hundreds of them, was one of several causes that brought distress upon the poor of the kingdom, for the hungry had always been sure of a meal at the convent gate. There were other reasons for the suffering. One was that the king had put so much cheap metal into the coins that prices had risen. If prices and wages had gone up at the same rate, the

poor would not have suffered so severely ; but wages rose slowly while prices rose rapidly, and there was great destitution in the merest necessities of life. Still another reason lay in the increase of sheep-raising. While

**Sheep-farms and inclosures.** the poorer people lived on the manors, they were sure of food and shelter at least, whether they were sick or well, but when so many vil-

leins became free after the Black Death and the battle of Crécy, and the price of labor rose, men who owned manors turned them into great sheep-farms, because one man and a dog were all the help needed to care for a large number of sheep. The same thing was done in Henry's reign ; and, worse than this, the commons where the poor had always had the right to pasture a cow or keep a pig were inclosed for the landlord's sheep. This seizure of the commons, taken together with the loss of help from the convents, made the poor who were old and feeble suffer severely. Many of those that were strong and well and could find no work became robbers and beggars. They roamed about the land, gathering in the forests through which the roads ran, and robbed or murdered unguarded travellers. The whole kingdom seemed to have become a nest of thieves.

All sorts of laws were passed, not to make life better for the poor, but simply to prevent their being a danger to the rich. One law was that every "sturdy  
**Laws against beggars.** beggar" was to be whipped and told to go to the place in which he was born ; and if he was too long in making the journey, he was to be whipped again in every village. This was the penalty for the first offence. If a man was found begging a second time, he was to be whipped again and the upper part of his right ear was to be cut off. The third time he was to be put into jail and tried, and, if found guilty, to be

hanged. There was no effort made to reform the "sturdy beggar" or to provide work for him, and no plan was made to assist the aged and the sick; the whole aim of the law seemed to be to get rid of troublesome people.

**153. A third marriage.** While these things were going on, Henry, instead of trying to find a wise remedy for the evils, was again considering the question of marriage. He was apparently somewhat tired of Anne Boleyn, though three years earlier he had overthrown the church and the law to marry her. She had brought him a daughter, Elizabeth, but he still had no son. There were plenty of people to suggest that the powerful Charles V. would never accept a child of Katharine's successor as the lawful inheritor of the crown. Others hinted that the lack of a son was a proof of the anger of Heaven at his second marriage. It was not at all difficult to find people to testify to whatever would please the king, and the result was that after three years of marriage Anne was accused of misconduct, and her head was struck off with a sword. The next day the king married Jane Seymour; and Parliament met at once to declare that the Princess Elizabeth, as well as the Princess Mary, should never inherit the crown.

Jane Seymour died, leaving one child, who was named Edward, and now Henry had a son to whom he could leave the crown. Nevertheless, he straightway ordered his counsellors to find him a new bride. Thomas Cromwell, who had taken the place of Wolsey, was very desirous that the next queen of England should be a Protestant, so that the Roman Catholics might gain no ground in the realm. Henry did not yield at once. It is said that he proposed to the Duchess of Milan that she should share his throne, and that she replied with a profound courtesy:—

"I humbly thank your majesty for the honor that you do me. If I had two heads, one should be at your majesty's service; but as I have only one, I prefer to remain as I am."

**154. Henry's other marriages.** Cromwell was trying to interest the king in one Anne of Cleves, a German princess, and he wrote of her to Henry, "She excelleth as far the duchess as the golden sun excelleth the silvery



THOMAS CROMWELL

moon." He admitted that she knew neither French, Latin, nor English, but he was sure that she would soon learn to converse with the king. She spent much of her time in sewing, and was ignorant of music; but, he said, "They take it here in Germany for a rebuke that great ladies should be learned or have any knowledge of

music." Finally, a famous artist was engaged to paint the portrait of this paragon of beauty and goodness, and the king agreed to marry her.

There were great preparations for her reception, but one of the king's officers said after his first glimpse of her that he was never so much dismayed in his life; and when Henry met her, he was, as the record declares, "marvellously astonished and abashed." He embraced her with all propriety, but he hardly spoke at all, and quite forgot to give her the present that he had brought for her. It is said that she was really exceedingly homely



and awkward as well as dull and slow. Henry married her, but in his wrath he sent Cromwell to the block; and after a few months he obtained a divorce from Anne on the ground that, as he had married her against his will, he had not given his full consent. He had two more wives; one he beheaded and one survived him.

**155. Succession to the throne.** Henry was not yet at rest about the succession to the throne. There were the three children, Mary, Elizabeth, and Edward. Edward was not a strong child, and the king was afraid that he would not live. There must be a plan made for the kingdom if he died, for Henry could not bear the thought that the crown should pass from his family, and he was determined that even if no woman had ever ruled England, a woman should rule if Edward did not live. His obedient Parliament had already passed acts saying that Mary was the heir or that Elizabeth was the heir or that neither of them was the heir, and finally that they all had just claim, and now it was ready to do whatever this arbitrary sovereign demanded. Henry set to work to arrange the order of succession.

One party in the kingdom believed that the marriage with Katharine of Aragon had been unlawful, and that, therefore, her daughter Mary could not rule. **Henry's will.** Another believed that the marriage with Anne Boleyn had been unlawful, and that therefore her daughter Elizabeth could not rule. No one could object to Edward's succession, as both Katharine and Anne had died before his mother married Henry; moreover, he was a boy; so Henry made what seems the wisest will that he could have made under the circumstances, and decreed that, first, Edward should rule, then Mary, and then Elizabeth. Parliament agreed to do just what he wished, and promised to follow this order. Whether

anything better could have been done is a question, but many a man trembled as he thought of what the future might bring.

### SUMMARY

Henry VIII. came to the throne with the advantage of an unquestioned claim and a full treasury. The Welsh were content, and the Scotch were subdued. By a wise foreign policy, Henry avoided trouble with France and Germany. He ruled the land with an absolutism by which, indeed, quiet and order were secured, though the power of Parliament was greatly lessened. His interest in the new learning strengthened the influence of the Renaissance in England. His determination not to submit to the pope's refusal to declare his first marriage unlawful resulted in the establishing of a national church. In this reign the sufferings of the poor were multiplied by the suppression of the monasteries, together with the spread of the custom of sheep-raising and "inclosing." Beggary and robbery increased in spite of severe penalties. By Henry's will, to which Parliament agreed, the crown was to descend to Edward, Mary, and Elizabeth, in the order given.

### 21. EDWARD VI. 1547-1553

**156. A lovable king.** A boy of only nine years was now at the head of the English nation, and a great change it must have been to have this gentle, lovable, thoughtful child for a ruler instead of his selfish, arbitrary father. His tutors were never weary of writing about his goodness and his learning, and if half that they said was true, he really must have been quite a wonder. They claimed that when he was thirteen he understood French, English, and Latin thoroughly, and had studied seven languages to some extent, to say nothing of having learned more or less of logic, music, natural philosophy, and many matters of state.

When he went to church the sermons were preached expressly for him. They were very long, but if they were all as interesting as Bishop Latimer's, he did not deserve a very great amount of praise for listening to them attentively. In one sermon, preached to him when he was eleven years old, Latimer told about his own early life, how comfortably his father lived on a small farm, and how many cows and sheep he kept. No wonder that the little king listened when the bishop went on to say that four or five times as much rent was now demanded for the same farm, so that the present holder had a hard struggle to keep from starving. Edward



EDWARD VI.

must have made a great many plans about what he would do when he was eighteen, but until then he had no power whatever, except that councillors would naturally hesitate to do anything for which they thought that the king would blame them when he was grown up.

**157. Changes in the church.** Edward's mother's brother, the Duke of Somerset, was made Protector. In Henry's reign a new translation of the Bible had been made by Tyndale and widely circulated, and people were thinking much about religious matters. They were per-

haps more ready for changes than they had been in Henry's time, but the duke went on with his innovations far more rapidly than people wished to follow him. For one thing, there were to be no images, crosses, or pictures in the churches, and the service was to be in English. To people who had seen hanging on the walls of the church scenes in the life of Christ and in the lives of the saints, and had loved them ever since they were children, it seemed a very wicked thing to pull them down, and to break beautiful stained glass windows that represented stories in the Bible; while men and women who had heard the church service in Latin all their lives felt as if it was undignified and irreverent to repeat it in every-day English.

The Duke of Somerset and the other Protestants believed that what they were doing was right, and the Roman Catholics believed that all these changes were wrong; but the duke was in power, and the changes were made. He had Archbishop Cranmer and others compile the Book of Common Prayer, which is now known as the Prayer Book of Edward VI. It was taken in large part from the old Roman Catholic service, but it was in English, and the sound of the words was strange and unfamiliar, so that many people would have disliked it even if it had been an exact translation. Instead of waiting a while and introducing the book gradually, the duke declared that it must be used at once in all the churches; and when revolts came, as they did come in great numbers, he put them down with the utmost severity.

**158. The Duke of Northumberland becomes Protector.** There were other reasons for discontent, for the work of inclosing the common pasture land was still going on, and every inclosure drove many people from their

**Compulsory  
use of the  
Book of  
Common  
Prayer.**

homes. The Duke of Somerset had so much sympathy with these poor people that he proposed to forbid so much "inclosing." This made the rich land-owners his enemies; and even the poor looked upon him as an enemy when he, with all his thoughtfulness for them, felt obliged to suppress their revolts with a strong hand.



EDWARD VI. AND COUNCIL

The result was that he was finally imprisoned and executed, and the Duke of Northumberland became Protector in his place. This duke had a crafty scheme in his mind which was to come out a little later.

**159. The Blue-Coat School.** The government was still taking possession of church property, but here the boy king had a word to say. He was interested in other boys, and wished that the poorest one in his kingdom might have a chance to be educated. He had no authority, but it is thought that by his influence part of the

property that had belonged to the church was devoted to schools for boys. The most famous of these schools



LADY JANE GREY

he founded in London. It is named Christ's Hospital, but it is oftener called the Blue-Coat School, from the peculiar clothes that the boys wear. The coat is blue with a long skirt coming down almost to the ground. The belt is red, the stockings yellow, and the shoes have large buckles. The boys wear no hats summer or winter. This was the ordinary dress of a

schoolboy in Edward's day, and its style has never been changed.

**160. Northumberland's plan.** The young king was to be in full possession of his kingdom when he was eighteen, but it was soon admitted that there was little probability of his living to that age. Here was Northumberland's opportunity. By the will of Henry VIII., if all three of his children died without leaving any children, the crown was to go to the descendants of his younger sister Mary, who had married Charles Brandon. One of Mary's granddaughters was a gentle, lovable girl named Jane Grey, and Northumberland had brought it about that she should marry his son, Lord Guilford Dudley, for what he planned was to make Lady Jane queen of England.

He persuaded Edward that he, as king, had as much right to make a will as his father had had. Then he pictured what terrible consequences there would be if his sister Mary were allowed to become queen, for she was a strong Roman Catholic, and all that the Protestants had done would be undone. Edward was only sixteen, and he was weak and ill. He would naturally believe what his guardian told him, and the result was that he did sign a will, setting aside not only Mary but also Elizabeth, and giving the crown to his second cousin, Lady Jane. Soon after this he died.

**Edward's will.**

Lady Jane was a gentle young girl of seventeen. She had been brought up very strictly, and hardly knew what it was to have a will of her own. It was still the custom to treat children harshly, and her parents would have thought that they were not training her properly if they had treated her in any other fashion. The only one who seems to have been gentle and kind to her was her tutor, "Master Aylmer," and she used to long for the hours to come that she was to spend with him, and could be free from the pinches and blows that she continually received from her parents. She was so happy with "Master Aylmer" that she became a most excellent scholar. She had studied Latin, Greek, Italian, and French, and had begun Hebrew. She did not wish to be married, but when her parents commanded her to marry Lord Guilford Dudley, she obeyed.

**Lady Jane Grey.**

Just before Edward's death, Northumberland told her that she was to be queen of England. She wept and pleaded to be free, but to no avail. Northumberland said that she had the best right to the throne, that Edward had willed it to her, and that she alone could save the land from falling into the hands of the Roman Catholics. At last she was

**The Twelve-days' Queen.**

persuaded that it must be as he had said. She yielded, and set to work to be a queen as conscientiously as she had studied her lessons.

When Edward died, Northumberland tried to keep the news secret until he could get possession of Mary and shut her up in the Tower; but she too had friends on the watch. They told her at once of the king's death, and she took refuge in a strong castle so near the sea that she could escape to the emperor of Germany if there was need of flight. The council proclaimed Lady Jane queen. For twelve days she was on the throne, and that is why she is sometimes called the "Twelve-days' Queen."

**161. Mary becomes queen.** Mary had no idea of giving up her kingdom. She sent her claim to the council, but they told her to "submit and behave as a good subject." Instead of submitting, however, she collected around her the strongest members of the Roman Catholic nobility, and also many Protestants, for all were weary of uncertainties, and were disgusted with the transparent selfishness of Northumberland. She was accepted as queen in one place after another. The fleet stood firmly by her; the army refused to fight against her; and soon the council, with Northumberland at their head, proclaimed her as queen. Northumberland's sudden change of allegiance was of no avail, for he was put to death, and Lady Jane and her husband were sent to the Tower.

### SUMMARY

The Book of Common Prayer was compiled, and the Protestant faith established. The Duke of Somerset, who was Protector, aroused the enmity of both rich and poor, and was executed. The Duke of Northumberland, who succeeded to



the office, persuaded Edward to will the crown to Lady Jane Grey, wife of Northumberland's son. For twelve days she reigned, then Mary became queen. An important event of this reign is the founding of many free Protestant schools for boys.

## 22. MARY. 1553-1558

**162. Coronation of Mary.** In a few weeks after the imprisonment of the "Twelve-days' Queen," Mary was crowned. She wore a rich blue velvet gown trimmed with ermine. On her head was a hoop of gold loaded with precious stones, and from it hung over her shoulders a veil of tissue of gold sparkling with gems. It was all very brilliant, but the crown was so heavy that she was often obliged to hold up her head with both hands.



QUEEN MARY TUDOR, OR MARY I.

**163. Mary's hard life.** Mary had had a hard life. Until she was almost grown up, she was treated with all the respect that could be shown to the daughter of a powerful king. Then, after Henry's divorce, everything was suddenly changed. Her own mother was sent away, and the honors that had been showered upon Mary were given to Anne Boleyn's daughter, the baby Elizabeth.

**164. Mary's religion.** Mary was so firm a Roman Catholic that she even resisted her royal little brother when he bade her no longer hear mass. King though he was, she wrote him to the effect that his letter must have come from his councillors rather than himself, for he was hardly old enough to be a judge in matters of religion. Her unhappiness had been so associated with the changes in the church that she could hardly help feeling a great bitterness toward the Protestant innovations and those who had brought them about, and she was as determined to restore the old ways as her father had been to alter them. Parliament was almost as obedient as it had been to Henry VIII. It repealed the laws against the power of the pope in England, and made, or rather revived, the law for the burning of those whose belief differed from that of the sovereign. On one point, however, Parliament was unyielding; it would not restore to the church the land that had been taken from the monasteries. Indeed, such a restoration could hardly have been expected, for the greater part of this land had been divided among various noble families, and members of most of them had seats in the House of Lords.

**165. Mary's marriage.** No sooner was Mary on the throne than the whole country was eager for her marriage. Through the troublous times of this age, the first thing in the minds of the people as a whole seems to have been the wish for a firm, just control, and an undisputed succession to the throne; and they thought that if Mary had children, the crown would descend peacefully to them, and the country would be at rest. There were various suitors for her hand, and England hoped that she would marry an Englishman. Unfortunately, Mary greatly admired a portrait that she had seen of her cousin Philip, a Spanish prince; and although

she had never met the young man, she was determined to marry him. Parliament pleaded as earnestly as it dared, but Mary replied that in so important a matter she should look to God and not to Parliament for advice.

There were two reasons why the English would have preferred almost any one else rather than Philip of Spain. One was that in Spain the opposition to the changes in the church was strongest, and people who believed in the newer ways were brought before a kind of tribunal called the Inquisition. Then, to make them give up their belief, they were tortured or burned alive. Large numbers had suffered. Philip was known to approve of this method of making people recant, and few Englishmen wished to see the Inquisition flourish in their country.

The other reason was that Philip would probably be king of Spain before many years had passed; and as

Spain was a rich, powerful country, England was afraid of becoming nothing but an unimportant province of a great kingdom. Mary was firm, but the general feeling was so against this marriage that the street-boys of London pelted with snowballs the Spanish ambassador's

English  
dislike of  
Philip.



PHILIP II.

"harbingers," or officers who went in advance to secure proper accommodations for the noble and his followers. A game of "English and Spaniards" was invented, in which the pretence was made of hanging the boy that acted the part of the Spanish Prince. But it was not all boy's play, for Sir Thomas Wyatt and the men of Kent rose in rebellion, and it was only the bravery and promptness of the queen that won for her the victory. At once Lady Jane Grey and Lord Dudley were put to death, and the Princess Elizabeth was shut up in the Tower. Shortly afterwards Mary was married to Philip.

**166. Persecutions.** Mary had set her heart on restoring the old religion. Almost at once the laws for burning heretics were revived and ruthlessly enforced. Among the first to suffer were Bishop Latimer, who used to preach before the boy king, Edward VI., and Ridley, who had once been Bishop of London. "Play the man, Master Ridley," said Latimer, as he was dying, "we shall this day light up such a candle by God's grace in England, as I trust shall never be put out." Then came Bishop Hooper, Archbishop Cranmer, and about three hundred besides. In spite of the warnings of her councillors, and even the advice of her husband, Mary would not relinquish the persecution of those who did not agree with her in religious opinions. She was thoroughly sincere in her action, and thought that she was doing God's work. She saw that she was losing the good will of the people, but believing that she was right she would not give up her efforts to reform the country. It is because so many were put to death in this brief reign that the queen is called "Bloody Mary."

If Mary had been just as firm in her religious creed as she was, but had also been gentle and kind, and charitable to the beliefs of others, one can hardly say what

the effect of her reign might have been upon England, but she was bitter and cruel; and when people saw burned at the stake one clergyman after another, men of holy lives and kindly deeds; when they remembered that while there had been burnings in the previous reigns, the number of the sufferers had been small indeed, compared with this great company, — then, even though they might yield for the time, there could be in the end no real gain to the church that Mary loved.

**167. Philip's desertion.** One cannot help feeling a profound pity for Queen Mary. She was sincere, she was earnest, and she did without a shade of hesitancy that which she believed to be right. After the days of her early girlhood, she can hardly have had many happy hours. She had withstood her whole nation for the love of Philip, and he cared nothing whatever for her. He was ten years younger than she, and she was so frail that she knew her life would not be a long one; but, although she did everything in her power to persuade the English people to promise that he should be their next sovereign, they refused. It was only in the hope of becoming king of England that Philip had agreed to marry Mary, and after they had been married a few months, he discovered that the air of the land did not agree with him, and he returned to Spain. Only once did he come to visit her, and then for but a short stay.

**168. England loses Calais. 1558.** Spain had been fighting with France, and though England was not involved in the quarrel, Mary had entered into the war to please her husband. The one possession that England still held in France was Calais, which had once been strongly fortified; but in the previous reigns so much money had been wasted that the defences of the forts had not been kept in order. France now attacked

Calais and won. England no longer owned an inch of ground in the kingdom that lay across the channel.

Not a word of regret had Mary for all the lives that had been taken during her short reign; but for the loss of Calais she grieved deeply during the few weeks that she lived after its capture. "When I die," she said, "Calais will be found written on my heart."

### SUMMARY

The reign of Mary was marked by persecutions so bitter as to prepare the way for a religious reaction and the joyful reception of a Protestant queen. Mary's marriage to Philip of Spain strengthened Spain's hope of future dominion in England; and the loss of Calais left England without an inch of ground in the country where her power had formerly been so great.

### 23. ELIZABETH. 1558-1603

**169. Elizabeth's early life.** Elizabeth's life had been quite different from that of her sister Mary. Elizabeth was too young at her mother's death to remember the execution, while Mary could never forget the long years during which *her* mother was made so unhappy. While Mary reigned, she was always afraid that there would be plots to put Elizabeth in her place, and she had had every motion of her sister closely watched. Elizabeth had passed years in danger, but Mary had passed years in unhappiness. Mary could hardly help becoming embittered, while Elizabeth had only grown wary and cautious. She had been released from imprisonment, but she was wise enough to see that the only way for her to save her life, or at any rate to keep out of the Tower, was to express no opinions and to have as little said

about herself as possible. The best thing for her to do was to live quietly in the country, and that was what she had done. She was fond of study, and much of



QUEEN ELIZABETH

the last few years before she came to the throne she had spent in reading Latin and Greek.

170. Protestant or Roman Catholic? When Mary died in 1558 and Elizabeth was proclaimed queen, it is

probable that hardly one person in the land knew what her thoughts were on the great questions of the day, or was really sure whether she was a Roman Catholic or a Protestant. Philip, who had now become king of Spain, had not given up all hope of wearing the crown of England, and within one month he suggested that she should announce herself a Roman Catholic and take him for a husband. Even then Elizabeth did not express herself at all definitely, but only received his proposal with the utmost courtesy, though she postponed giving him an answer, saying that she must wait to ask the advice of her Parliament. She had set free all who were in prison because of their opinions on religious matters, but it was not at all uncommon to perform such deeds of generosity on coming to the throne, and no one could guess from this act what she really thought. Her accession occurred in November, and every one about the queen watched her eagerly. She named the men for her council, but that did not solve the question; for while she chose some who were Protestants, she retained in office many Roman Catholics whom her sister had selected. She was quite accustomed to being watched, and she gave no hint on which side she should stand. All waited for Christmas. If she was a Roman Catholic, she would surely hear mass on that day. To the last moment she concealed her thoughts, for she even remained in the chapel for a while, listening to the service; but when the mass was to be offered, she rose and left the room. She had made her choice, and in two days she issued a proclamation that made it even more clear that she would rule as a Protestant queen.

**171. The coronation.** While Philip was waiting, patiently or impatiently, for his answer, the time set for the coronation arrived, a day chosen by the royal astrol-



oger. Elizabeth knew something of the history of her throne, and she had decided that to succeed, she might rule without the favor of the church, and without the support of the nobles, but she must have the good will of the masses of the people. She showed this decision even while being carried in state through London at her coronation, for when addresses were made to her, she



QUEEN ELIZABETH CARRIED IN STATE

would have her chair stopped in some place where she could hear distinctly, and if she did not understand, she would ask to have the words repeated. If she saw that the humblest citizen wished to speak to her or to give her a handful of flowers, she waited with as much apparent interest as when the city gave her one thousand marks in gold.

**172. Elizabeth's difficulties.** There is no doubt that the people were rejoiced to have Elizabeth for their

queen, but it was not all rejoicing and addresses of welcome and gifts of flowers and gold; there were many difficulties to meet. Perhaps the hardest of all was the fact that there were two prominent religious parties, and she must be friendly to both. Still, if she showed any

**Three  
religious  
parties.**

leaning toward the Roman Catholics, the Protestants would no longer stand by her; and on the other hand, if she carried out the Protestant ideas too rapidly, the Roman Catholics might rise against her, and they had a candidate of their own faith with a good claim to the throne. To make matters even more complicated, a third party was beginning to become important, the Puritans, who were not satisfied to have Protestantism established. They wished to "purify" the church, they said; and this meant that they wished to destroy every trace of the Church of Rome.

There was danger that these same questions would make trouble for the queen abroad. The pope could easily rouse opposition, for France was always ready to strike a blow at England. Elizabeth could keep on good terms with Spain only by becoming a Roman Catholic and marrying Philip. She had said to Philip's ambassador that she must consult Parliament, but when Parliament very meekly begged her to marry, she replied that she was pleased with their love and care for her welfare and that of the kingdom, and especially with the manner of their petition, for it would have been a great presumption in them, so she said, to venture to direct or command her whom they were bound to obey. She would not give them the least hint whether she intended to marry or not. She could hardly venture to marry either a Protestant or a Roman Catholic, for whichever it was, there would have been great dissatisfaction on the part of a large number of her sub-

**The  
question of  
Elizabeth's  
marriage.**

jects. She put off Philip's ambassador as long as she could, until he declared that the queen "was possessed with ten thousand devils." This was her manner of treating one suitor after another. She would find endless excuses for delay and postponement. This was partly policy and partly, it is thought, because the one man whom she really wished to marry was Robert Dudley, Earl of Leicester, son of that Northumberland who had lost his head for trying to make Lady Jane Grey queen, and there were several reasons why it would not do to marry him.

The proposed marriages were not the only difficulties that must be met. England had no real friends, and there were enemies on all sides. She had neither well-trained soldiers nor skilful commanders. The nobles had little money and the crown was poor. To decide these many difficult questions, a queen needed the wisest advisers, and here shone out Elizabeth's greatest talent; she did know how to choose men. She at once made Sir William Cecil (Lord Burleigh) her secretary and chief counsellor, and such he remained until his death, a few years before the close of the queen's long reign.

Condition  
of the  
country.

**173. Manner of living.** In the manner of living there was a great contrast between the homes of the rich and those of the poor. As soon as men did not need to make their houses strong enough to serve as forts, they began to make them handsomer and more comfortable. There were many beautiful mansions, with richly embroidered tapestries and carved furniture and dishes of gold and of silver; but these houses received little care. The floors were covered with rushes, and as the old ones were not taken up, but new ones were simply laid on top of them, they

Homes of  
the rich.

were decidedly uncleanly according to the ideas of to-day. A rich noble usually owned several dwellings, and when one had become so dirty that it was unendurable, even to a man of sixteenth century notions, he would move to another house and let this one "sweeten," as they said.



COSTUMES OF LADY AND COUNTRYWOMAN, TIME OF ELIZABETH  
Showing ruff and stomacher worn by ladies of rank

The poor people in the country lived in cottages made of sticks and clay. There was no real chimney, but only a hole for the smoke to go out. Even among the well-to-do, such articles as a feather bed, a pair of tongs, a brass dish, or a pair of blankets would be handed down by will; and from this we know that people looked upon these things as being of great value.

The dress of even the rich cannot have been very clean, but it was certainly exceedingly gorgeous, for there was damask, cloth of silver, cloth of gold, and silk and velvet. Money was worth perhaps fifteen times as much as now, and when we read of a

Homes of  
the poor.

Dress.

plain, fine woollen gown costing four dollars a yard, it is easy to see that these brilliant costumes must have been very expensive. The working people wore much poorer clothes, rough homespun, and coarse, cheap materials.

The poor had hard lives. Those who worked on farms had to begin early and leave off late. In cities, while there were no factories, there were guilds, or **Guilds.** associations, that made laws for those who worked at home. There was a guild for the spinners, another for the weavers, another for the gold-beaters, and so on. Each workman must belong to his proper guild, and must obey its laws in regard to his hours of toil, the quality of work that he did, and the price at which he sold it.

**174. Mary, Queen of Scots.** Both the Tudor queens were troubled by their second cousins. Mary had been afraid of Lady Jane Grey, and now Elizabeth began to feel alarmed because of another cousin, Mary, Queen of Scots. When Mary was a little girl five years old, Henry VIII. had tried to persuade the Scots to marry her to his nine-year-old son Edward. He even went to war to win a bride for his son by force of arms. The Scots were badly beaten, but they still declared that Mary should not marry the little English boy; and just as soon as possible they betrothed her to Francis, Dauphin of France, and sent her to that country to be brought up as a French girl.

Now while there had been little real danger of Queen Mary's being driven from the throne by Lady Jane Grey, there was great danger that Mary, **Mary's claim to the English throne.** Queen of Scots, would become Mary, Queen of England. A large party in England had never felt that the marriage of Elizabeth's mother was lawful or that Elizabeth had any real claim to the throne. If

they were right, Mary of Scotland ought to have been queen of England according to the usual rules of succession; though according to the will of Henry VIII. the next heir was a younger sister of Lady Jane Grey.



MARY STUART

Elizabeth had declared herself a Protestant, and Mary was a Roman Catholic, so there was a strong party in Mary's favor. While Mary was queen of France, Elizabeth was safe, for no Englishman wished a French queen to rule his country, lest England should become only a province of France; but when Mary's husband died and she returned to Scotland, matters were quite different,

for there was no objection to having the same queen for both Scotland and England.

After a few years, Mary married a second husband, Lord Darnley, an English cousin of hers, who was a Roman Catholic. Elizabeth was more alarmed than ever, but she kept up the appearance of friendship, and when Mary's son James was born, she agreed to act as godmother. Mary was not at all happy with Lord Darnley. He was intensely jealous of her, and in a short time he murdered her private secretary, Rizzio, almost in her presence. It was not many months before Darnley, too, was murdered. Whether

**Mary's  
second and  
third marriages.**

the charge was true or not, many people believed that the crime was committed by the Earl of Bothwell. He had just obtained a divorce from his wife, and when soon after the murder Mary married him, it was hard not to think that she had connived at the crime.

**175. Mary loses her throne.** The Scots were thoroughly aroused and took up arms. Mary called out the royal forces, but they refused to stand by her, and she was taken to Edinburgh as a prisoner. Under her window was displayed a banner whereon was pictured the death of Darnley, and beside his body a child kneeling and praying, "Judge and avenge my cause, O Lord." She was soon carried to Lochleven Castle, and there she signed a paper resigning the throne to her baby son. The baby, only one year old, was proclaimed as James VI., King of Scotland.

Whether Elizabeth believed Mary deserving of imprisonment and possible execution or not, her proud Tudor blood would not endure such insolence as the calling of a queen to account by her subjects. The more her counsellors tried to calm her, the more she raged, and declared that Mary's crown should be restored. Severe penalties against the Roman Catholics had been decreed in Scotland, but at Elizabeth's encouragement, Mary's friends took heart and aided her escape.

Elizabeth  
favors  
Mary.

The only time when the castle was not guarded was during the supper hour, and then the great key of the gate was laid before the governor of the castle. A fearless young page who served the governor at his meals held a napkin in his hand when setting down a dish, and as he took up the napkin, he took also the key. Mary was ready. She led by the hand a little maid who waited on her, and the three went quietly

Mary's  
escape.

through the gate. "The lad Willie" locked it behind them, and they slipped into the little boat of the castle. No sound of pursuit was heard from the other side of the wall. Mary waved gently a white veil with a deep red fringe. No answering signal was made, but hidden on the opposite shore were her rejoicing friends. A swift horse was waiting to carry her to a strong castle, and in three days she was at the head of an army. There was a battle, but Mary was defeated. She galloped away at full speed, sixty miles the first day, was rowed over the Solway, and then she was in England, in the country of the powerful queen who had given her so good reason to expect support and kindness.

**176. A hard question for England.** Never was a kingdom in a more difficult position. This was not a case in which either jealousy of the next heir to the throne or angry sympathy for a deposed queen could hold sway. It was a matter whose settlement required the keenest acumen of the royal council. If Mary was placed on the Scottish throne and supported by England, a war with Scotland and probably with France would follow. If she was simply returned to Scotland, the result would be that she would fall into the hands of the opposing party, and would probably be put to death. This execution would arouse against Elizabeth the Roman Catholics of both countries. To keep Mary in England in freedom would be to offer her as a centre for whatever plot might be formed against Elizabeth; and it must not be forgotten that England was not a Protestant country suppressing a handful of Roman Catholics, but rather a land in which the numbers supporting each form of faith were probably so nearly equal that only the power of the crown maintained the Protestant ascendancy. The fourth course open to England was to keep Mary in an



uncertain position with the attendance of a guest and the limitations of a prisoner. This was exactly the indecisive decision that was so characteristic of Elizabeth; and yet, while it is easy to say that she should have defended the royal cousin who had sought her hospitality, it is hard, indeed, to tell what would have been the wisest course to secure the peace and unity of England, which must be the first aim of its queen and its councillors. There is proof that Lord Cecil considered the question long and thoughtfully. Another matter, too, had to be taken into account; against Mary still lay the accusation that she had either plotted for the murder of her husband or had at least known of the scheme and had been willing that it should be carried out.

But if it is hard to suggest a better plan, it is at least easy to see that this one, by keeping a queen as a prisoner in a land to which she had fled for protection, added to the friends of the deposed sovereign all who sympathized with the beautiful, fascinating, imprisoned young woman. Plot after plot was formed against Elizabeth. More and more watchful became those on whose shoulders rested the burden of protecting the quiet of the kingdom. The society of the Jesuits sent missionaries to England. Whether their aims were religious or revolutionary, the country was too angry and too anxious to enquire. They were driven from the kingdom, imprisoned, reduced to poverty, tortured, executed. According to some accounts two hundred priests were put to death.<sup>1</sup>

**177. Execution of Mary. 1587.** Every day the need of vigilance increased. Plots were formed not only to put the English queen from the throne, but to take her life. Letters were produced as the work of Mary's

<sup>1</sup> Green's *Short History of the English People*. Chap. vii. Sec. vi.

hand, proving her close connection with the worst of these plots. One party firmly believed that the letters were hers; the other said that they had been altered by the secretary of state. Mary was arrested and tried for treason. She declared that she was innocent, but the court pronounced her guilty of plotting against the life of the queen, and condemned her to death. She was executed at Fotheringay Castle in 1587.

When the deed was once done, Elizabeth was thoroughly frightened, and although she had signed the death-warrant, she declared that she never meant the execution to take place. She stormed at every one who had approved the verdict, imprisoned the secretary, and inflicted an enormous fine upon him; and she actually wrote James of Scotland that the death of his mother was a terrible mistake.

**178. Philip's plans.** She had reason to be afraid. The powerful Philip of Spain had, of course, favored having a Roman Catholic on the English throne, but he had not dared to support Mary of Scotland, because to make her queen of England would increase the power of France in England, and if both these countries were against him, he could not hope to maintain his rule in Holland. Now that Mary was dead, Philip set about his preparations to conquer England for himself, and bring the land back to the Roman Catholic church.

Night and day the Spanish shipbuilders worked. A great fleet was made ready at Lisbon, and at Cadiz were many other warships, while every day more arms and provisions were stowed away for the conquest. The Spanish term for *fleet* was *armada*, and the Spaniards were so sure that England could not resist their attack that they called their squadron the Invincible Armada. They were soon ready to

The Invincible Armada is built.

sail, but one English captain obliged them to delay for a whole year.

England was not "Mistress of the Seas" by any means, but she had many brave sailors and daring commanders. One of the greatest of these was Sir Francis Drake, who had sailed around the world. Drake in Spain. As soon as Philip's plan was known, Drake set out with four ships from the royal navy and twenty-four vessels that had been furnished by the Londoners, and sailed straight for the harbor of Cadiz. For thirty-six hours he fought, and he sank one after another of the mighty warships, high at prow and stern, loaded with heavy armament, unwieldy and clumsy. The English boats were small, and the English sailors had always been a little afraid of these great floating castles; but now Drake had found out how to meet them. The Spaniards set to work to repair damages, and to make ready to attack England a year later, while Drake sent word back to England that he had "sing'd the Spanish king's heard." Then he sailed away to the Azores. Good fortune was with him, for he fell in with a richer prize than had ever been captured by England before,—a Portuguese carack, loaded with all sorts of valuable articles from the East Indies.



SIR FRANCIS DRAKE

**179. England is aroused.** Since the times of William the Conqueror, there had been no maritime attacks upon England that had caused her any special alarm, and now the whole country was aroused by this new danger. The pope had a second time excommunicated Elizabeth, and had called upon all true Roman Catholics to join Philip in fighting for the faith. Nevertheless, Englishmen, both Roman Catholics and Protestants, supported the queen, and men whose fathers would have burned one another for a difference in creed stood side by side to resist the attack of Spain. A Roman Catholic named Howard was made admiral of the fleet, and Drake was vice-admiral. Frobisher and Hawkins served as captains, and Sir Walter Raleigh as a volunteer. Rank and family went for nothing. Every man was ready to haul a rope or fire a gun. The honor lay not in commanding a vessel, but in doing one's best for England.

The royal navy consisted of only thirty warships, not one of them so large as the smallest of the Spanish fleet. **The English navy.** The government asked London for fifteen boats, and the answer came, "We entreat you to accept from us thirty." Every little seashore village sent out its ships. Men of all ranks and from all over the land hurried to join the forces that were gathering together near London. Every man that owned a sailing vessel offered its services and his own to help defend his country; and piratical attacks were so common in those days that few captains of merchant vessels had not had some experience in resisting an enemy.

**180. The fight with the Armada.** The summer of 1588 came, and the Spanish vessels set sail. Not a doubt of success was in the minds of the Spaniards. Men, food, and ammunition were plenty, and they had the greatest fleet that the world had ever seen. They had

four or five times as many ships of war as the English. They were so sure of victory that they made not the least effort to conceal their plans. Slowly came the Armada up the coast into the English Channel. As soon as they were in sight, signal fires were lighted on the hills, and the queer little English fleet went out from Plymouth harbor to meet the foe. The Spanish fleet formed in a wide crescent, seven miles across. The



SPANISH ARMADA ATTACKED BY THE ENGLISH FLEET

English vessels were not strong enough to come to a regular fight, but they were so light and quick, and the Spanish were so slow and heavy, that the encounter seemed, as was said, like one between a swarm of wasps and a bear.

Now came in play the lesson that Drake had learned in the harbor of Cadiz one year before. An English boat would slip up under the very guns of a Spanish galleon, fire a shot or two and flee; and before the Spanish guns could be trained upon her, she would be far away, firing at another warship. It is said that some of the English vessels went the whole length of the crescent,

firing at ship after ship. The Spanish withdrew toward Calais.

Then there came a Sunday when every soldier in the English army waiting before London prayed from the bottom of his heart in the words that the queen

**Fire-ships.**

had sent, "Prosper the work, O Lord, and speed the victory." Soon after midnight a few small vessels left the English fleet and were slowly towed in the direction of the Spanish ships. There were no men on board. What could it mean? The tow-boats withdrew, and the vessels drifted on with the tide, even into the very midst of the Armada. Was there danger? What could the Spaniards do? There was no reason for firing at an empty boat, and they waited — not long, however, for there was a sudden blaze from one boat, another, and another. There was a din of explosions. Strange, suffocating vapors filled the air. Still the mysterious vessels drifted on, and wherever they went there was fire and ruin. How could one fight an empty boat that seemed to be guided by invisible fiends? Many Spanish ships were burned, sunk by collisions, run aground, or entangled in one another's anchor cables.

They could not turn back, for the saucy little English boats were between them and Spain, firing at least four times as fast as the Spaniards could fire. The

**Return of  
the Armada.**

very winds were against them. Their only hope of returning to their own land was by going around Scotland and Ireland. Terrible storms arose, and only half of the Invincible Armada ever sailed into a Spanish port.

England now ruled the seas. She could send her ships where she chose and trade wherever she wished. No fear was there now of becoming a province of Spain. Before Elizabeth's time there had been great victories and great men. Under Elizabeth, England itself became great.

181. **A wonderful literature.** More glorious than victories on land or sea was the wonderful literature that had been growing up in England. It seems as if every event that had come before this latter part of the sixteenth century had had a share in preparing the way for the outburst of literary ability that made the reign of Elizabeth so memorable. The Saxons loved the land and their own settled homes. Then came the Danes with their fearlessness on the sea and their wild enjoyment of storms and of danger. When a poet wrote of love of home, he expressed the feelings of his Saxon ancestors ; and when he wrote of the perils of the wave and the wreck, and his love of the sea with all its hazards, he was for the time one of the bold mariners who seized upon England for his abode. By and by came the Conqueror, and by 1400 the grace and beauty and refinement of the French language had softened the rough strength of the early English.

*Influence of  
the past.*

Men thought for themselves more and more on all subjects, and this strength of thought showed in their writings. The nation became united, and the idea of one strong country was an inspiration. To Elizabeth herself there was on the part of thousands a devotion that was almost idolatry. The victory over the Armada gave the English nation a magnificent sense of confidence. A great widening of ideas came with the discovery and exploration of the New World. Raleigh had sailed to Virginia ; Frobisher had visited Labrador and Greenland in his search for a northwest passage to India. Every one was eager to make a voyage, and it is no wonder, for there were marvellous stories of a fountain in Florida whose waters would make an old man young again, of silver mines whose richness was without parallel, and of rivers

*Influence of  
the present.*

whose waters rolled over precious stones. No one knew what miracle might come next. The English were eager and excited, and their imagination was roused to the highest pitch. In most ages only a few men write well, but in those days many wrote so excellently that Elizabeth's time is called the "Golden Age" of English literature.

There were many short poems and many plays. The short poems written before Elizabeth's reign are heavy and rather gloomy, and they sound as if they were hard to write. The religious poems had not been frank and natural, because in the sudden changes of the national creed, people had been afraid to tell what they really believed, lest it should be called heresy; but nearly all the poems written in Elizabeth's time are light and merry and musical. Among them are many songs, for the English, even from the earliest days, had liked to listen to music, and at this time everybody sang. A servant who could sing well had no trouble in getting a good position. Moreover, people would not sing nonsense; they would have real poetry for their songs.

One of the most famous poems of the day was a long one named the "Faërie Queene," by Edmund Spenser. He is sometimes called "the poets' poet," because his verse is so harmonious that it sounds musical even to one who does not understand the words. The poem is a sort of double allegory, for the heroine represents not only goodness and beauty, but also Queen Elizabeth.

Even better than the short poems were the plays. The old mystery plays went on far into Elizabeth's reign, though they were no longer acted by priests, but by guilds, or companies of tradesmen. There were no books that were at all like the novels of



our time. It may be that life moved so rapidly with its discoveries and its victories, and that Englishmen were so eager and so enthusiastic that they could not be satisfied to listen to a story; they must see it acted out before them. People of rank and wealth and those of the humblest fortunes enjoyed alike the plays for which the mysteries had helped prepare the way. As the age went on, the characters of the plays became more and more like real men and women.

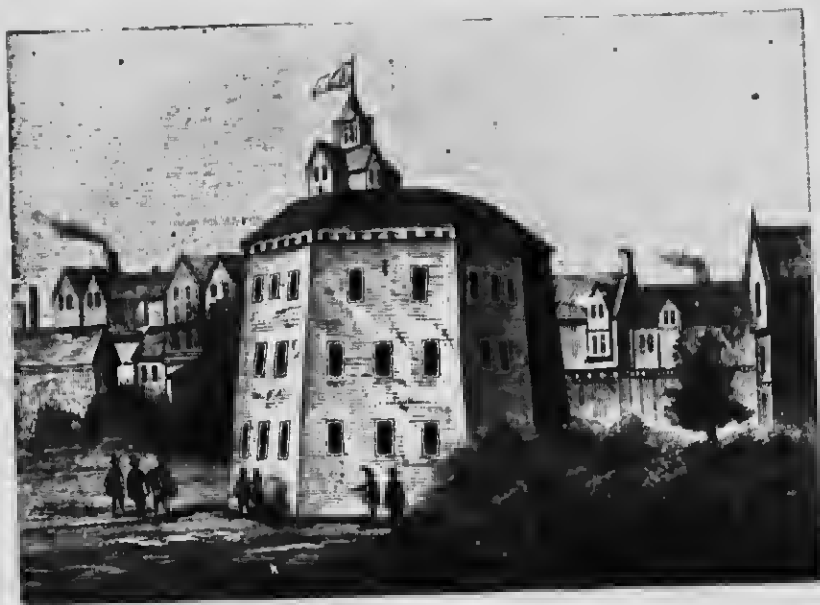
There were also changes in the manner of writing. Before this, most authors had felt that the lines of a play must rhyme, but Marlowe ridiculed the custom and wrote his plays in the unrhymed verse that Shakespeare uses. A little later, Ben Jonson wrote not only many plays, but also a kind of drama called a masque. The masques had hardly any plot, but audiences enjoyed them because they were beautiful and poetical, and because they had elaborate scenery, while the regular plays had scarcely any. Many authors wrote plays and exceedingly good ones, but the greatest of all these writers was Shakespeare, partly because **Shakespeare.** he could use words so skilfully that no one seems able to improve upon his way of expressing a thought, but chiefly because he knew better than any one else just how different persons would feel and act under different circumstances. One maker of plays was almost as good as he in one respect, and another in



WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE

some other respect, but Shakespeare was greatest in all respects.

**182. Character of Elizabeth.** What kind of woman was Elizabeth, in whose reign these wonderful things came to pass? She was well educated, witty, fond of handsome clothes and gorgeous pageants of all sorts. She thoroughly enjoyed travelling about the country in



THE GLOBE, SHAKESPEARE'S THEATRE

state, going from one nobleman's house to another and seeing all the amusing entertainments that could be devised. She had great faults. She was so vain that no one could praise her as much as she thought she deserved. She had a hot temper, and when she was angry she would beat her maids of honor and box the ears of her courtiers. She did not like to spend money any better than her grandfather, Henry VII., and when her brave sailors were driving away the Armada, it was a great

struggle to persuade her to spend what was necessary Admiral Howard's letters are full of requests that she will supply him with more food and ammunition. Before we call her stingy, however, we must remember that she had to make the money of the kingdom go as far as possible, and that at any rate she never spent lavishly on her own pleasures. Her worst fault was that her word could not be trusted. She would tell a lie if it answered her purpose, and when it was found out she always had another one ready.

On the other hand, she really loved her country, and she meant sincerely to do her best for England. She chose wise men for her advisers, and though she would often storm at them when their counsel did not suit her, yet she always followed it in the end. She was a Tudor and meant to have her own way, but she invariably yielded when she saw that she was going against the wishes of the nation; and she yielded so graciously that people almost thought that all the time she was opposing them she had meant to do what they desired. She certainly had grave faults, but she had many good qualities; and these good qualities were just the ones that the nation needed at that time to unite England and to make her great in politics, discovery, and literature.

#### SUMMARY

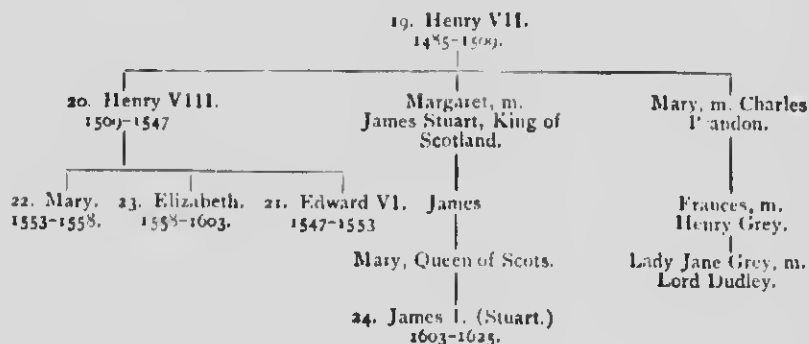
The accession of Elizabeth was welcome to England, but the poverty of the crown, the three opposing religious parties at home, and the foes of the country abroad, made her position a difficult one. After the conspiracy in behalf of Mary, Queen of Scots, had been terminated by her execution, and the attempts of Spain to conquer England had been ended by the defeat of the Armada, a sense of freedom filled the land. England was "Mistress of the Seas," and she had no

longer any fear of becoming a province of another country. The discoveries of Drake, Frobisher, Hawkins, and others widened the boundaries of the world. There were many men who could fight, many who could govern, many who could write, and not a few who seemed able to succeed in one line as well as in another.

There was also an increasing freedom of thought. Though "religious toleration" was an idea of the future, and some of the persecutions were most bitter, yet an Englishman was far less likely to suffer for his opinions than half a century earlier.

Of greater value than victories on sea or on land was the literary ability that was in this reign so widely diffused, and that found its highest manifestation in the plays of Shakespeare. An important factor in the greatness of England was the queen herself, with her intellectual ability, her wisdom in choosing advisers, and her sincere love of the land over which she ruled.

#### THE TUDORS



CHAPTER VII  
THE HOUSE OF STUART  
1603-1714

24. JAMES I. 1603-1625

183. James I. The heir to Elizabeth's throne was James, son of Mary, Queen of Scots, the child to whom she had resigned her kingdom when she was a prisoner at Lochleven Castle. He was now nearly forty years of age, and from his looks and manner no one would have guessed that he was the son of Queen Mary. She was graceful and beautiful, and she had so much tact that almost every one who met her liked her and was ready to do whatever she asked. James was awkward and clumsy, and made himself even more clumsy than he was by nature, because he was so afraid of being assassinated that he had his clothes heavily padded and quilted. He rolled from side to side when he walked. His tongue was too big for his mouth. He was coarse in his ways, and with all his delight in gorgeousness he took no pleasure in neatness and cleanliness.

He had been brought up very strictly by the Scottish Presbyterians, who were far more rigid in their ideas than the Puritans. The Presbyterians believed, for James's early life. instance, that it was very wrong for a clergyman to wear a white surplice when he preached, and they felt sure that a church governed by presbyters must be far better than one governed by bishops. James had been taught, but not educated; that is, he had been made to

read and study so much that he knew many facts ; but



JAMES I.

it would have been better if he had known only half as many and had reasoned and thought about them. He was so sure that he was a learned man that he was too conceited to be taught anything, and he never found out that knowledge is of no value unless one has also learned how to use it well. The brilliant French

minister, Sully, said that James was "the wisest fool in Europe."

**184. Scottish rejoicings.** This was the man who now sat on the throne of England. He was the sixth king by the name of James who had ruled in Scotland, but the first of the name who had ruled in England, so in English history he is always spoken of as James I. The English were not especially eager to have him for king, but the Scots were rejoiced, for they had never forgotten the Stone of Scone that Edward I. had carried to England three hundred years before ; and when James sat on that stone in the coronation chair in Westminster Abbey, the Scots felt that at last the prophecy had been fulfilled that wherever the stone rested a Scotsman should rule.

**185. Which church?** The first question in the minds of James's new subjects was, which church he would favor. The Roman Catholics hoped that out of regard for his mother's belief, he would make life in England easier for them, and the Puritans hoped that as he had been brought up among Presbyterians, he would have a feeling of fellowship with them. One thousand Puritan ministers at once presented him with a mammoth petition asking that they might be allowed to preach without a surplice, to marry couples without using a ring, and to baptize children without making the sign of the cross.

James called several of these Puritan ministers to meet an assembly of bishops to discuss the matter in his presence. Just as soon as he saw that some of the Puritans as well as the Scottish Presbyterians wished to have no bishops, he shouted, "No bishops, no king," and "No bishops, not an inch would he move from that position, ~~no king.~~" for he believed that if they thought a church might be governed without bishops, they would next think a kingdom might be governed without a king; and he declared that both Puritans and Roman Catholics should conform to the Church of England, or he would "harry them out of the land, or else do worse."

Naturally, the English bishops and most of the lords stood firmly by the king, and one of the lords who was at the conference said he was "fully persuaded that his majesty spoke by the instinct of the Spirit of God." At this meeting no one really ventured to speak with perfect freedom except the king, and he was so delighted to have so fine an opportunity to display his knowledge that he forgot he was acting as a judge who should listen and not argue, and he himself monopolized the speech-making. He quoted Latin and he quoted Greek,

and he closed the conference with the satisfied conviction that if the Puritans were not converted from their mistaken ways, they ought to be. The one good that came from this convention was a new translation of the Bible. This was completed in 1611, and is the one now in common use.

**1611. The Bible translated.**

**1611. The Gunpowder Plot.** People were no longer burned for heresy, but both Roman Catholics and Puritans were heavily fined and imprisoned and even tortured, and treated in all ways with the greatest unfairness and severity. In a kingdom in which every man belonged to one of three religious parties, a king who was so unjust to two of those parties must expect that in one or the other there would be men who would conspire against him. This was soon the case in England. The Puritans could become members of Parliament, and could sometimes find redress of their grievances in legal measures; but the oath that every member of Parliament must take was one that no Roman Catholic could honestly repeat, therefore it was naturally among the Roman Catholics that the most notorious plot was formed.

This plot was a scheme to blow up the Parliament House with gunpowder. A cellar under the building was rented, and great quantities of powder were stored there, hidden under wood and coal. It was arranged that on the day of the opening of Parliament one man should slip into the cellar and light the pile. The conspirators hoped that king, nobles, and bishops would be destroyed in a moment. They had a long time to wait, since, on one ground or another, the opening of Parliament was put off for a year. That so terrible a secret could be kept by a group of men so long a time showed to what desperation they had been driven. At last, however, the time came; the day was set on which Parliament should



convene. The hopes of the conspirators rose higher, for they believed that soon their enemies would be destroyed.

At the last moment, the heart of one of the conspirators failed him. Hundreds of women throughout Eng-



THE GUNPOWDER CONSPIRATORS

land might lose husband or father or brother, but *his* sister's husband must be saved. He sent a note of warning. Some say that it was read aloud A note of warning. by mistake and straightway reported to the council; others say that he repented of the fearful scheme and thought that this sending of an anonymous letter would be the best way to reveal the plan and to prevent the slaughter.

In the letter of warning was an expression suggesting that the danger would be sudden. It is said that King James himself was the one who interpreted this as meaning that gunpowder would be used. The councillors

were even closer guardians of the secret than the conspirators had been. Arrangements went on for the opening of Parliament. Just before midnight of November fourth, the day before the explosion was to have taken place, the lord chamberlain and his attendants went to the cellar under the building, and there stood a tall man in whose possession were slow matches and touchwood. This was Guy Fawkes, who was to touch off the powder. He refused to reveal the names of his associates, but after terrible tortures in the Tower, he yielded.

This plot was known to only a few men, but in the minds of the public the blame was thrown upon all who were Roman Catholics, and the laws against them became more rigorous than ever. The fifth of November, 1605, was the day appointed for the explosion. It is still called "Guy Fawkes's Day," and the old rhymes are not yet forgotten :—

"Don't you remember  
The fifth of November,  
The gunpowder treason and plot?  
I see no reason  
Why gunpowder treason  
Should ever be forgot."

The day is still celebrated in England, but the custom is gradually dying out.

187. "Divine right of kings." During his whole reign James's favorite idea was the "divine right of kings." He believed that no matter how bad a man was, God had appointed him to rule, if he was only the direct heir of the preceding sovereign, and no Christian could rightfully oppose him in anything that he chose to do. In earlier days the English people had made king the man who seemed best able to rule. Then they began

to prefer that the same family should continue in power, but they chose among the members of that family the one that seemed to be worthiest of the throne. Gradually they had come to feel that it was wiser to choose the oldest son or his descendants; but to be told that this oldest son was invariably the one chosen of God to rule them, and that the nation had nothing to do with the matter but to accept and obey whatever laws he wished to make, was quite a new idea to them.



ANNE OF DENMARK,  
WIFE OF JAMES I.  
Showing the "Wheel Farthingale" then worn

James paid no attention to the rights of his subjects. If he was not pleased with the men who were elected members of Parliament, he refused to allow them to serve. If the records of Parliament did not suit him, he calmly tore the pages out of the book. When his ministers begged him to give his attention to some important public matters, he said that the most important matter in the kingdom was for him to have the exercise and recreation that his health required; and while papers that affected the welfare of millions of his subjects lay waiting for his signature, he went hunting and hawking, and spent his days in the most disgusting of drunken orgies. Some great writers of plays lived in the reign of James, and whenever they described the court, they pictured most coarse and vulgar scenes.

James's  
exercise  
of the  
"divine  
right."

**188. James's efforts to obtain money.** James had favorites, who, like those of Edward II., were idle, worthless men. His gifts to them were unlimited. He seemed to have no idea that a king had any responsibility in

spending the money that the taxation of his subjects had put into his hands. His treasurer once gave him a lesson. He showed him a great heap of coin lying on the floor, and when the king asked, "Whose is this?" he replied, "It was your majesty's before you gave it away." This money, twenty thousand pounds, had been promised to one of these unworthy favorites, but now that the king realized how much it was, he declared that the favorite should never have it. Immense amounts were squandered upon these worthless men, and upon James's drunken revels and disgraceful amusements and entertainments. How to get money was always the question. Parliament was never willing to give without at least a promise that the king would not infringe upon its rights. James demanded the payment of a tax on goods that were exported and imported. He called for another tax when his oldest son was knighted; he introduced a new title, that of baronet, and gave it to almost any one that would pay for it. He would have been glad to revive the old scheme of demanding benevolences, but when he invited London to make him a present, that city refused. The king was angry and vowed that he would punish the Londoners by removing his court to some more loyal place. It is said that the lord mayor replied:—

"Your majesty hath power to do what you please, and your City of London will obey accordingly, but she humbly desires that when your majesty shall remove your courts, you would please to leave the Thames behind you."

Finally, a great scheme was proposed. This was to marry the king's son Charles to the Spanish princess. She would have a large dowry, and the royal coffers would again be filled so that

James's  
favorites.

Title of  
baronet.

The Span-  
ish mar-  
riage.

the king could begin another course of his degrading amusements. The English people were indignant enough when they saw his increasing familiarity with the Spanish minister, and a little later they had even more reason for their wrath. In the Tower a remarkable man, named Walter Raleigh, had been kept a prisoner for twelve years under sentence of death on a

Execution  
of Raleigh.

false charge of conspiracy against the king. He was a soldier, an explorer, a courtier, a student, a poet; indeed, there seemed to be nothing that this man of many talents could not do and do well. Before his imprisonment he had made voyages to the New World, and had even tried to plant a colony. He felt sure that if he were



SIR WALTER RALEIGH

allowed to take a fleet to America, he could find a certain rich gold mine. This was a temptation to James, and he sent Raleigh, but with strict orders not to interfere with the Spaniards who were settled on the South American coast. Then James in his folly told the Spanish minister all about the scheme, and, of course, when Raleigh landed in America, the Spaniards were awaiting him, and there was trouble at once. Spain already hated him because he was one of those who defeated the Armada, and to please Spain and secure the princess with her dowry, Raleigh was executed on the old charge of conspiracy.

The real ruler of England at this time was George Villiers, Duke of Buckingham, who had been raised from an obscure position to that of chief favorite of the king. Buckingham was determined to carry out the Spanish marriage, and thus enable the king to govern the country independent of Parliament. The wrath of the nation was aroused when Charles — "Baby Charles," his father called him — set off to visit Spain, accompanied by the duke. But their reception at the Spanish court pleased neither the prince nor the duke, and they returned to England eager to declare war against Spain. While on his journey, Charles had met one of the French princesses, and negotiations for a marriage with her were at once begun. The people were so rejoiced that the Spanish marriage had been broken off, that they were eager to assist in every way. In the midst of the preparations for war, however, the king died.

**189. Settlements in America.** During the reign of James I. there were two classes of men who had thought with especial longing of the wonderful country across the Atlantic. The first was a company of merchants who remembered the stories that had been told about the vast quantities of gold and silver that lay hidden in the unexplored lands. These men founded a colony in Virginia, lately discovered by Raleigh and named by him in honor of the virgin queen. The second class settled much further to the north. These were a band of Puritans, who, to obtain freedom to worship as they pleased, had emigrated to Holland. They wished, however, to live under their own government, and after a long delay they secured permission to cross the ocean and settle in America. In 1620 they landed at Plymouth, and laid the foundations of what is now known as New England.

**190. James's character.** If James had done just one noble deed before his death, it would have gone far towards making people think kindly of him, but to the very end of his life he went on in his career of gluttony, obstinacy, and folly. The discord which his deeds had aroused between king and people was a sad inheritance for his son Charles, and one could almost have prophesied the troubles of the next reign.

### SUMMARY

James's accession delighted Scotland. Roman Catholics and Puritans hoped for his favor, but his support was given to the Church of England. Puritan clergymen appealed for freedom in church ceremonies, but the only good result of the royal conference was a new translation of the Bible.

The discovery of the "Gunpowder Plot" prevented the destruction of the king and of both Houses of Parliament.

James imposed as many taxes as he dared, and to fill his coffers attempted to marry his son to the Spanish princess. Raleigh was sacrificed to Spanish hatred. Merchants and Pilgrims went to America.

James's favorite idea was the "divine right of kings," but his weakness and folly lessened the personal devotion that the nation had shown to the Tudors. As the king's power diminished, the strength of Parliament increased.

### 25. CHARLES I. 1625-1649

**191. Charles I. and the "divine right."** For the quiet and peace of England there could hardly have been a worse king than Charles I. In some way he had persuaded himself that while it would be wrong to tell a falsehood to a member of his family or to one of his friends, it was perfectly right to deceive his subjects in any way that suited his convenience. He believed

in the "divine right of kings" even more firmly than did his father, and he was convinced that if the people did not recognize his "divine right" to do as he wished, it was simply because they were wilful and obstinate, and he was more "divinely commissioned" than ever to make them obedient by deceit or any other means.

102. **Charles's deceitfulness.** He had shown this belief even before he became king, at the time when he wished to marry the French princess whom he had seen on his way to Spain. The Protestants in England had increased in power and in numbers, and they were unwilling that a Roman Catholic should become their queen, lest more favor should be given to her church. To satisfy them, both Charles and his father had promised Parliament that no such favor should be shown. On the other hand, the French princess would not come to England unless she could be assured that she might bring with her a numerous train of Roman Catholic priests and ladies and attendants. This would violate the agreement with Parliament, but both Charles and his father made this promise too, and Charles married the French princess. The English people saw at once that he had deceived them, but they were so glad to be sure that he would not marry the princess of Spain that they were ready to overlook even such treachery as this. Charles had no power to keep the promises of favor to the Roman Catholics which he had made to obtain his wife, and his attempts to do so only aroused the English Protestants, while his failure called forth the wrath of France. To crown it all, he finally gave orders that his wife's priests and attendants should be driven out of the land. He wrote to his minister: —

French  
Roman  
Catholics  
expelled.

"I command you to send all the French away to-



morrow out of the town. If you can, by fair means (but stick not long in disputing) ; otherwise force them away, driving them away like so many wild beasts."

If it had not been for his deceitfulness, the nation might well have been proud of their king. In appearance and manner he was an ideal monarch, dignified, handsome, and courteous. He was a scholarly man with no mean intellectual ability. He seemed to have inherited all the good traits of his grandmother, Mary, Queen of



CHARLES I.

Scots, and had it not been for his one unpardonable fault, the English nation would have refused him nothing.

It was because of his unwillingness to be frank and honest with his people that he was in trouble from the beginning of his reign. Moreover, he still retained as his adviser the Duke of Buckingham, who was hated by the nation as the chief enemy of their liberties. When the king's first Parliament met, he called for a large amount of money to carry out some vague schemes for making war upon Spain and capturing some Spanish treasure-ships. He wished Parliament to provide the money without a question ; but as he seemed to have no definite plans for the war, and his only idea of finding a treasure-ship was to sail about the ocean till he chanced to come across one,

Parliament  
refuse  
supplies.

Parliament refused; and refused also to give him any promise of income from "tonnage" and "poundage," taxes per ton and per pound on imported merchandise, for more than one year. For the last two centuries it had been the custom to grant the income from these taxes to each succeeding king for life, and now Charles was angry. He refused to accept the grant if made only for one year, but nevertheless he proceeded to collect the duties, and went to war with Spain on his own responsibility. If he had been successful, the attempt might have won popularity; but the whole affair was so badly managed by Buckingham, in whose hands the conduct of the war had been placed, that the people were more indignant than ever.

**193. Illegal taxes.** Money was needed, and therefore Charles had to summon Parliament again. Parliament, under the leadership of resolute men like Eliot and Pym, would not give him money unless he could show clearly that he wished it for some purpose of which the country would approve; and Charles was indignant that mere subjects should dare to do such a thing as to question what he meant to do with the money. As he could get no funds by lawful means, he decided to get them in any way that he could; and again a foolish king tried to collect what was really almost the same as benevolences, although the amount demanded was in some proportion to each man's income. This tax was not legal, because it had not been voted by Parliament, and a few brave men refused to pay it; but nevertheless a large sum of money was collected, for not many dared to risk the anger of the king.

In the meantime a war had broken out between France and England, provoked largely by the Duke of Buckingham. An expedition, led by the duke, to assist the

French Protestants, who were besieged in Rochelle, ended in a complete failure. Both France and Spain were now united against England, and Charles could get no money to resist their attacks unless he appealed to Parliament; so there was nothing to do but **Parliament is called.** to call another session. The king was angry and scornful; Parliament was indignant at his treatment of his subjects, and alarmed at what might be the result



SOLDIERS, TIME OF CHARLES I.

Musketeer and Pikeman

if this arbitrary sovereign was allowed to go on in his course. Charles had no intention of keeping the laws, and as the courts of justice were under his control, they would uphold whatever he chose to do. Parliament decided that voting money for war was not the most important matter on hand; affairs at home must first be attended to.

194. The "Petition of Rights," 1628. When a king did not do what his subjects thought just, the proper

way to tell him so was to present a petition. In King John's time it was the nobles alone who had stood firm to right the grievances of the kingdom, but now nobles and commoners were much in sympathy. A paper, called a "Petition of Rights," was sent to the king, and he was made to understand that no supplies would be



GEORGE VILLIERS, DUKE OF  
BUCKINGHAM

voted until he had signed it. All that the petition asked was that he should keep the laws of the land; and the main points named were that no one should be imprisoned unlawfully, and that no taxes or benevolences should be demanded without the consent of Parliament. There would seem to be no reason why an honorable king should have hesitated a moment before signing this, and the king did agree to it,

but instead of writing the usual form of words, "Let right be done as is desired," he wrote a form so roundabout that Parliament suspected that he would soon find a loophole and not keep his word after all. The members of Parliament were so wretched and discouraged that more than one broke down utterly and burst into tears. The king was to meet them the next morning. What would he say? Was there any hope of peace?

In the morning the king came before the House, and, much to their surprise, he tore away what he had

written, and signed his name to the usual formula, "Let right be done as is desired." The members of Parliament were so delighted that they straightway voted all the supplies that the king had asked. Then they began to discuss the matters that had been mentioned in the petition, and to plan how to get rid of Buckingham, upon whom all the blame for the king's actions was placed. But Charles, rather than endanger his favorite, interfered and closed the session. A short time afterwards, however, just as the duke was about to set out on another expedition against France, <sup>The death of Bucking-</sup> he was assassinated. The people rejoiced at the death of the man they hated, but his death caused no change in the policy of the king.

**195. Parliament's protest.** The next year Parliament met again. There was great excitement, for signing the "Petition of Rights" had had no effect upon the actions of the king. Another trouble had arisen, for Laud, who at this time was Bishop of London, had introduced into the church service many ceremonies that were so much like those of the <sup>Laud and the church.</sup> Roman Catholics that Parliament feared a return to the Romish doctrine. The Speaker of the House knew that a protest was coming, and he attempted to adjourn the assembly, saying that he did so by the king's orders. King or no king, Parliament was resolved that the protest should be heard; and so, while two members held the Speaker down in his chair and another locked the outer door, a declaration was read that whoever favored the teachings of Rome, and whoever paid voluntarily any tax not voted by Parliament, was an enemy to his country.

During the reading of the protest, the king had sent for one of the officers, but the man was not allowed to

leave the room. The king sent a message, but the House refused to admit the messenger. Then the king "grew into much rage and passion" and sent the royal guard to break in the door; but now that the protest had been read and every member of the House had heard it, the doors were thrown open and Parliament quietly adjourned.

**196. Eleven years without Parliament.** The king took off his royal robes and said that never again would he put them on to enter the House, for he would rule without any Parliament; and this he did for eleven long years. He and his ministers invented all kinds of ways to fill the royal treasury. One way was by granting "monopolies," an old abuse of the preceding century; for instance, one man would receive from the king permission to make soap, and all other men would be forbidden to carry on the business. Of course this man could well afford to pay a high price for such permission, and the money went into the king's treasury.

**Star Chamber revived.** The Star Chamber of Henry VII.'s day was revived, and any one who ventured to object to a royal tax was by this tribunal condemned to pay a much larger one; if he refused, his goods were taken from him. This court was in the hands of Earl Strafford, a noble devoted to the cause of the king, but who, as Sir Thomas Wentworth, had formerly supported the side of Parliament. He had a plan which he named "Thorough," and its aim was to make the king absolutely independent. Whatever Charles chose to demand was to be granted, even if it was against the laws of the country and the will of Parliament.

Another kind of tribunal was known as the Court of High Commission. Laud, now Archbishop of Canterbury, presided over this, and here those who did not

believe it right to worship in the form prescribed by the Church of England were fined. This court had existed in Elizabeth's day, but had never been such an instrument of tyranny as it now became. Men who were brought up before either of these courts had no trial and no way of defending themselves. They must pay whatever fine was demanded or be sent to prison.

**The Court  
of High  
Commis-  
sion.**

Of course the Puritans suffered terribly from such a tyranny as this. They were fined and imprisoned and whipped and branded with red-hot irons. It is no wonder that they thought more and more of going to the New World, where they would be away from the tyranny of such a king and such ministers. Many of them did cross the sea, and on one occasion two strong, resolute men — if we may trust the story — wishing to sail with a band of these emigrants, boarded the vessel when it was in the Thames, but the king *fortale* their going. A few years later he must have been sorry that he had detained them, for these men were

**Persecution  
of the  
Puritans.**



JOHN HAMPTEN

John Hampden and Oliver Cromwell.

Still the king had not money enough, for he and Straf-

ford had decided that the only way to maintain absolute power was to establish a royal army. But **Ship-money.** whence should they get the money to pay the soldiers? There was another old law, or custom, that they thought they could revive. In earlier times the sovereign had been allowed to call upon the seaports to contribute ships or money when there was danger of invasion by sea. "What one king has done, another king may do," said Charles and his advisers, and he demanded "ship-money" from the whole kingdom.

The land was not at war, and there was no danger of any invasion. People were sure that the king would use whatever money he obtained in this way to **John Hampden's triumph.** establish an army. It needed a bold man to refuse to pay, but there were some who did refuse, and among them was this brave John Hampden. The twenty shillings demanded of him he would not pay. After months of deliberation, seven judges out of twelve decided against him; but all these judges were servants of the king, and the fact that five of them favored Hampden encouraged men throughout the kingdom to refuse to pay the unjust tax.

**197. Trouble in Scotland.** Charles had put the country into a turmoil, but he had gained no wisdom from his troubles. Instead of trying to make matters better in England, he turned his attention to Scotland—and wherever he turned his attention, there were sure to be difficulties. He chose this time of all times to try to compel the Scottish Presbyterians to use the English Prayer Book. The Dean of Edinburgh did his best to obey the king's orders, but in a moment the church was full of angry shouts. He tried again, and an old woman named Janet Geddes threw at the dean's head the little stool on which she had been



sitting, and cried, "Do you mean to say mass at my ear?" Then came rebellion, and the king had no money to pay soldiers. There was nothing to do but to call Parliament, and this Charles did in 1640. It was called the "Long Parliament," because it did not dissolve for twenty years. The "Long Parliament," 1640.

**198. Parliament's opposition.** Much as the people had suffered, they had not yet come to the point where they would accuse their king directly of unfaithfulness to the kingdom intrusted to him. Instead of this, they accused his advisers, Laud and Strafford, of treason, and both were sent to the Tower. Charles wrote a friendly letter to Strafford and said, "Upon the word of a king, you shall not suffer in life, honor, or fortune. This is but justice." Within three weeks Strafford had a chance to learn the value of the word of this king, for Charles signed his death warrant, and he was beheaded. A few years later Laud was executed. Laud and Strafford.

The king could easily find new men to serve him, thought Parliament, therefore an act was passed at once to abolish the Star Chamber and the Court of High Commission. More than once Charles had abruptly closed the session when he wished to stop the discussion of any matter. Parliament did not now mean to be caught again in the same trap, so the next law enacted was that the session then in progress should not be closed without the permission of a majority of the members.

**199. Trouble in Ireland.** Following close upon these disputes came trouble in Ireland. In the earlier times Ireland was superior to England in learning and culture, and the Irish schools were famed throughout Europe. Before the eleventh century these schools ceased to exist, chiefly because of the invasions of the

Danes. The culture of many years was destroyed. In the twelfth century, Henry II. had made a partial conquest of the eastern and southern parts of the island, but this conquest was in reality hardly more than the establishment of posts, from which continual warfare was waged with the Irish. Moreover, the English within "the Pale," as the land held by them in Ireland was called, instead of helping the Irish to recover the civilization they had lost, only scorned them; but, strangely enough, before many years had passed, the English in Ireland were on no higher plane than their neighbors, though many laws had been made to keep the two peoples apart. There were laws that they should not intermarry, and that the English should not play the old Irish games or speak the Irish language. In the reign of Henry VII. it was decreed that if the Irish wished to make a law, they must first get permission from England. Henry VIII. called himself King of Ireland, and commanded the Irish to accept him as the head of the church. Even the wise Queen Elizabeth was exceedingly unwise in her treatment of the island, for she sent her favorite, the Earl of Essex, to Ireland as governor. Rebellion arose. There was famine, and the punishment of the starving people was so severe that the queen herself put a stop to it lest, as she said, she should have "nothing but ashes and corpses to ride over."

The opposition of Henry VIII. had developed a strong Irish devotion to the Church of Rome, and when James persecuted the Irish to make them accept the Church of England, they were deeply resentful. There could hardly fail to be rebellion. In punishment James seized all northeastern Ireland and granted it to any Scotsmen or Englishmen who

England's  
earlier con-  
nection with  
Ireland.

Plantation  
of Ulster.  
1611.

English Metric

0 10 20 30 40

A

**B**

c



A

B

C

D



wished to settle in that part of the country. Many went from London, and they named their settlement Londonderry in memory of their old home. The resentment of the dispossessed Irish is responsible for much of the trouble that has since arisen in that disturbed country. It cannot be denied that the material results of this "Plantation" were successful. The new inhabitants established industries that brought great prosperity to the country, but this was a doubtful advantage, in view of the sullen hostility which the act occasioned.

Charles had appointed Strafford governor of Ireland, and although the earl introduced many measures for the good of the land, his rule was so harsh that a <sup>Irish</sup> very small injustice would arouse a revolt; and <sup>revolt.</sup> it was not long before the Irish who had been turned out of their homes in northeastern Ireland did revolt and massacre many of the English settlers in the land. What should be done? If England was to maintain her hold on Ireland, the revolt must be put down and punished; but to give the king men and money was to endanger the liberties of England, for he would then be strong enough to compel the submission of those members of Parliament who were opposed to him.

200. The "Grand Remonstrance." There was much discussion. Some stood firmly by the king. Some thought that it was the wisest plan, since the king had yielded several points, to bear with him, and hope that nothing worse would come to pass. Some — and these were in the majority — felt that they had endured as long as they could, and that they could put no confidence in anything that he might promise. They drew up a paper called the "Grand Remonstrance," which named, one after another, the acts of Charles that were against the laws of the land.

**201. Charles tries to arrest members of Parliament.** Charles well knew who were the five leaders of this third party, and he made up his mind to arrest them. A certain soldier had a hint of what the king meant to do, and he contrived to let Parliament know what was coming to pass. The five men appeared and took their seats, but Parliament begged them to withdraw to prevent any scene of violence in the House. Four yielded, but the fifth would not go until an old friend pulled him out of the door just as the king drew near. The attendants stood back, and through the long lane between them the king passed, handsome and dignified, upstairs to the House of Commons. The door was thrown open, and Charles walked slowly to the chair of the Speaker. All the members rose with uncovered heads to hear what the king might say.

He looked about the House, but could not see the five members. Then he ordered the Speaker to point them out. The Speaker fell on his knees and answered: —

"May it please your majesty, I have neither eyes to see nor tongue to speak in this place, but as the House is pleased to direct me, whose servant I am here, and humbly beg your majesty's pardon that I cannot give any other answer than this to what your majesty is pleased to demand of me."

The king declared that what these five men had said in the House was treason, and not the "Privilege," or right of free discussion that belonged to every member of Parliament, and he ordered the men to be sent to him as soon as they appeared. He explained "in the word of a king" that he had not intended to use force. He made his customary remark, that as he had acted in the past for the good of his subjects, so he would

continue to do. Then he and his guards withdrew, while members of the House called "Privilege! privilege!"

**202. Why there was no compromise.** There were many efforts made to keep the two parties from violence, and the king was at last ready to promise almost everything that was asked of him. There would probably have been some compromise, had it not been that people knew by an experience of seventeen years that a promise from King Charles meant precisely nothing at all; and for one other reason, which was that the majority in the House of Commons were strict Puritans, and they were so fully convinced that their belief was the only right one that they meant to compel the king and the country to think just as they thought in all religious matters, and to do just as they did.

**203. The two parties.** Now that affairs had come to a point where neither party would yield any further,



A CAVALIER



A ROUNDHEAD

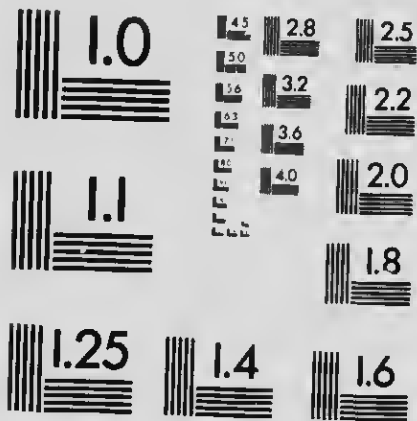
there was nothing to do but to fight. The king went to Nottingham and called upon all loyal subjects to join him. Every man in the kingdom must stand on one side or the other. The majority of the men on the





# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

king's side were of some rank and fortune. They were the nobles, the clergy, and most of the men of means living in the country. They dressed well and rode well; indeed, it was because of their horsemanship that the nickname, Cavaliers, was given to them.

The forces of the Puritans were quite in contrast with these elegant gentlemen. While there were some among them of wealth and noble birth, most of them were men who lived on small farms in the country or kept shops in the city. Men of fashion wore long, curling hair, but the Puritans scorned any such folly, and kept their hair cut short. This is why they were nicknamed Roundheads.

**204. Civil War.** It was in 1642 that the first fighting took place, and the first real battle was at Edgehill.

**Edgehill. 1642.** Neither army had had much training, but most of the king's men were accustomed to riding, and therefore the royal cavalry was far superior to the undrilled Puritan footsoldiers, and this contest resulted in a drawn battle. Indeed, for some little time the king was successful, and had it not been for one strong, clear-headed man among the Puritans, the ending of the war might have been quite different.

This man was named Oliver Cromwell. He had been a member of Parliament, but had left his seat to join the army. He saw at once that it was a mistake to pay low wages and to take every one who wished to become a soldier; and he set to work to raise a regiment that should be of quite different material from the rest of the parliamentary army. He gave his men high wages, but he would admit to his ranks only those who were of good character and some education, and whose religious belief was like his own. There was neither swearing nor gambling nor drinking in Crom-

**Cromwell's  
"Iron-  
sides."**

[1642

were  
means  
well;  
the

with  
mong  
men  
shops  
hair,  
their  
med

ght-  
chill.  
most  
ling,  
the  
lted  
the  
ong,  
the

een  
the  
e to  
hed  
aise  
erial  
his  
only  
ion,  
was  
om-



1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee. The names are listed in alphabetical order, and the addresses are given in full. The list is as follows:

Name	Address
Mr. A. B. C.	123 Main Street, New York, N.Y.
Mr. D. E. F.	456 Elm Street, Boston, Mass.
Mr. G. H. I.	789 Oak Street, Chicago, Ill.
Mr. J. K. L.	101 Pine Street, Philadelphia, Pa.
Mr. M. N. O.	202 Cedar Street, San Francisco, Cal.
Mr. P. Q. R.	303 Birch Street, Portland, Me.
Mr. S. T. U.	404 Spruce Street, Seattle, Wash.
Mr. V. W. X.	505 Fir Street, Denver, Colo.
Mr. Y. Z. A.	606 Willow Street, Minneapolis, Minn.
Mr. B. C. D.	707 Ash Street, St. Paul, Minn.
Mr. E. F. G.	808 Hickory Street, Des Moines, Iowa
Mr. H. I. J.	909 Walnut Street, Omaha, Neb.
Mr. K. L. M.	1010 Chestnut Street, Kansas City, Mo.
Mr. N. O. P.	1111 Locust Street, St. Louis, Mo.
Mr. Q. R. S.	1212 Olive Street, Cincinnati, Ohio
Mr. T. U. V.	1313 Madison Street, Indianapolis, Ind.
Mr. W. X. Y.	1414 Monroe Street, Louisville, Ky.
Mr. Z. A. B.	1515 Jefferson Street, Nashville, Tenn.
Mr. C. D. E.	1616 Adams Street, Memphis, Tenn.
Mr. F. G. H.	1717 Jackson Street, Jackson, Miss.
Mr. I. J. K.	1818 Madison Street, Birmingham, Ala.
Mr. L. M. N.	1919 Monroe Street, Mobile, Ala.
Mr. O. P. Q.	2020 Jefferson Street, New Orleans, La.
Mr. R. S. T.	2121 Adams Street, Houston, Tex.
Mr. U. V. W.	2222 Jackson Street, Dallas, Tex.
Mr. X. Y. Z.	2323 Madison Street, Fort Worth, Tex.
Mr. A. B. C.	2424 Monroe Street, Austin, Tex.
Mr. D. E. F.	2525 Jefferson Street, San Antonio, Tex.
Mr. G. H. I.	2626 Adams Street, El Paso, Tex.
Mr. J. K. L.	2727 Jackson Street, Albuquerque, N.M.
Mr. M. N. O.	2828 Madison Street, Santa Fe, N.M.
Mr. P. Q. R.	2929 Monroe Street, Las Vegas, Nev.
Mr. S. T. U.	3030 Jefferson Street, Reno, Nev.
Mr. V. W. X.	3131 Adams Street, Sacramento, Cal.
Mr. Y. Z. A.	3232 Jackson Street, San Jose, Cal.
Mr. B. C. D.	3333 Madison Street, San Francisco, Cal.
Mr. E. F. G.	3434 Monroe Street, Oakland, Cal.
Mr. H. I. J.	3535 Jefferson Street, Berkeley, Cal.
Mr. K. L. M.	3636 Adams Street, Alameda, Cal.
Mr. N. O. P.	3737 Jackson Street, Fremont, Cal.
Mr. Q. R. S.	3838 Madison Street, Stockton, Cal.
Mr. T. U. V.	3939 Monroe Street, Modesto, Cal.
Mr. W. X. Y.	4040 Jefferson Street, Merced, Cal.
Mr. Z. A. B.	4141 Adams Street, Fresno, Cal.
Mr. C. D. E.	4242 Jackson Street, Hanford, Cal.
Mr. F. G. H.	4343 Madison Street, Coalinga, Cal.
Mr. I. J. K.	4444 Monroe Street, Santa Maria, Cal.
Mr. L. M. N.	4545 Jefferson Street, Lompoc, Cal.
Mr. O. P. Q.	4646 Adams Street, Santa Barbara, Cal.
Mr. R. S. T.	4747 Jackson Street, Ventura, Cal.
Mr. U. V. W.	4848 Madison Street, Oxnard, Cal.
Mr. X. Y. Z.	4949 Monroe Street, Thousand Oaks, Cal.
Mr. A. B. C.	5050 Jefferson Street, Malibu, Cal.
Mr. D. E. F.	5151 Adams Street, Encinitas, Cal.
Mr. G. H. I.	5252 Jackson Street, Escondido, Cal.
Mr. J. K. L.	5353 Madison Street, Vista, Cal.
Mr. M. N. O.	5454 Monroe Street, San Marcos, Cal.
Mr. P. Q. R.	5555 Jefferson Street, Fallbrook, Cal.
Mr. S. T. U.	5656 Adams Street, Poway, Cal.
Mr. V. W. X.	5757 Jackson Street, San Diego, Cal.
Mr. Y. Z. A.	5858 Madison Street, Chula Vista, Cal.
Mr. B. C. D.	5959 Monroe Street, Escondido, Cal.
Mr. E. F. G.	6060 Jefferson Street, San Marcos, Cal.
Mr. H. I. J.	6161 Adams Street, Fallbrook, Cal.
Mr. K. L. M.	6262 Jackson Street, Poway, Cal.
Mr. N. O. P.	6363 Madison Street, San Diego, Cal.
Mr. Q. R. S.	6464 Monroe Street, Chula Vista, Cal.
Mr. T. U. V.	6565 Jefferson Street, Escondido, Cal.
Mr. W. X. Y.	6666 Adams Street, San Marcos, Cal.
Mr. Z. A. B.	6767 Jackson Street, Fallbrook, Cal.
Mr. C. D. E.	6868 Madison Street, Poway, Cal.
Mr. F. G. H.	6969 Monroe Street, San Diego, Cal.
Mr. I. J. K.	7070 Jefferson Street, Chula Vista, Cal.
Mr. L. M. N.	7171 Adams Street, Escondido, Cal.
Mr. O. P. Q.	7272 Jackson Street, San Marcos, Cal.
Mr. R. S. T.	7373 Madison Street, Fallbrook, Cal.
Mr. U. V. W.	7474 Monroe Street, Poway, Cal.
Mr. X. Y. Z.	7575 Jefferson Street, San Diego, Cal.
Mr. A. B. C.	7676 Adams Street, Chula Vista, Cal.
Mr. D. E. F.	7777 Jackson Street, Escondido, Cal.
Mr. G. H. I.	7878 Madison Street, San Marcos, Cal.
Mr. J. K. L.	7979 Monroe Street, Fallbrook, Cal.
Mr. M. N. O.	8080 Jefferson Street, Poway, Cal.
Mr. P. Q. R.	8181 Adams Street, San Diego, Cal.
Mr. S. T. U.	8282 Jackson Street, Chula Vista, Cal.
Mr. V. W. X.	8383 Madison Street, Escondido, Cal.
Mr. Y. Z. A.	8484 Monroe Street, San Marcos, Cal.
Mr. B. C. D.	8585 Jefferson Street, Fallbrook, Cal.
Mr. E. F. G.	8686 Adams Street, Poway, Cal.
Mr. H. I. J.	8787 Jackson Street, San Diego, Cal.
Mr. K. L. M.	8888 Madison Street, Chula Vista, Cal.
Mr. N. O. P.	8989 Monroe Street, Escondido, Cal.
Mr. Q. R. S.	9090 Jefferson Street, San Marcos, Cal.
Mr. T. U. V.	9191 Adams Street, Fallbrook, Cal.
Mr. W. X. Y.	9292 Jackson Street, Poway, Cal.
Mr. Z. A. B.	9393 Madison Street, San Diego, Cal.
Mr. C. D. E.	9494 Monroe Street, Chula Vista, Cal.
Mr. F. G. H.	9595 Jefferson Street, Escondido, Cal.
Mr. I. J. K.	9696 Adams Street, San Marcos, Cal.
Mr. L. M. N.	9797 Jackson Street, Fallbrook, Cal.
Mr. O. P. Q.	9898 Madison Street, Poway, Cal.
Mr. R. S. T.	9999 Jefferson Street, San Diego, Cal.

well's lines. These soldiers were upright, honorable men, and no other troops could ever stand before them. Their great fault was that they could not understand how any one whose belief was not like theirs could be honest and true. They abhorred the Church of England and the Church of Rome, and they liked the Scottish Presbyterians but little better, for Cromwell and his men thought that there should be no presbyters to govern the churches, but that every congregation should stand alone and rule itself in all things.

John Hampden had been killed in battle, and before long the command of the whole army passed into the hands of Oliver Cromwell and Sir Thomas Fairfax, and the men were trained as nearly as possible like Cromwell's first regiment of "Ironsides," as they were called. Before the war fairly broke out, Charles had asked Scotland to aid him, but that country had refused. Parliament now asked the Scots to unite with the English army against the king; and the Scots agreed on condition that the Presbyterian form of worship should be adopted in the English church. This did not please Cromwell, but finally a paper was drawn up called the "Solemn League and Covenant," and a union was formed.

The  
"Solemn  
League and  
Covenant."

For two years the war went on. Then Prince Rupert of the Rhine, the king's nephew, who commanded the royal forces, was defeated at Marston Moor. Another year, and the king suffered another defeat at Naseby. His private papers were captured, and then Parliament knew that Charles had been trying to hire foreign soldiers to come to England to fight his subjects.

Marston  
Moor.  
1644.  
Naseby.  
1645.

So many of the army felt that they were fighting for their religious belief that peace might possibly have

been brought about if Charles had been willing that Presbyterianism should become the national form of worship. This he positively refused.

**Charles  
surrenders  
to the  
Scots.**

Defeated as he had been in one battle after another, he did not give up hope of overthrowing the power of Cromwell and his Independents, if he could only increase the quarrel between them and the Scottish

**The Scots  
surrender  
Charles.** Presbyterians. Therefore, he disguised himself, slipped away to the Scottish camp, and surrendered. The Scots thought that he would

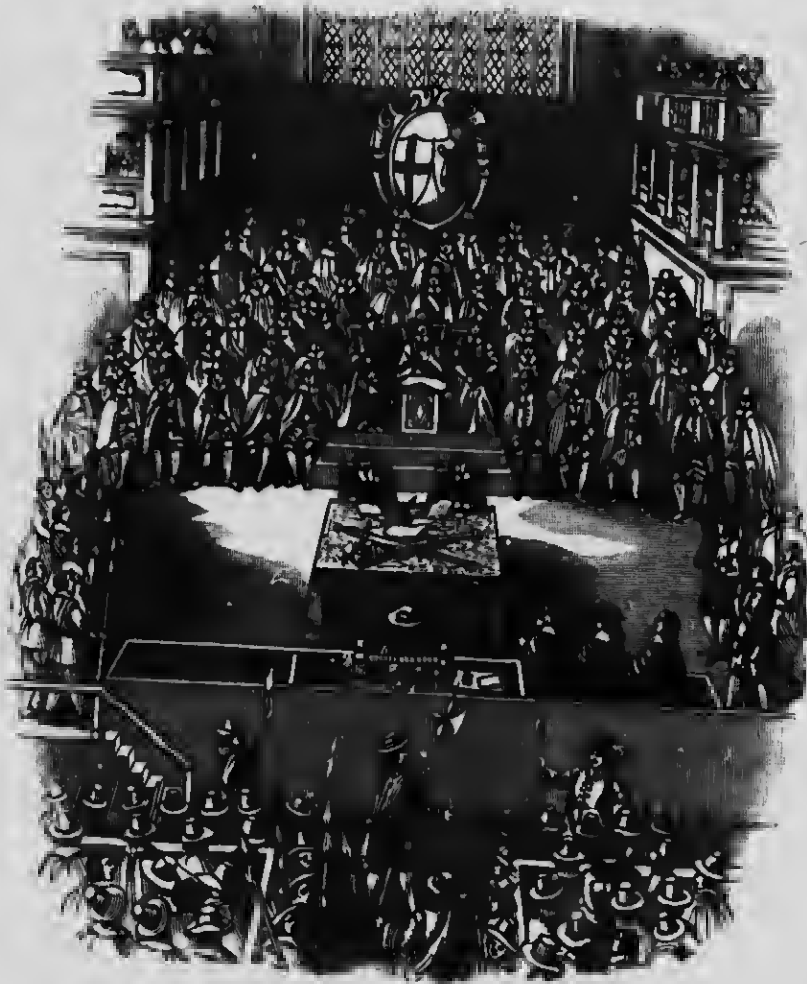
accept their terms and agree to establish Presbyterianism, but he refused. Parliament had long been owing the Scottish army, and now, on payment of the debt, Charles was given over to that body.

Cromwell and his Independents were as ready to oppose the Presbyterian Parliament as they had been to oppose the king. They made a sudden attack upon the castle in which Charles was confined and captured him, by no means against his will. Before long, Charles escaped to the Isle of Wight, and there, though he was really a prisoner, he tried to plan some way to outwit the Independents, just as King John in that same place had tried to find a way to outwit the barons.

**205 "Pride's Purge."** Soon the army discovered that Charles was trying to form a union with the king. Colonel Pride was sent with a number of soldiers to thrust out of the House the forty-three Presbyterian members. This is known as "Pride's Purge," and it was certainly a very and tyrannical a deed as any that the king had ever committed.

**206. Execution of Charles. January 30, 1649.** The rest of the Parliament decided to appoint a commission to try the king for "high treason and other

high crimes." Before this, kings had been deposed, or forced to flee to save their lives, or had even been mur-



TRIAL OF CHARLES I.

dered, but to call a reigning sovereign into court and order him to defend himself was an entirely new idea. The king answered simply that he had nothing to say,

since the court before which he was to be tried had no lawful authority. He was condemned, and ten days later he was executed.

It is hard to think that a reasonable man could honestly believe that it was right for him to be truthful with some people and untruthful with others ; **Charles's belief.** but so far as one person may judge of another, this was the sincere belief of Charles I., king of England. For twenty-four years the country had suffered from his arrogance and treachery, and yet his last words on the scaffold, pronounced with calm dignity and with every appearance of sincerity, were, " I am a martyr to the people."

For eight centuries England had been ruled by kings. It is no wonder that the people were aghast at this public execution of their sovereign and the immediate declaration of Parliament that whoever should venture, without the authority of that body, to name any person as king should be dealt with as a traitor. **An anxious people.** Charles was hardly buried before there began to be rumors of wonderful cures that had been brought about by the touch of a handkerchief wet with his blood. Many a man had strange dreams and visions of evil to come. Many a man felt that England without a sovereign was a ship without a rudder, and feared exceedingly lest some terrible judgment should be visited upon the land that was stained with the blood of her own anointed king.

### SUMMARY

The events of the last century had made men think, and as they were governed by a king who required unreasoning obedience to his treacherous and arbitrary rule, a clash was inevitable. In his marriage agreement Charles deceived



both Roman Catholics and Protestants. He collected "ship-money" and other illegal taxes, and revived "monopolies" and the Star Chamber. He signed the "Petition of Rights," but refused to allow discussion of abuses, and would call no Parliament for eleven years. The Puritans suffered especially from the Court of High Commission. An attempt to force the Prayer Book upon the Scots set Scotland in a ferment, and to obtain funds to suppress the rebellion, the "Long Parliament" was summoned. Revolt against injustice and oppression produced uprisings and massacres in Ireland. The "Grand Remonstrance" was drawn up. Charles attempted to arrest members of Parliament for their free speech in the House.

The deceitfulness of the king and the narrowness of the Puritans prevented any compromise, and civil war followed. Under Cromwell's leadership the Roundheads were successful. Charles surrendered to the Scots, and was given by them into the hands of a Presbyterian Parliament. Cromwell and his Independents captured the king. "Pride's Purge" expelled the Presbyterians from the House, and the Independents who remained appointed a commission to try the King. He was condemned and executed.

## 26. THE COMMONWEALTH AND CROMWELL 1649-1660

**207. England governed by the Commons.** The real power lay in the hands of Cromwell with the army to support him, but the little handful of men that were left in Parliament went on making laws for the whole country. They had already decreed that there should be no king, and now they declared that there was no need of a House of Lords, that the House of Commons could govern the nation.

Perhaps the chief reason why there was anything like a peaceful government in England during the next

eleven years was because there were so many different parties, and because the army under Cromwell was stronger than any one of them. There were Presbyterians and Independents, and there were "Levelers," who wished to have no titles and no differences of rank or political power. There were men who wished to give every one an equal share in whatever wealth was in the kingdom, and there were people who had no plan to suggest, but who were against everything that any one else proposed. There were many who had been royalists and had stood by the king from the beginning, and there were others who had not approved of Charles, but had wished his son to be king. No two of these parties would unite, and therefore Cromwell and his army were in power.

**208. Prince Charles seeks the throne.** Over in Holland was King Charles's oldest son, who was also named Charles. He was a young man of nineteen, and was the hope of the royalists. Little could be done for him in England, since Cromwell and the invincible army were there, but in Scotland and Ireland there was a better chance, and the royalists of both countries had proclaimed him as their king. Scotland would stand by him if he would support the Presbyterian church, and Ireland would help him if he would promise freedom to the Roman Catholics and would give the island a Parliament of its own.

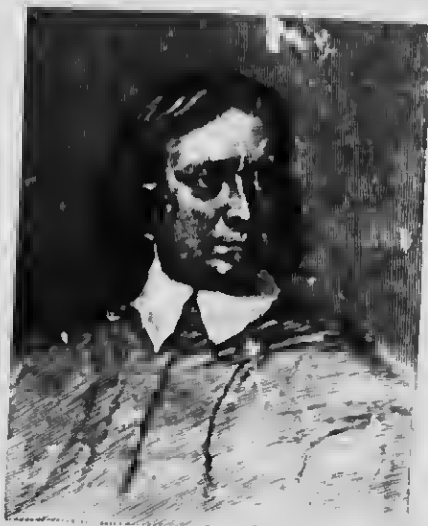
The one fact that we know about this young Charles which shows any earnestness of character is that he did make a great effort to save his father's life, by sending to Parliament a blank paper bearing his name and seal, that they might write what conditions they would if only his father might be spared. Aside from this, he shows himself only as a gay, trivial,

Prince  
Charles  
chooses the  
Irish.

idle young fellow; and it is no wonder that between the offers of the two countries he shuddered at the strictness of the Scottish Presbyterians and chose the Irish for his friends.

Cromwell and his army were sent at once to make it clear to the Irish that loyalty to the Roman Catholic church and devotion to any one claiming the title of king were henceforth to be regarded as the worst of crimes. For nine months there was slaughter in Ireland. Wherever either royalism or love for the Church of Rome had found a stronghold, whether among English or Irish, there was devastation and remorseless massacre. Cromwell even attempted to drive all landowners in Ireland to the northwest, and to give their land to English settlers.

Charles had now no chance in Ireland. His only hope was in Scotland, so thither he went; and now he forgot his promises to the Irish and agreed to become a Presbyterian, and to do all that he could to suppress the Roman Catholic church and also the Church of England. Cromwell pursued, and soon there was a battle at Dunbar. The royalists were beaten, but nevertheless they carried the young prince to Scone, and even without their famous stone, they crowned him as Charles II.



OLIVER CROMWELL

Vengeance  
of the Com-  
monwealth.

Prince  
Charles  
turns to the  
Scots.

The battle  
of Dunbar.  
1650.

In a few months the terrible Cromwell appeared. The Scots with Charles had come over the border into England, for they thought that English royalists would crowd their ranks. They were much disappointed, for few came to join them, and worst of all, there was a battle at Worcester, in which nearly all the Scottish army was cut down.

**The battle  
of Worcester.  
1651.**

**209. Flight of Charles.** The only hope for Charles was to flee to France. After the battle he contrived to slip away into a narrow road, and then galloped all night long. In the morning he disguised himself, and with a young "country fellow" as guide, set out to walk to the Severn. He had many narrow escapes on his journey. On one occasion he was obliged to hide all day long in a great oak tree in an open plain, peering out between the branches and catching glimpses now and then of the soldiers of Parliament who were searching for him in the forest. So he went on in one disguise and another till he came to the sea, and then over the water to Rouen. He was so shabby that the inn-keeper hesitated to let him into his house, but he was in France, and safe. For forty-four days he had been in the utmost danger, and through it all he had been brave and cheerful. Never did a man have better friends, for though it was called treason to help him, and there was a reward of one thousand pounds to any one that would give him up, not one of the many that knew the secret would betray him.

**The prince  
in safety.**

**210. Cromwell dissolves Parliament.** Four years had passed since the execution of Charles I., and still the little handful of men made laws for the nation. Cromwell believed that Parliament ought to represent the country somewhat more generally, but those who were already members wished to be free to retain

their seats as long as they chose, and when vacancies did occur, to fill them only with such men as they were willing to receive.

Word was brought to Cromwell that a law to this effect was to be made, and he went to Parliament with his soldiers. He thought it the height of tyranny when Charles I. came to the House and attempted to seize



SEAL OF THE COMMONWEALTH, SHOWING PARLIAMENT

five men, but now he himself went to the House, and when this law was about to be passed, he burst into a storm of rage.

"You care nothing for the public good," said he. "The Lord is done with you; He has better men to carry on His work." Then he strode "up and down the House like a madman" and stamped on the floor and shouted, "You are no Parliament, I say you are no Parliament. There sits a drunkard," and he pointed to one. "May the Lord deliver me from you," he said to another. "I will put an end to your sitting. Call them in; call them in."

In came "two files of musketeers," and every member of Parliament was driven from the House. "You have

foreed me to do it," said Cromwell sadly, his wrath all gone. "I have sought the Lord night and day that He would rather slay me than put me upon the doing of this work." Then he ordered the House to be locked. The French minister reported to his government that some one wrote on the door, "This house is now to let unfurnished."

**211. Cromwell as Lord Protector.** Cromwell and his officers appointed a Council, of which he was president. They obtained from various Independent ministers lists of men who seemed to them fit to sit in Parliament, and then Cromwell and his Council chose among them. One member was named Praise-God Barebone, — for the Puritans were fond of taking some Bible phrase to use instead of their own names, — and therefore the royalists

"Bare-  
bone's  
Parlia-  
ment."

called this assembly "Barebone's Parliament."

It soon adjourned, but a few days later the

Council "prayed Cromwell to accept the office of Lord Protector." He went to live in King Charles's palace, and was far more arbitrary than the king had ever been. There was a great difference, however, in their arbitrariness, for Charles meant to have his own way because it was his way and no one had a right to oppose him; while Cromwell meant to have his way because he felt sure that it was best for the country.

It is hard to say what would have been the result if, after the death of Charles, there had not been a strong

Naval glory  
of the Pro-  
tectorate.

hand to rule the nation. Ever since the days of

Elizabeth, the power and reputation of England

had been constantly sinking; with Cromwell at

the head, the old glory of the land returned. Perhaps

the greatest naval exploit of the Protectorate occurred

during the war with Holland. The Dutch were carry-

ing goods to and fro for sale among different countries,

and this was a great loss to England, for her merchants were almost driven out of the carrying trade. Two years after the king's execution "Navigation Laws" had been passed in England, forbidding England or any English colony to import or export goods in Dutch vessels. Of course Holland was aroused, and all the more readily did she sympathize with royalists who made that land the centre of their plots against Cromwell's government. War followed. The Dutch commander, Van Tromp, nailed a broom to his masthead to signify that he had swept the channel clean of English vessels; but the English navy was in excellent condition, and in command was Admiral Blake. The war lasted for two years, but in the end Van Tromp was beaten, and the Dutch were compelled to sue for peace. More-

Admiral  
Blake.



MEDAL COMMEMORATING VICTORY OVER THE DUTCH

over, during a war with Spain which soon afterwards broke out, the Spanish fleet was destroyed by Blake, and both Jamaica and the Flemish town of Dunkirk fell into the hands of the English.

England was again a great power, and in Cromwell's speech to his first Parliament, he said: "I dare say there

is not a nation in Europe but is very willing to ask a good understanding with you." Cromwell's favorite plan was that England should act as the protector of Protestants all over Europe. The Waldenses, a quiet, humble people who lived among

**Cromwell  
protects the  
Waldenses.**



JOHN MILTON

the valleys of the Alps, had been terribly persecuted because they would not give up their religion. They contrived to appeal to Cromwell, and he sent straightway an emphatic message to the Duke of Savoy that the Waldenses must be allowed to practise their religion as they would. The duke had no wish to contend with Crom-

well's "Ironsides," and from that moment the Waldenses were left in peace.

One of the most earnest of Cromwell's supporters was a great poet, John Milton. He wrote a strong and beautiful sonnet about the sufferings of the Waldenses, beginning :—

**John  
Milton.**

"Avenge, O Lord, thy slaughtered saints, whose bones  
Lie scattered on the Alpine mountains cold."

Save for a few sonnets, Milton wrote for more than twenty years hardly a line of poetry, but gave all his talent to the service of his native land, acting as Latin secretary to the Council and issuing fierce pamphlets in defence of the Puritans. He knew that the great



amount of work that he was doing was ruining his eyesight, but he went on, feeling that he must do everything in his power for his country; and when he was free, he dictated his great poem, "Paradise Lost," in total blindness.

Cromwell's rule in England was exceedingly strict, but he was far more liberal than any one would have expected. Edward I. had banished the Jews, Cromwell's  
liberality. but Cromwell allowed them to return. He was also kind to the Quakers, whom many people looked upon as enemies to church and state.

**212. Dissatisfaction.** It was a good government, but it was arbitrary, and the people of England were not satisfied to have power so absolute in the hands of any one man. Then, too, there were very strict laws forbidding many things that a great part of the nation looked upon as harmless. The Puritans called it wicked to play chess, to dance around a May-pole, to go fox-hunting, or to eat mince-pie at Christmas. As for the theatres, they had all been closed in 1642, for the Puritans could see no difference between the noble plays of Shakespeare and the vulgar ones in which King James delighted, so they were all condemned together. People who did not go to church were fined, and people who went to a distant church when there was one at hand were fined.

**213. Puritan extremes.** One could easily forgive the Puritans for refusing to play chess or for spending Christmas in fasting rather than in feasting; but it is not so easy to overlook their destruction of the fine old monuments and statues and stained-glass windows in the churches, and their stabling horses in the beautiful cathedrals, and marching in with axes to destroy the rich old carvings. The one excuse is that they firmly believed they were doing what was right and pleasing

to God. Moreover, when Charles I. was dead and they were in power, they were joined by many who wished only to be on the popular side; and these new converts were much more inclined to go to extremes than were the original members of the party. The Puritans certainly did some absurd things, but they were true, earnest, honest, straightforward, self-sacrificing men with a sincere love of liberty, — only they thought that their own way was the one true way of liberty.

**214. Cromwell's last years.** After being so brave and so determined all his life, Cromwell's courage seemed to fail him during his last years. He had met thousands of armed men without a shadow of fear, but now he feared every shadow. He wore a shirt of mail because he was afraid of being stabbed, and he was so alarmed lest some one should break into his bed-chamber that he rarely slept in the same room for two consecutive nights. At last mortal illness came upon him. When he was made Protector it was decreed that he should decide who was to follow him; but he had named no one, and the Puritans knew not who could succeed him. Some of the royalists were rejoiced that he who had murdered their king, as they said, and usurped his throne would hold the place but little longer. Others, longing as eagerly for the return of a lawful sovereign, could but dread the change and overthrow and the uncertainties of the days to come.

**215. Cromwell's successor.** Soon there came a night when all the land knew that Cromwell was dying. He was urged to say who should succeed him. In this last hour love for his son was in control, and he whispered, "Richard." He was buried — for a little while — in Westminster Abbey, and Richard Cromwell became Protector in his father's stead.

It would have taken a firm hand to rule in place of Cromwell. Richard was a Puritan, but he had no sympathy with those of his party who went to extremes, and he was not strong enough to suppress them as his father had done. He was kind and gentle and good-hearted, but he could not govern a nation. There was only one power in the land, and that was the army. The army was made up in great degree of Independents, and they wished matters to remain as they were; but the Presbyterians and the Cavaliers thought that anything was better than to let the army hold all the power.

**216. Calls issued for a "free" Parliament.** No one knew just what to do, but the matter soon settled itself, for the army requested Richard to resign. He yielded so promptly and so willingly that people called him "Tumble-down Dick." The army soon ceased to be united, and General Monk, who was the most powerful officer, came with his men from Scotland. Every one expected that he would take charge of affairs. He was a quiet, silent man, but when he had once made up his mind, he did not change. The Common Council of London told him that the people would pay no more taxes that were decreed by a limited Parliament like the one then in session. Still Monk hesitated. At last he came to a decision and he wrote a bold, firm letter to that body, bidding them issue calls for a "free" Parliament, that is, for a Parliament elected by the nation, and not by the Puritans alone.

### SUMMARY

The period began with a small Presbyterian House of Commons making laws for the nation, and with the chief power in the hands of Cromwell, supported by the army.

Prince Charles, seeking first the aid of Ireland and then that of Scotland, attempted in vain to recover his father's throne. Finally, Cromwell dissolved Parliament by force, and the land was ruled by a Council that soon made him Lord Protector.

His methods of ruling were often arbitrary, but he did what he really believed was for the good of the land. He restored the naval glory of England, protected the Waldenses, allowed the Jews to return, and was kind to the Quakers. His rule was good, and England prospered; but the reaction against Puritan narrowness set in, and not long after Cromwell's death, his son and successor was forced to resign the position of Protector, and calls were issued for a "free" Parliament.

#### 27. CHARLES II. 1660-1685

**217. The "Restoration."** Parliament again consisted of a House of Lords and a House of Commons, and almost the first thing that they did was to send to Holland to ask Charles to return. They seemed to lose all idea of prudence, for they did not require him to make any definite promises about what he would do after he had become king of England. He merely made a general statement that he would leave all troublesome questions to Parliament, and this seemed to satisfy both them and the nation.

Great preparations were made to receive the king. The flagship of the fleet that was to bring him and his brother James to England was named the "Naseby," in honor of one of Cromwell's victories over Charles I. That would never do, so when they sailed away from Holland, the name was changed to the "Charles." There were trumpets and drums and flags and handsome clothes, and the English had not forgotten to send a portmanteau full of good yellow gold and with it a bill

of exchange for five times as much. One of the rhymers of the day wrote : —

"At length by wonderful impulse of fate,  
The people call him home to help the state ;  
And w<sup>h</sup> it is more, they send him money, too,  
And clothe him all, from head to foot, anew."

Up and down the deck the king paced, telling of his escape after the battle of Worcester, and smiling grimly when he spoke of the coarse shoes that had hurt his feet so badly.

When the royal company landed in London, there was the merriest time that can be imagined. The streets were crowded with citizens and nobles. Charles's  
welcome. The mayor presented the king with "a very rich Bible," and Charles thanked him, saying, "It is the thing that I love above all things in the world." There were flowers and banners and wine and music and rich



THE ROYAL CHARLES

clothes and shouts of joy ; and so it was that Charles II. returned to the throne of his father. He took all this devotion as his rightful due, and said with a laugh, "It must have been my own fault that I did not come

before, for I find no one but declares that he is glad to see me."

**218. Devotion of Parliament.** Parliament could not do enough for the new king. Its first business was to deal with those who had been rebels against the crown. An act was passed granting a general pardon, but from this those who had been the judges of Charles I. were excepted, and thirteen of them were executed. The body of Cromwell was taken from

**Punish-  
ment of the  
regicides.**

Westminster Abbey, where it had been laid, hanged in chains, beheaded, and buried at the foot of the gallows. Even worse than that, the bones of his wife and daughter were dug up and thrown into a great pit.

Parliament at once proceeded to vote the king so large an income that he was far more independent than Elizabeth had

ever been; and when he came to be crowned, people went wild with delight. Of course, the story of the oak tree had been told over and over again, and as the king's birthday was May 29, it became the custom to call it "Oak-apple Day." Boys would go to the woods at dawn to bring home branches of oak-trees, each trying



CHARLES II.

to carry a larger branch than the others. They used to say : —

"The royal oak, it was the tree  
That saved his royal majesty."

**219. Charles's Character.** It is a great pity that Charles was not worthy of all this adoration, but he cared for nothing except a gay time. All the old amusements were restored, and the whole nation seemed to give itself up to merriment. If he had wished for innocent "good times," that would have been a different matter, but he was shameless and immoral in his sports. Dissolute women were given high titles, and the king surrounded himself with the most profligate companions. Any one looking on would have thought that the whole court gloried in being as wicked as possible. Charles allowed his favorites to make all sorts of jests about him, and one wrote what he pretended was the king's epitaph : —

"Here lies our sovereign lord, the king,  
Whose word no man relies on ;  
Who never says a foolish thing,  
Nor never does a wise one."

The king replied, "True, because my words are my own, and my acts are my ministers' " — and he seemed to think that to get the better of a courtier in a repartee was all that could be asked of a king.

At first the nation sympathized with his merriment. The years had been so grave and gloomy that it was certainly a relief to have a king who was good-humored and witty ; but people soon began to realize that more than wit and agreeable manners are needed in the man who stands at the head of a nation ; and more than one remembered that Cromwell and his Parliament, even if they had been strict and serious, had not

Charles's  
neglect.

given their time to selfish pleasures, and had conscientiously tried to do what they believed was for the good of the country.

No gratitude had Charles for those who had lost their lands or risked their lives in his service. He was ready to grant a coat of arms or to found a society of **Charles's ingratitude.** "Knights of the Royal Oak," but he would not forego one of his shameless pleasures to try to make up to his friends what they had lost in his service. That the king had any responsibility never seemed to enter his mind.

**220. Religious persecutions.** In the midst of all this mad frivolity, the people who wished to live simply and truly were so aghast at the wickedness of the times that they felt more strongly than ever that doing right was the most necessary thing in the world. It **Pilgrim's Progress.** was in these days that "Pilgrim's Progress," the best of all allegories, was written. Its author was John Bunyan, a Puritan, who for the crime of refusing

to attend the Church of England, and persisting in preaching to any one who would listen to him, was imprisoned for twelve years. It was while he was in jail that he wrote this marvellous book.



JOHN BUNYAN

John Bunyan was not the only man who suffered for his religious belief. The Puritans were again forbidden to meet for prayer and preaching even in a private house; and if a man offered prayer in his own



home when more than three were present, they were all liable to be imprisoned. The same law applied to the Quakers, but they met together so openly that soon the jails were overflowing with them. It was in this reign that William Penn asked the king to give him a tract of land in America instead of a large sum of money that the government owed his father. Charles granted this request very willingly, and henceforth the Quakers had a refuge in the New World, when life in England became unbearable. The Roman Catholics did not suffer from fines and imprisonment, but a law was made forbidding any one to hold office under government unless he had taken certain oaths that no Roman Catholic could conscientiously repeat. This last law was one with which the king had no sympathy, for his younger brother James was a Roman Catholic, and he himself became one before his death.

**221. The Great Plague. 1665.** When Charles had been on the throne five years, several comets appeared in the sky. People were afraid of comets, and all wondered what terrible event would come to pass. There was a hot, dry spring, and then came the Great Plague, which swept over England as the Black Death had done three hundred years before. Whenever any one was taken with it, the words, "Lord, have mercy upon us," were written with red chalk on his door. Every one who could leave hurried to the country. The stores were closed. The streets were silent as the tomb, except for the passing of the dead-cart and the awful cry, "Bring out your dead, bring out your dead!" People did not venture out of doors if they could help it, and if they met any one on the street, they covered their faces and hurried along for fear of catching the disease. At first the dead were buried only in the night, but soon so

many died that there were burials and the tolling of bells all night long and all day long. Many of the Puritan ministers stayed in the city and bravely did all that they could for the dying, but as soon as the plague was over, they were persecuted as severely as ever. After six months had passed, the pestilence began to die out, and a little by little people ventured to return from the country. Great fires had been kept burning in the streets to purify the air, but the houses were old and dirty, and it seemed as if nothing but their destruction would conquer the disease.

**222. The Great Fire.** The next year came the Great Fire, "a most horrid, malicious, bloody flame," says Mr. Pepys in his journal. For three days it swept the city of London; houses, stores, and churches were in ashes, and only a little group of buildings remained. Not many lives were lost, but the poor people suffered terribly, for almost everything that they possessed was destroyed. Charles and his brother James were both very kind to the sufferers, and did all that they could to help them. One of Charles's council heartlessly suggested that the fire was a good thing, for London had always been rebellious to her rulers, and now the king could govern the city as he liked. It is good to know that Charles was very indignant at this speech. The famous architect, Sir Christopher Wren, had a plan for rebuilding the city so that there would be no more narrow, winding streets, but the owners of property would not agree to any change, and the city was rebuilt on the same foundations, though much brick and stone was used instead of wood.

**223. The war with Holland.** While London was suffering from these disasters, the English navy was engaged in a stubborn contest with the Dutch fleet

There was no reason for the war, except that the two nations were rivals in commerce; but it was not the less bitter on that account. Many engagements were fought, in which sometimes one fleet was victorious and sometimes the other. At last the desire of Charles to provide for his own selfish pleasure induced him to neglect the fleet, and the Dutch admiral, taking advantage of this, actually sailed up the Thames, and for some days blockaded the city of London. The people were stung by this national disgrace, and this, together with the growing mistrust of France, compelled the king to agree to a peace, and to enter into an alliance with Holland and Sweden against the French king.

**224. The Cabal Ministry.** Partly by reason of the unsuccessful issue of the Dutch war, the king's first minister, Clarendon, was forced to resign his office and flee the country. Charles himself was glad to be relieved of an adviser whose nature was too serious to suit his own frivolous disposition, and he felt that now he would be more free of the control of Parliament. The king's nominal advisers in Parliament had hitherto been the Privy Council, consisting of fifty members. This was too unwieldy a body to consult, and therefore the king chose from their numbers a select group of five members, who thus became a kind of inner council. By mere chance the first letters of the names of those whom Charles now selected to be his advisers formed the word CABAL. The word at first meant a body of secret advisers; but because these men were so distrusted, "cabal" is now used as a term of contempt.

**225. Charles and Louis.** Charles was very angry at being compelled to conclude a peace with the Dutch, and, even though he had entered into an agreement to join with them against France, he was determined to

break his promise. He was eager for money, and this he could not get without calling a Parliament and presenting good reason to show that money was really needed. He was beginning to lean towards the Catholic religion and to favor the Catholics of England. In the midst of his difficulties he could find no other resource than to turn to Louis XIV., king of France, then the wealthiest and most powerful monarch in Europe.

**The Treaty of Dover.** In 1670, unknown to the Protestant members of the Cabal, a secret treaty was made at Dover between the two kings, by which Charles, in spite of his alliance with the Dutch, bound himself to assist Louis to conquer that nation, and also agreed to join the Catholic church openly. In return he was to receive a large yearly pension from Louis and the aid of six thousand French soldiers to use against the English, should they object to carrying out the terms of the treaty.

For some time Charles managed to conceal this disgraceful bargain. He actually declared war against the Dutch, but he did not dare to appeal to Parliament for money to carry on the war, so he seized from the national treasury what would be equal to nine or ten million dollars to-day, and spent it partly on the war and partly on his own pleasure. This money had been collected to repay wealthy citizens of London who had lent large sums to the government, and when they were not paid, many merchants and bankers were ruined. The secret of the treaty soon began to leak out, and it was strongly suspected that Charles had become a Catholic. The country was indignant, and in spite of his struggles, the king was again compelled to make peace with the Dutch. All over the kingdom men were sullen and restless. Several attempts to

**Charles  
robs the  
treasury.**

lessen the severity of the laws against Catholics caused an outbreak of religious fanaticism. An infamous or half-insane wretch, called Titus Oates, declared that there had been a gigantic plot formed by the Roman Catholics to burn London and to murder the king. This was false; but many people were put to death as a result. A plot was really formed by

Plots  
against  
the king.



COSTUMES OF GENTLEMEN AND SERVANT, REIGN OF CHARLES II.

Showing periwig, feathers, lace, "petticoat-breeches," etc., which were then worn

some of the extreme Puritans against Charles and his brother, but it proved a failure. It was called the Rye House Plot, because the plan was to murder Charles and James at the Rye House, near London. Of course, this added to the excitement, and further executions followed.

**226. The "Habeas Corpus Act."** In the midst of all these quarrels the famous "Habeas Corpus Act" of 1679 was passed by Parliament. The act gets its name from the first two words of the writ, or command, issued by

the judges, which directs the sheriff to "produce the body" of the accused person in court, in order that they may be satisfied that the prisoner is detained in jail for just cause. This had long been a leading principle of English law, but on many occasions it had, by various means, been disregarded. By the act of 1679, however, every man confined in jail can demand to be brought at once before the judges, and if no reasonable cause is shown why he should be kept in jail, he can demand to be released. Under this act it is no longer possible to imprison a man without just cause, or to keep him in jail for any length of time without a trial.

**227. Charles's successor.** The more strongly Protestant the country became, the more eager was Charles to make it Roman Catholic. He tried his best to have laws passed that would allow him to favor the church of his choice, but Parliament refused. The religious question made it very difficult for Parliament to decide who should reign after Charles. His next heir was his brother James, but James was a Roman Catholic, and the country wished to have a Protestant. Parliament, led by Shaftesbury, one of the ablest of the statesmen of this time, tried to pass a bill called the "Exclusion Bill," that would shut James from the throne; but it failed, partly because the king did everything that he could against it, and partly because people could not unite upon a successor to Charles. Some wished to give the crown to the Duke of Monmouth, an illegitimate son of Charles, and a Protestant; and some wished to give it to one of James's two daughters. They were both Protestants, and Mary, the elder, had married William, Prince of Orange. Some thought that the only safe way was to "exclude" James and his children. How the matter

**The Duke  
of Mon-  
mouth.**

would have been settled is a question, but Charles suddenly died before anything was arranged, and there was nothing to do but to put James on the throne. There was then, in 1685, a king whom the majority of the people did not want, but tolerated in order to prevent civil war; and there was a rival whom the majority of the people heartily wished could have been the legal heir. It is easy to see what is likely to be the story of the reign of King James II.

### SUMMARY

On the return of Charles II. the regicide judges were punished, and Cromwell's grave was shamelessly violated. Parliament was devoted to an extravagant, ungrateful, and dissolute king, who cared for nothing but his own disgraceful amusements. Gradually two parties were formed, one determined to maintain the hereditary succession to the throne, a course that would increase the power of the sovereign; the other determined to secure for the future a Protestant ruler who, having been put on the throne by the people rather than by any right of birth, would be more strictly accountable to the people for his deeds.

The reign was marked by the Great Plague, which was followed by the Great Fire of London. Wars, which brought disgrace upon England, were fought with the Dutch, and the shameful Treaty of Dover concluded with France. Puritans and Quakers were persecuted. The harassing of the Puritans brought forth "Pilgrim's Progress." The "Habeas Corpus Act" was passed.

### 28. JAMES II. 1685-1688

228. "**King Monmouth's**" rebellion. Four months after the reign of James began, there was a rebellion against him, followed by a revenge that was worse than the rebellion. The Duke of Monmouth, or "King

Monmouth" as his supporters called him, was in Holland, and he felt so sure that people in England wished him

to be king, that he thought all he had to do was to make his appearance and be put on the throne.

Word was brought to London one day that three Dutch vessels had been seen off the southern coast of England. Late in the afternoon it was known that these three vessels had sailed directly from



THE DUKE OF MONMOUTH

Holland, and that the Duke of Monmouth was probably on board. Parliament passed various resolutions in support of the king. One made it treason not only to propose any other king, but even to say that Monmouth was the lawful son of Charles.

The duke had landed with but a few followers. Others joined him, but any possibility of a more general support was destroyed at once by a foolish proclamation that he issued, declaring himself king, and accusing King James of burning the city of London of murdering his brother Charles, and of originating the plot which Titus Oates said had been formed. Still, there were some who firmly believed Monmouth to be

**Monmouth  
in Taunton.**



the rightful heir to the throne, and there were others who were ready to support him in the hope that through him the land might again have a Protestant sovereign. The Puritan influence was especially strong in Taunton, and thither "King Monmouth" marched. Flowers and green leaves were strewn in his way, and people hung wreaths and flags from the houses. A company of enthusiastic schoolgirls came out eagerly to present him with banners that they themselves had made.

Monmouth was at the height of his glory; but in less than one month his claims were brought to the test at Sedgemoor and he was defeated and captured. **Downfall of Monmouth.** He begged for mercy, and actually crawled to the feet of his uncle, promising to do anything if only his life might be spared. He who had claimed the right to stand at the head of Protestantism in England tried to win the favor of James by promising to become a Roman Catholic. James told him that he might see a priest if he wished to change his belief; but the rebel was not pardoned, and only a few days after the battle he was executed.

**229. James's revenge.** The execution of the leader was no more than would have been expected, but a pitiless revenge was visited upon the country folk who had supported him. First, Colonel Kirke and his ferocious soldiers, afterwards called "Kirke's Lambs," **"Kirke's Lambs."** pursued those who had fled after the battle. These poor fugitives were horribly tortured, and as the soldiers drank and revelled, one after another of their prisoners was hanged to add to their fiendish amusement.

Much worse than even this was the tour of the chief justice of England, Judge Jeffreys, who went about through the rebellious districts holding a court, which

became known as the "Bloody Assizes." The first victim was Alice Lisle, a gentle old lady who had given a night's lodging to a fugitive who proved to be a friend of Monmouth. Jeffreys sentenced her to be burned alive, and it was only by the efforts of the clergy that she was beheaded instead. The parents of the young girls who had made

Judge  
Jeffreys  
and the  
"Bloody  
Assizes."



JUDGE JEFFREYS

the banners for Monmouth had to pay a large sum to save their daughters' lives. If a man could offer a great bribe, he was safe; but few of Monmouth's supporters were rich, and the slaughter went on. Jeffreys laughed

and jested in the most heart-rending scenes, and boasted that he had hanged more traitors than had been put to death in six hundred years. There is no question that he told the truth, for more than one thousand were hanged or beheaded or savagely flogged, and at least eight hundred were sold as slaves to the West Indies. The bodies of many that were put to death were cut into several pieces, and these pieces were boiled in pitch and distributed among the villages to be put up on guide-posts or on church towers. It is no wonder that even a century after the terrible time, people were afraid to go in the dark by the places where the gallows of Jeffreys had stood. Daniel Defoe, who afterwards wrote *Daniel Defoe* "Robinson Crusoe," is said to have been one of those who joined Monmouth's army, but he fortunately escaped capture. When Jeffreys returned to London, James was so pleased with what he had done that he made him Lord Chancellor, though it is said that Jeffreys's own father refused to let him enter his house.

**230. James's arbitrary rule.** James was a Stuart and believed in the "divine right of kings" as firmly as did the first James. When Parliament, fearing that the king would follow his father's plan of not calling a session unless he had to ask for money, did not consequently vote him as much as he had demanded, he announced coolly, "The best way to meet me often is to use me well."

James began with a pretence of liberality, and freed from prison all who were in confinement for refusing to acknowledge the king as head of the church in England. This looked well, but as it was only Roman Catholics and Quakers who had refused to take the oath, *Persecutions.* this act was hardly as liberal as it seemed; and what his liberality really was could be seen by his perse-

cution of the Scottish Presbyterians. Women were tied to stakes set on the shore at low tide, so that when the water rose they were drowned; men were shot down at their own doors like wild beasts; and the only offence of these people was that they did not think it right to attend the services of the Church of England.

**231. James attempts to restore the Roman Catholic Church in England.** Against the will of Parliament the king collected a large army, and then he demanded that Roman Catholics should be allowed to hold office. Parliament would not agree, but he put his friends into office as if he were the only authority in the land. The pope cautioned him not to attempt such arbitrary measures; and the Roman Catholics in England, however glad they might be of the favor shown to their church, saw plainly that by breaking the laws of the land, he was doing them no real good, and that matters would only be harder for them in the end. He paid no attention to their advice, but instead issued a "Declaration of Indulgence," granting religious freedom to both Roman Catholics and Protestants.

While there were some who believed that this would be a good law, every one knew that not the king but Parliament was the only authority that could make a law, and all could see that James's only aim in making the decree was not to give religious liberty, but to increase the power of his own church. The king paid no attention to any protests, but ordered his proclamation to be read in every church in the land. One clergyman said to his people, "I am obliged to read it in the church, but you are not obliged to listen to it; so, if you please, I will wait until you have left the building." In London it is said that the paper was read in but four churches.

James's  
proclamation.

The Archbishop of Canterbury and six other bishops had petitioned the king not to insist upon their reading a proclamation that was against the laws of the land; but James had flung all prudence to the winds, and he sent the bishops to the Tower. Never <sup>Imprisonment of the bishops.</sup> was there such an uprising of sympathy. When the bishops left their boat to enter the prison, the crowd that thronged the shore fell on their knees and begged for a blessing. James had thought that at least the Puritan ministers who were so opposed to having any bishops would be on his side, and he was surprised and angry when a number of them went to the Tower to see the prisoners and to express their sympathy. One of the bishops, named Trelawny, was from Cornwall, and the stout-hearted Cornishmen began to sing:—

“And shall Trelawny die,  
And shall Trelawny die?  
There’s twenty thousand Cornishmen  
Will know the reason why.”

The bishops were tried for “seditious libel” and were acquitted. London was wild with delight; the streets were all aglow with bonfires, and the houses shone with illuminations. James made an attempt to punish some of these jubilant people, but every time that any of them were tried in court the jury brought in a verdict of “Not guilty.”

232. **The question of the succession.** James’s two daughters were Protestants, and it is possible that the nation would have borne with the king much longer had it not been that while the bishops were in the Tower a son was born to him. This altered matters, for the boy would be brought up as a Roman Catholic, and there would be only a continuation of the struggle of the last three years — for all these troubles had come

to pass within that short time. The only thing to do was to appeal to William, Prince of Orange, who had married James's eldest daughter, Mary, and who was himself, after the children of the king, the heir to the throne. Ten days after the birth of the Prince of Wales, a messenger was sent to William to urge him to come to England and by force of arms to restore liberty to the country. William ac-



JAMES II.

cepted the invitation, and a short time afterwards landed in England with an army of thirteen thousand men.

**233. The "Revolution of 1688."** As soon as William reached England, the leading noblemen and clergy of the kingdom flocked to his standard. The very men who had urged James on his course now deserted him. Even the Princess Anne, persuaded by Lord Churchill, who was soon to become the great Duke of Marlborough, abandoned her father and fled to the protection of William. When James saw that he could not depend upon his closest friends, and when the army refused to follow him, he gave up all thought of resistance. He promised to do everything the people wished, but he was too late. He finally escaped to France, no attempt being made to prevent him, and there he was royally received by King Louis. Before he left England, he had thrown the great seal of the realm into the

**The flight  
of the king.**

Thames, thinking that in this way he could prevent the calling of a Parliament. William had without any delay marched on London, and had taken possession of the city. A few riots and some destruction of property took place, but the "Revolution of 1688" is perhaps the only great revolution in which no blood was shed. Judge Jeffreys was badly frightened, for he was without his royal protector and in the midst of thousands of people who hated him most bitterly. He disguised himself and tried to escape, but he was carried to the Tower, where he remained until he died.

**234. The convention of 1689.** The moment James fled from England the country was without any ordered government. There was no one who was legally authorized to call a Parliament, but the House of Lords and the leading men in the country requested William to carry on the government for the time, and in his own name to invite the electors to send representatives to a convention to be held at London. This convention, which met in January, 1689, declared that as the king had broken his promise to his people, they were no longer bound to obey him, and that, as he had fled from the country, the throne was vacant. A **The "Declaration of Rights."** "Declaration of Rights" was then drawn up, which traced the whole history of the contest with the king, stated clearly the rights and liberties of the people, and closed by declaring William and Mary king and queen of England, the actual government to be carried on by the king. William at once accepted the crown, both for himself and for his wife, and promised to rule according to the laws of England.

This "Declaration of Rights" one of the most important documents in English history. It states clearly that it is the duty of the king to govern for the good of

his people, and that, if the people are not satisfied with their ruler, they may dethrone him, and put some one else in his place.

### SUMMARY

That "King Monmouth," with no lawful claim to the throne, found any following was proof of the growing determination of England to have a Protestant sovereign. Kirke and Jeffreys visited a stern revenge upon Monmouth's supporters. James, under a pretence of liberality, did all in his power to restore the Roman Catholic church in England. He declared that Roman Catholics and Protestants should have religious freedom, and required all clergymen to read in their churches a proclamation to this effect, contrary as it was to the laws of the land. Seven bishops petitioned against this ordinance and were sent to the Tower. The trial of the bishops caused great excitement, and when they were acquitted the joy of the country knew no bounds.

The birth of a prince, who would be brought up as a Roman Catholic, aroused the people to invite William, Prince of Orange, to come to their assistance. James fled to France. A convention, which met in 1689 at the call of William, declared the throne vacant and elected William and Mary king and queen of England.

### 29. WILLIAM III. 1688-1702

**235. Limitations of the royal power.** Perhaps the strongest wish of the majority of the English people in regard to their ruler was to feel that they had a government that could be depended upon, and that would not be overthrown by the whim of whoever might chance to wear the crown. England was fortunate in that she had at last a sovereign who was as eager as his people to have a just and stable government and to make laws that would be for the good of the land.



In the next year after William came to the throne, Parliament passed an act called the "Bill of Rights," — confirming the "Declaration of Rights" issued by the convention which had met a few months before. The Bill, which settled a large number of difficult questions, was at once assented to by William, even although the object was to limit the power of the sovereign. One article declared that the king should have no standing army, and should impose no taxes without the consent of Parliament. Another said that he must not interfere with the execution of the laws; another that he must call Parliament often, and that members should be free to discuss matters as they chose; another that, as England was a Protestant country, the ruler should be neither a Roman Catholic nor the husband or wife of a Roman Catholic.

**236. Increase of liberty.** The king's power was decreasing and the people's power was increasing. Perhaps no one thing was more favorable to the strength of the people than the freedom that was now given to print more nearly what any one chose. Before this time no one had been allowed to print anything without the



WILLIAM III.

permission of the government inspector, and even under William, if an editor printed any of the speeches made in Parliament, he ran some danger of being fined or imprisoned; but even this partial freedom was a long step in the right direction.

An important question was how much liberty to allow to the various churches. At length a law was made which granted freedom to nearly all except Roman Catholics. Unfair as this was to one church, it was at least somewhat consistent with the general government, since that had declared that henceforth England was to be a Protestant kingdom; and at worst, the whole nation knew exactly where the government stood, and that there would be no pretence of general liberality when the real intention was to favor only one church. William had come from a land where people were free to believe as they would. When he was proclaimed king of Scotland, the usual oath was presented to him, that he would be "careful to root out all heretics and enemies to the true worship of God." As he repeated it, he said gravely, "I do not mean by these words that I am under any obligation to be a persecutor;" and although Parliament made some very strict laws against the Roman Catholics, his influence was always against the execution of the laws, and that could not fail to improve matters in some degree.

**237. The beginning of cabinet government.** Since the days of the Cabal whoever ruled England had been accustomed to select a little group of special advisers who had received the name of cabinet because they met in a small room instead of in the large council chamber. These men were the servants of the crown, and were responsible for their actions to no one hut the king. But the time had come for a change. The House of Commons

had now almost all the power in its own hands and it was very jealous of those who were intrusted by the king with the duty of government. There was a great deal of quarrelling between the Ministers and the Commons, until one of the leading men in England, Lord Sunderland, advised the king to choose his cabinet from among the men in whom the House of Commons had the greatest confidence and who were members either of that House or of the House of Lords. William consented, and this is the beginning of our present system of cabinet government. The king's advisers must now be in sympathy with the majority of the members of the Commons. If the House should refuse to support the cabinet in any important measure, the sovereign may either dissolve Parliament in the expectation that a new election will bring in men who will be in harmony with the cabinet, or he may choose a new ministry from among those that oppose the present cabinet. This great change did not take place all at once, but it had its beginning at this time.



QUEEN MARY II.

**238. Opposing parties.** It could not be expected that everybody in England would be delighted to have one king sent away and another put on the throne, and there were two classes of people that were especially opposed to the course taken by the country. The leaders of one party were five of the seven bishops whom James had sent to the Tower for refusing to read his proclamation, and with them were several hundred other clergymen. These bishops believed in the "divine right of kings" enough to think that Parliament ought not to change the order of succession, but not enough to be sure that whatever this "divinely appointed" king chose to do was right. They were honest in their belief, and gave up their churches rather than take the "Non-jurors." oath of allegiance to William as their lawful king; and it was for this refusal to swear that they were called "non-jurors." In the times of Henry VIII. they would have lost their heads for treason, but England was becoming more liberal.

The other class of people that were opposed to William were called Jacobites, from *Jacobus*, the Latin word for *James*. Some of them firmly believed that **Jacobites.** James ought to be on the throne; and some merely thought it quite possible that he might succeed in coming to power again, and wished to stand well with him if such should be the case. The result of this opposition was that William had little sincere, hearty support; and if he had not been strong and wise and upright in his intention to do his best for the land which he had been asked to govern, one can hardly guess what misfortunes would have come to England during those last years of the seventeenth century.

**239. James determines to regain the throne.** The Jacobites were more numerous in Ireland and in Scotland

than in England. James knew that to land in England and try to regain the crown was hopeless, but he fancied that he could go either to Ireland or to Scotland, for he felt sure that in those countries there were many who would support him, and he trusted that after his rule had been established in these two lands he would be strong enough to venture to come to England.

**240. The struggle in Scotland.** The hopes of James, however, were soon shattered in Scotland. The people of the Lowlands were ready to rise in rebellion against him, as his policy was just as distasteful to them as it was to the English. Indeed, in the western part of the country the peasantry took up arms, and soon the greatest disorder prevailed. This compelled William to action, and a convention, similar to that in England, was called by his authority. The convention met at Edinburgh, deposed the king, and offered the crown to William and Mary. William at once accepted the crown and sent several of his best regiments to hold the country.

There was one man in Scotland who was bitterly dissatisfied with the action of the convention. This was the famous John Graham of Claverhouse, better known in the Scottish ballads as "Bonnie Dundee." He had been one of the agents of the king in the persecutions of the Covenanters, and was warmly attached to the cause of his royal master. He immediately fled to the Highlands and endeavored to raise the clans in behalf of King James. So well did he succeed that soon he had an army of Highlanders who were ready to follow wherever he would lead. He at once marched southward and met the Lowland troops in the pass of Killiecrankie (1689). The Lowlanders were completely routed, but Dundee was killed in the moment of

victory, and as there was no one to hold the Highland army together, it soon melted away. In a very short time all the clans submitted to the authority of William, and Scotland was once more at peace.

All the Highland chiefs had taken the oath of allegiance to William before the time appointed had expired, with the exception of Macdonald of Glencoe.

**The massacre of Glencoe.**

He was an old man, and a proud man, and in order to show his independence he put off taking the oath until the last minute. Unfortunately, when he went to give in his submission, he went to the wrong place, and was, in consequence, six days late. Dalrymple of Stair, who was in charge of the government in Scotland, resolved to make an example of Macdonald, and to strike terror into the hearts of the Highland chiefs. Captain Campbell, with a small band of soldiers, was sent to Glencoe. They remained with the clansmen for some time, living on friendly terms with them and completely winning their confidence. Twelve days after his arrival, after a night of feasting, Campbell and the men fell upon the defenceless people and shot them down in cold blood. Most of those who escaped perished in the mountains from cold and hunger. The massacre of Glencoe, as it was called, was neither forgotten nor forgiven in the Highlands for many generations.

**241. The struggle in Ireland.** There were two things that Ireland had long wanted with all her heart. One was a free Parliament of her own, and the other was the establishment of the Roman Catholic church. For a promise of these she had offered her support to Charles I. in the times of the civil war, and for this support the Irish had been mercilessly punished by Cromwell. Slaughter had followed slaughter, until

**Feelings of the Irish.**

one can hardly wonder that to the Irish the name of Puritan was synonymous with atrocious cruelty; and Cromwell's attempt to drive all the Irish to the west and leave the more cultivated parts of the land to the English settlers could do no less than arouse a deadly hatred to all Protestant rule. When James came to the throne, the Irish felt that he would be their friend because he was a Roman Catholic; but he had made almost as much trouble by his friendship as any preceding king had made by his cruelty, for he had snatched all power from the English whose homes were in Ireland and had given it into the hands of the Irish. There could have been no action better adapted to arouse hatred between the two classes of dwellers in Ireland. In his wish to regain his former position, James, remembering only that the Irish were in power and that an unpopular Protestant king was on the throne, had no doubt that an exiled sovereign, who was a Roman Catholic and the heir of Charles II., would find in Ireland firm friends and strong supporters.

He landed with troops that Louis XIV. had loaned him, and he was delighted to find that he was received with a generous amount of cheering and many flowers and decorations. He did not realize that this enthusiasm did not signify devotion to his cause, but rather an eager hope that by supporting him Ireland might weaken William, and so win her freedom.

In northern Ireland the English and Scottish settlers on the land that had been stolen from the Irish owners were attacked. Many of them withdrew to the towns, especially to Londonderry, which was well fortified. King James's soldiers were about to march in, and as the governor was a Roman Catholic, there would probably have been little opposi-

Siege of  
Londonderry.

tion ; but thirteen young boys, apprentices, took matters into their own hands, it is said, and shut the gates.

Then began a terrible siege, lasting for more than three months. There was firing night and day. Several thousand people were shut up in this town, and they were starving. A pound of tallow was worth four shillings, a rat one shilling. A little fish from the river was not for sale for money, but could be exchanged for meal—if any one had meal to offer. Three thousand people had already perished ; must they surrender ? “Never,” cried a clergyman named George Walker, who was now acting as governor, and straight into the pulpit he went and held up the open Bible before them. “It is for this that you are fighting,” said he. “It is God’s battle, and He will deliver you.”

A little boy, too young to be suspected, had been sent to the town by the English with a letter in a button to say that help was coming ; but no help came. At last, only one hour after the sermon, away down the river the famished watchers could see the English ships. On board were troops and arms and food and friends. They come nearer. Shot after shot is fired. They return the fire and sail on. Across the river is a heavy boom of logs and chains and great cables. There is no hope. Yes, the first ship has dashed at the boom fearlessly and has broken it. Up the river come the three, and the heroes of Londonderry who yet live are saved.

The next year William was needed in England and in Scotland, but he felt that he was needed most in Ireland, so he chose nine men to help his wife in governing the kingdom and went to Ireland. Then came the battle of the Boyne, in which William took command of the English forces, and James, at a comfortable distance, watched the Irish fight for him

**Battle of  
the Boyne.  
1690.**



and his crown. When he saw that his troops were losing, he went to a place of safety in Dublin as fast as he could gallop, and told the magistrates that he had always heard that the Irish were worthless soldiers. "Never again will I lead an Irish army," said this ungrateful king. It is no wonder that an Irishman called out to one of William's men, "Change kings with us, and we will fight you again."

The Irish were promised that if they would submit, they should have more liberty; but when the English settlers in Ireland were again in full power, the Irish were persecuted and fined, and their lands were confiscated. This outrageous treatment was begun at this time, but the worst of it was carried on after the reign of William was ended.

**242. The struggle with France.** When William went to Ireland, he well knew that there was great



MEDAL TO COMMEMORATE QUEEN MARY'S REPULSE OF LOUIS XIV.

danger of trouble between England and France. Almost from his boyhood, he had been engaged in a struggle with Louis XIV., king of France. Indeed, it was largely in the hope of getting powerful aid in his fight with his old-time enemy that he had accepted the Eng-

lish throne. Louis, on his part, had long been trying to conquer Holland, and now to have William not only oppose him successfully in Holland, but also to rule the kingdom of England to the loss of his friend James, was more than he could endure; and while William was in Ireland, Louis sent a fleet to attack England. This was the best thing that could have happened, for the strongest Jacobites would not look on calmly to see their country invaded by foreigners. Moreover, Queen Mary was greatly loved by her subjects, and people of all parties were ready to second her energetic defence of their land. The whole country arose, and the French commander saw that he must return to France. Louis tried once more, and trusted that his bribes had won over Admiral Russell, the commander of the English fleet, who was in strong sympathy with the exiled king. Russell, however, had said to the agent of James: "Do not think that I will let the French triumph over us in our own seas. Understand this, that if I meet them I fight them: ay, although his Majesty himself should be on board." When the test really came, the admiral was true to his word, and at La Hogue attacked and destroyed the greater part of the French fleet.

The war was now carried on vigorously on the Continent. William succeeded in joining several of the Continental powers in a confederacy against Louis, and himself took the field in command of the allied armies. He was unsuccessful at the battles of Steinkirk and Landen, but the power of France was being gradually weakened. At length, in 1697, the Treaty of **The Treaty of Ryawick.** Ryswick was signed, by which Louis acknowledged William as king of England, and gave back all the territory he had won during the war. He kept the peace for four years, and then war broke out again.

**243. Feeling toward William and Mary.** William's life in England was not pleasant, and it may be that the secret of much of the discomfort he had to meet was that his manner was cold and reserved. The people were used to the gay, off-hand familiarity of the Stuarts, and the coldness of the king — which often resulted from shyness and sensitiveness — they thought meant dislike. He was neither fascinating in his manner nor handsome, and he knew English so imperfectly that he wrote his speech to Parliament in French. Charles had always had a jest and a merry retort, but William was serious and slow to speak. The people were ready to criticise whatever William did, and when he gave valuable positions in England to his Dutch friends, they did not stop to think of the many thousands of pounds that the Stuarts had lavished upon their amusements and their worthless favorites. It is true that William did not like England. He said once that he wished he was a thousand miles away from it and had never seen it. His subjects were indignant; but when he suggested that he was quite ready to resign the crown and return to Holland, they became very loyal, for they could not help seeing that it was a great thing for them to have a brave, wise king whose first aim was not to amuse himself, or to force any church upon them, but who wished simply to do his very best for the country that he had been asked to rule.

The English people were fond of Mary. She was gentle and kind, and as eager to do well by them as her husband was. William was heartbroken when she died, for she seems to have been the only person in the world who really understood and appreciated this silent, unemonstrative man. He went on conscientiously to the end of his reign. He was never popular, and the people

never forgot that he was a foreigner; but the worst charge that can be brought against him is that he was not severe enough in punishing one or two cruel deeds that his officers committed in his name.

**244. Succession to the throne.** William died in 1702 as the result of the stumbling of his horse over a molehill. James had died a few months before, but his son, James Edward, was now a young man of fifteen, and those who had supported his father were eager to have him for their king, and they used to drink to the health of the mole, "the little gentleman in black velvet," as they called him, that had caused the death of William.

Parliament had decreed by the Act of Settlement (1701) that if William and Mary left no children, Anne, **Act of Settlement.** sister of Mary, should become queen, and that after the death of Anne, who was now childless, the crown should pass to Sophia, the electress of Hanover, granddaughter of James I., and to her descendants. However, Louis XIV. paid no attention to this, and he forgot all about the treaty by which he had acknowledged the claims of William. As soon as James died, Louis proclaimed James Edward king of England.

### SUMMARY

England had at last a king who wished to make laws for the good of the land, even though they lessened his own power. Increased religious liberty was granted, and more freedom was given to the press. Nevertheless, there was opposition to William's rule by the "non-jurors" and the Jacobites. James's hopes of regaining the crown in Scotland were shattered by the death of Dundee, but with the assistance of Louis of France, he made a desperate attempt to hold Ireland. The attempt failed and James was forced to return to France. Louis attempted to invade England, but was unsuccessful. The war was closed by the Treaty of Ryswick.

## 30. ANNE. 1702-1714

**245. Brilliant reign of Queen Anne.** For nine hundred years England had been a monarchy. She had had sovereigns that were unwise, ignorant, passionate, but never before had she been ruled by a monarch who was quite so slow and dull as this "good Queen Anne;" and yet the twelve years of Anne's sovereignty form one of the most interesting periods in literature and one of the most brilliant in military success that have ever occurred in the history of England.



QUEEN ANNE

**246. The age of prose.** In Elizabeth's time men were aroused and excited by the great events and discoveries of the day. Their imagination was stimulated, and they wrote much poetry. Between the age of Elizabeth and the age of Anne, poetry had gradually lost its first free inspiration. Authors were forced to depend upon the patronage of some man of wealth and position, so that the personal character of the king was an important matter in the development of literature. The dissoluteness of James I., the falseness of Charles I., the narrowness of the Puritan outlook, the reckless immorality of Charles

II., and the struggle for Protestantism during the last years of the century, were not influences that would encourage a free, unrestrained poetical expression. Men wrote of philosophy, politics, natural science, and religion. The loss of poetry was the gain of prose.

In Anne's day there was far less that was exciting and inspiring than in the reign of Elizabeth, and people wrote but little poetry that seems really noble and great; yet the ability to write prose had been developing, and the prose of this period is so graceful and musical, and so precise in using the right word for the thought, that even after these two hundred years it is as great a pleasure to read it as it was in Queen Anne's time. Some of the

**The "Spectator."**  
1711.

best of it is found in Addison's articles in the "Spectator." This paper made no attempt to tell the news of the day, but presented brilliant essays that jested good-humoredly at the faults of the times, and interesting sketches of what was going on in the busy English world. Many numbers were written by Addison alone.

The works of Alexander Pope well represent the poetry of the age. His ideas were keen and sensible and

**The poetry of Anne's day.**

well expressed, and his couplets are, therefore, so often quoted that no one can read his poems without finding many familiar lines; and yet the poetry of the time does not make us feel as if the writer was so full of lofty and beautiful thoughts that he could not help writing, but rather as if he had tried his best to put every thought that he did have in the words that would express it most exactly. One reason for this carefulness is that with the return of Charles II. from France, the English became more interested in French literature, and the French were aiming especially at making every line smooth and exact and exquisitely finished.

### 247. Union between England and Scotland. 1707.

One interesting subject which everybody was discussing at this time was whether England and Scotland should be united. Since the reign of James I., one hundred years before, the two countries had had one king, but two Parliaments and different laws. The Scots and English were constantly at war with each other, and a feeling of intense hatred had grown up between them. One cause of this was the religious persecutions under Charles II. and James.

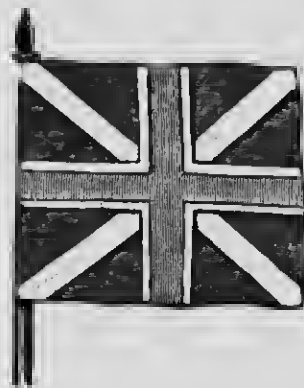
The Scottish people, as a whole, belonged to the Presbyterian faith, but Charles II. determined to compel them to give up their religion. He tried to introduce the Episcopal form of worship into Scotland and bitterly persecuted the people when they clung to their faith. This gave rise to the Covenanters, or men The Covenanters. who bound themselves by a solemn covenant to resist the attempt of the king to force Episcopacy on Scotland. They had to endure terrible sufferings and hardships, but them only the more deter-mined. Under rsecution continued, but when William throne, the Presbyterians found themselves in power and became persecutors in their turn. All this caused a great hatred of England in the minds of Scotsmen.

Scotland at this time was a very poor country. It had little commerce, and little agriculture, and the peasants were in a most degraded condition. Indeed, one of the greatest of the Scottish patriots gave it as his opinion that the only way to cure the evils of poverty was to make all the poorer people slaves. About the beginning of Anne's reign, the merchants of Scotland had entered into a gigantic trading scheme, called the "Darien Company," which was to bring great wealth

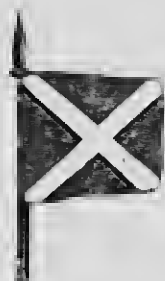
to the country by opening up a trade with the Isthmus of Darien. The company failed, and thousands of the "Darien Company" were ruined. The failure of the scheme was ascribed to the hostility of the English merchants, and this made the feeling in Scotland even more bitter.



ENGLISH FLAG



UNION JACK OF 1707



SCOTTISH FLAG

The wiser men in both Scotland and England saw that the only remedy for the state of affairs was union between the two countries. Scotland, under a separate government, with its love for the Stuarts, was a constant source of danger to England, while on the other hand, Scotland could not help being benefited commercially by the union. The question caused much discussion and much bitterness, but the result was that in 1707 the two countries were united under the name of Great Britain. The British flag, the Union Jack, was then formally adopted, though it had been used more or less ever since the reign of James I. The union was of great benefit to both countries, although Scotland was the first to show the result. Many of the Scottish people were never reconciled to the union, and one of the songs of the day said : —



"What force or guile could not subdue  
Through many warlike ages,  
Is wrought now by a coward few  
For hireling traitors' wages.  
The English steel we could disdain,  
Secure in valor's station;  
But English gold has been our bane;  
Such a parcel of rogues in a nation!"

248. **The war of the Spanish Succession. 1702-1713.** Just across the Channel trouble was arising for England. Louis XIV. was an able, ambitious sovereign, and he was determined to make France the most powerful country in Europe. His grandson had been offered the throne of Spain; and if Spain should support France, Louis would be strong enough to put James Edward on the English throne, seize Holland, and make himself master of Europe. England resolved to prevent at any cost the union of France and Spain. A confederacy was organized among the European powers, and the Duke of Marlborough was placed in command of the allied armies. The duke had a hard task to perform, and his greatness is shown quite as much by the way in which he held the allies together as by the victories he won. For sixty years the French had not lost a battle on the land; but at Blenheim, a



JOHN CHURCHILL, DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH

The Duke  
of Marl-  
borough.

little village in Bavaria, their armies were now overwhelmingly defeated by Marlborough. Blenheim is one of the decisive battles of history, as it shattered forever Louis's dream of sovereignty over Europe. The people of England were so grateful to the duke that they presented him with a palace with grounds twelve miles in circumference; and that the victory might never be forgotten, they named the place Blenheim. In the museum at Blenheim Palace is the duke's letter to his wife announcing his victory. It was written while he was on horseback, and after fifteen continuous hours in the saddle.

In the same year that Blenheim was won, 1704, Sir Cloudesley Shovel, who was in command of the fleet, captured Gibraltar, and shortly afterwards the French were defeated by Marlborough at three great battles, Ramillies, Malplaquet, and Oudenarde.

The strength of France was now almost exhausted. Louis wished for peace, but in spite of the efforts of Marlborough the war party in England insisted on such humiliating conditions that France was forced to keep on fighting.

In addition to the difficulty that Marlborough had in keeping the allies on friendly terms with one another, he had a greater trouble to contend with at home. **Party jealousy.** Party jealousy reached its height in the reign of Anne. The Whigs were in power and were favorable to the war, while the Tories wished for peace, and desired the return of the house of Stuart. The Tories, who hated the duke, did everything in their power to ruin his authority and to undermine his influence with the queen. For many years Anne had been governed in great things, as well as small, by the Duchess of Marlborough. The name of the duchess was Sarah,

over-  
s one  
rever  
people  
y pre-  
es in  
er be  
the  
o his  
le he  
rs in

4. Sir  
fleet,  
ench  
ttles,  
sted.  
ts of  
such  
keep

d in  
r, he  
ome.  
eign  
vor-  
and  
ries,  
r to  
with  
ned  
s of  
rah,

and people used to say: "Queen Anne reigns, but Queen Sarah rules." These two ladies wrote to each other almost every day. They dropped their titles and took feigned names, as children often do. The duchess was "Mrs. Freeman" and the queen was "Mrs. Morley." After the war had gone on for some time these two devoted friends fell out and the queen took a new favorite, Mrs. Masham, who



SARAH, DUCHESS OF MARLBOROUGH

was a Tory and wished to end the war. Soon afterwards the queen dismissed her Whig ministers, and the Tories who were bent on bringing the war to an end came into power. Marlborough was found guilty of taking bribes in connection with the army contracts, and was removed from his command.

The allies were forced to join in the peace negotiations, and finally, in 1713, the Treaty of Utrecht was signed. By this treaty England retained Gibraltar, and made great gains in America, for not only Nova Scotia and Newfoundland, but the vast territory around Hudson Bay fell into her hands.

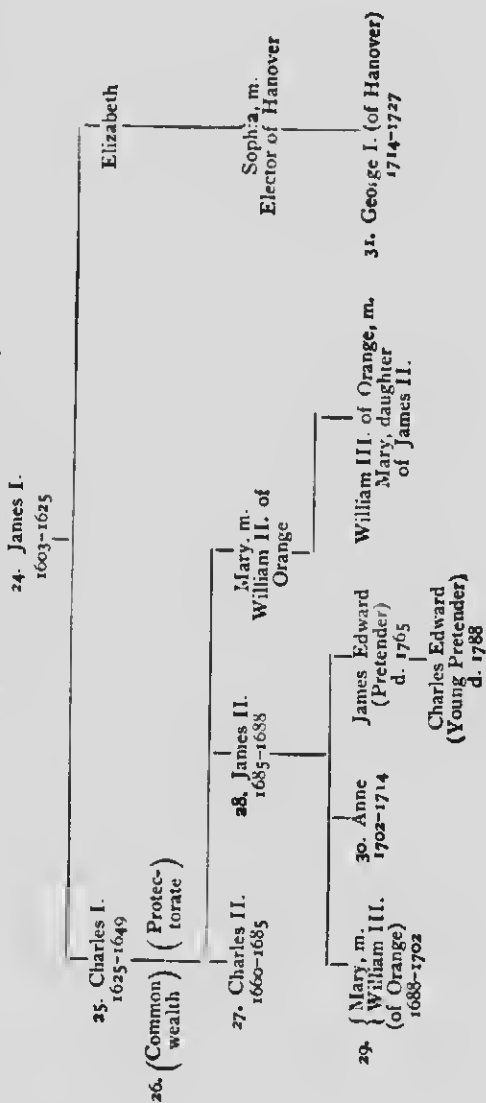
The Treaty  
of Utrecht.

**249. The last Stuart sovereign.** Anne was the last of the Stuarts to wear the English crown. Her half-brother, James Edward, still lived, and it is quite possible that he might have been made king of England if he had been willing to become a Protestant. Anne's children had all died, and the crown went, as Parliament had decided some years before, to a German prince called George, Elector of Hanover, who was a descendant of a sister of Charles I. England had had a Norman king and a Dutch king; now she was to be ruled by a German.

### SUMMARY

Queen Anne's reign is famous for the excellence of its prose literature and for its foreign victories. To prevent an alliance between France and Spain and the consequent triumph of France in Europe, England declared war against Louis XIV. Under the Duke of Marlborough there were brilliant victories on land, and under Sir Cloudesley Shovel the strong fortress of Gibraltar was taken. By the Treaty of Utrecht England gained Gibraltar, Nova Scotia, Newfoundland, and the Hudson Bay territory. Scotland and England were united, though the union was not heartily desired by either country.

## GENEALOGY OF THE STUARTS



## CHAPTER VIII

### THE HOUSE OF HANOVER

1714-

#### 31. GEORGE I. 1714-1727

250. A king who ruled easily. When George I. came to the throne, he could not speak a word of the language of the land that he had come to govern. He



GEORGE I.

did not think that it was worth while to try to learn it, and therefore he and his ministers stammered on as well as they could in the best Latin that they could muster. George did not like to be bored by matters of government, and as he did not know enough of the prominent men of England to select his own cabinet, he had a prime minister to do it for him. He did not find it difficult to rule the country; he simply signed whatever bill Parliament presented. The rest of his time he spent in eating, drinking, smoking, playing cards, and

being amused in a slow, cumbersome fashion at whatever jests any one would take the trouble to explain to him. He seemed so bored by his new sovereignty that James Edward and his friends fancied that the king might be glad to be relieved of his crown, and actually ventured to write him a letter inquiring whether he would not like to resign in favor of James.

**251. Dissatisfaction.** There was a reason why many in England were feeling dissatisfied. People had gradually become divided into Whigs and Tories. **Whigs and Tories.** The Whigs favored increasing the power of the people; the Tories, that of the king and the church. The coming of George had been brought about by the Whigs, and he agreed to whatever they wished to do. Naturally, the Tories were not contented to have no share in the government. Moreover, whatever there was left in England of the notion of the "divine right" of a king was in the minds of these Tories, and they had never quite forgotten that the heir to the king who had been driven from his throne was just across the Channel.

**252. Attempts of the Pretender.** For these two reasons, the feeling that George did not care enough for his throne to fight for it, and the dissatisfaction of the Tories, who were shut out from any share in the government, James Edward, the "Pretender," thought it a good time to try to regain the lost crown; and so it came about that in Scotland one Monday morning the drums beat and the bagpipes played, and a long paper was read declaring that "James VIII." was "by the grace of God King of Scotland, England, France, and Ireland." Battles followed; one was indecisive and one resulted in a surrender. Still James Edward hoped, and he hurried over to Scotland with only six followers. Unfortunately for his cause, the more people saw of him,



COSTUME OF GENTLEMAN,  
1721

the less enthusiasm they felt. He was heavy and slow, and seemed to have no interest in the men who were risking so much in their eagerness to support him. He was particular to demand as many attendants as if he had been really king, and he roused himself enough to name a day for his coronation, but that was all. When King George's forces were upon them, the courageous Scotsmen wished to put James Edward in the midst of his supporters and fight till the last man fell; but their proclaimed king preferred not to fight; and he quietly sailed away to France, leaving his brave friends to manage as best they could.

There were great efforts made to rescue the leaders of this conspiracy from the sentence of the courts. The wife of one of those who had been condemned to die contrived to gain access to King George to beg his mercy for her husband. She caught hold of the skirt of his coat, and the stout old king dragged her half-way across the room, while she struggled to put her petition into his pocket. That attempt was not a success, but she did contrive to smuggle a suit of women's clothes into her husband's cell, and he slipped away. The government seemed not at all unwilling that the captives should escape, and apparently took little pains to guard them. A number of prisoners had been taken from Scotland for trial, though the Scots contended that they ought to be tried where the offense had been committed. The English would not yield the point, but in order not to put too great a strain upon

**Treatment  
of the con-  
spirators.**



the new union between the two countries, the courts were careful to pronounce no sentence of capital punishment upon these men. No such consideration was shown for Ireland, and a bill was passed at about this time declaring that the English Parliament had the right to make laws for that country. Not many years later, Roman Catholics were forbidden to become members of the Irish Parliament. This meant that five-sixths of the inhabitants of Ireland had no representation whatever.

**253. The South Sea Bubble.** The reign of George I. is always associated with a financial scheme that — after it failed — was called the South Sea Bubble, and that resulted in ruin to many thousand Englishmen. This is the way that it came about. The South Sea Company had special privileges of trade in the southern oceans, and the members had become immensely rich. England had a large national debt, and its bonds were held chiefly by Englishmen. This South Sea Company now said to the government : —

"We will give you seven and one half million pounds if you will persuade people to exchange your bonds for ours; and we shall be satisfied with a smaller rate of interest than you have been paying these people. We can afford to do this because it will be worth so much to us to have a regular income from you, even if it is not a large one; and we can then increase our trade so that we can pay large dividends to those who have given up your bonds for ours."

This looked well on paper, and soon the stock sold for ten times what it was worth. Then came the sudden collapse, and people who had paid ten times its value lost nine tenths of their money. **The bubble breaks.** The government officials, with the exception of Sir Robert Walpole, had encouraged the scheme, and the losers

were angry with them. This was hardly fair, for it was a time when everybody seemed to be wild to make all sorts of foolish investments. People were ready to put their money into anything. One man is said to have advertised that he knew of a good scheme for making a fortune, and that if people would give him their money to invest, he would tell them later what the scheme was. In one forenoon he actually took in two thousand pounds.

**254. Further changes in government.** As Walpole was the most prominent one of those that had opposed



SIR ROBERT WALPOLE

the South Sea Bubble, the people had come to place much confidence in him. He was really the ruler of England for some years, and it is in a great degree according to his arrangement that another marked change in government took place. In the reign of William, the sovereign first began to choose his

ministers from the men who were in sympathy with the party which controlled the House of Commons, but George I. knew so little of England and her statesmen

that he left the selection of the cabinet entirely to Walpole; and as the king understood no English, he did not attend their meetings. This is why to-day the prime minister selects the cabinet and the king does not meet with them. Of course the king must approve of the men selected by the prime minister, and must give his sanction to anything that they do before it can become law.

### SUMMARY

The lax rule of George I. gave all power into the hands of the Whigs, and left Sir Robert Walpole free to introduce many forms and details of government that have remained in force for nearly two centuries. Encouraged by the discontent of the Tories, the Scottish friends of the Pretender made an unsuccessful effort in his behalf. About the middle of the reign, a frenzy for foolish investments swept over the land. The failure of these, and especially of the South Sea Bubble, reduced large numbers to poverty.

### 32. GEORGE II. 1727-1760

**255. Rise of Methodism.** One important event of the early part of this reign was the rise of Methodism. The masses of the people, especially in the large cities, were ignorant and degraded, and neither state nor church seemed to realize that they needed help. Cock-fighting and bull-baiting were their favorite amusements, drunkenness was their delight. Nor was this state of things limited to those who were otherwise degraded. Some of the most prominent men of the nation felt that at a banquet it was not showing a proper appreciation of the hospitality of their host if they did not drink of his wines until they could no longer sit upright in their chairs.

It was certainly time for something to arouse the

country, and the awakening came by the efforts of John Wesley and a few other men. They were nicknamed



JOHN WESLEY

Methodists because they lived so methodically and met so regularly for prayer and preaching. John Wesley and his brother Charles and another clergyman named Whitefield went over the land on horseback and preached wherever any one would listen. The result of this small beginning was that many thousands of people began to see that there was something bet-

ter in life than the carelessness or coarse ignorance in which they had lived.

**256. Walpole and the king.** The kings of the house of Hanover were always at odds with the next heir to the throne. So far as the peace of England was concerned, that was not so bad a condition of affairs, since, if the king was a Whig, the eldest son was reasonably sure to be a Tory; and while the Whigs were happy because they were in power, the Tories were content to wait in the certainty that their turn would come. George I. and his wife really seemed to hate the Prince of Wales, and the prince was so opposed to his father that when he himself became king, every one expected that Walpole would be turned out of office. This would surely have been the case had not Queen Caroline favored his remaining. George II. would often refuse to hear a word from the prime minister about some subject upon which they differed, but Walpole would take

it all serenely and explain to the queen what was best for the king to do. "And when I give her her lesson,"

said Walpole, "she can make him propose the very thing as his own opinion which a week before he had rejected as mine."

**257. War of the Austrian Succession, 1740-1748.** The subject on which Walpole and the king most frequently differed was that of war, for George II. was an excellent soldier and was eager to win military glory. Walpole always favored peace, and for twelve years he managed to prevent the king from fighting. At last, however, a quarrel with Spain over the right to trade with South America forced the minister, very much against his will, to declare war. When he heard the sound of the church bells that the people were ringing in their joy, he said, "They are ringing the bells now, they will be wringing their hands soon." The war was not carried on with any great vigor, and England was unsuccessful. Walpole was blamed for the failure, and after fifteen years of service he was forced to resign. Shortly afterwards, England became involved in a Continental war. Maria Theresa,



GEORGE II.

daughter of the emperor of Germany, had succeeded to the throne of Austria. France, supported by several other countries, attempted to seize portions of the Austrian territories. England preferred to have Austria stronger than France, and therefore upheld the rights of Maria Theresa. War ensued. George went to Bavaria, where the fighting was likely to be, and at the battle of Dettingen he led his own soldiers. **The battle of Dettingen.** He could talk English, though his father could not, and springing from his horse he cried to his troops, "Now, boys, now for the honor of England; be brave, and the French will run." The French did run, and the English were victorious. This was the last time that an English king appeared on the battlefield. There was further fighting in Europe and a bitter contest both in America and in India, but little was gained by either side. The war was closed by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle in 1748, but everybody knew very well that war would break out again within a very short time.

**258. Last effort of the Stuarts.** Walpole had always said that whenever England went to war with France, there would be an attempt made to restore the Stuarts to their throne, and this came to pass before the War of the Austrian Succession was ended. Many a Scotsman was singing: —

"I swear by moon and stars sae bright,  
And the sun that glances early,  
If I had twenty thousand lives,  
I'd gie them a' for Charlie.  
We'll over the water and over the sea,  
We'll over the water to Charlie;  
Come weel, come woe, we'll gather and go,  
And live and die wi' Charlie."

James Edward did not attempt to come again, but his son, Charles Edward, who is called both "Prince Charlie" and the "Young Pretender," came over the sea in his father's behalf with only seven companions and landed in the north of Scotland.

The  
"Young  
Pretender."

His first shelter was the house of a Highlander. Prince Charlie was accustomed to the luxury of a chimney, and the peat-smoke, which had no outlet but the hole in the roof, was suffocating to him; so he would bear it as long as he could, and then would slip out into the open air. Finally the host, not knowing who was his guest, exclaimed, "What is the matter with the fellow that he can't stay in the house or out of it?" The prince's first adviser told him that he had better go home. "I am come home," said he cheerfully, and he set to work to regain for his father the crown that James II. had lost. At first fortune favored him. Edinburgh was captured, the battle of Preston Pans was won, and the army invaded England. But the English Jacobites did not rise as the prince expected, and he was forced to fall back into



CHARLES EDWARD STUART (PRINCE CHARLIE)

Scotland. The English army followed, and the two forces met at Culloden Moor, where the prince suffered a terrible defeat. A reward of thirty thousand pounds was offered for his capture, but by the aid of a faithful Highland woman named Flora Macdonald, he succeeded, after all sorts of romantic adventures, in reaching France in safety. This was the end of the Jacobite attempts to restore the crown to the Stuarts.

259. **William Pitt and the Seven Years' War.** 1756-1763. For some time before 1756, the French

and English were at war in America, where, on the whole, the French had the better of the struggle, but in this year war broke out openly. Frederick the Great of Prussia had been a determined opponent of Maria Theresa in the War of the Austrian Succession, and she did her best to arouse France and several other countries to oppose



WILLIAM PITT, EARL OF CHATHAM

him. England sided with Frederick, chiefly because France was an ally of Maria; and under cover of the



quarrel between Austria and Prussia, England fought out to a successful end her rivalry with France.

Both the army and the navy at this time were under a cloud. Several disgraceful defeats had been suffered both on land and on water, and the spirits of Englishmen were at a low ebb; but just when a man was needed, William Pitt appeared on the scene to save his country. He had first been brought before the public as a determined enemy of Walpole's peace policy, and his great ability had at once pushed him into a prominent place. He believed in himself, and he believed in his country. "I know that I can save this country," he said, "and that no one else can." Soon he was at the head of the government, and immediately his master hand made itself felt. The Commons responded to his enthusiasm, and voted large sums of money. He confined his efforts in Europe to giving financial assistance to Frederiek, while in America and in India he pushed the war with all the energy of which he was capable.

**260. The Conquest of Canada.** In America the English had not been successful. General Braddock had been defeated at Fort Du Quesne and the greater part of his army destroyed in 1755. In the following year the fortress of Oswego, which commanded Lake Ontario,



JAMES WOLFE

yielded to the French, and this victory was followed by the seizure of Fort William Henry, an important British stronghold at the southern end of Lake George. But a new life was given to the seemingly desperate campaign by Pitt's advent to power. He saw that if anything was to be accomplished, he must send plenty of men and his very best generals, with full authority to act as they thought best. The colonies were urged to cooperate with the king's troops, and they responded by raising a force of twenty thousand men. In 1758 Louisbourg, a French stronghold in Cape Breton, was captured, and the English thus secured a strong base of operations for the approaching siege of Quebec. Fort Du Quesne and Fort Frontenac likewise yielded to British arms, but a heavy defeat at Ticonderoga counterbalanced these minor successes. Still Pitt's determination never wavered, and while the French general, Montcalm, was supplicating in vain for aid from France, Pitt continued to pour men and money into the country.

The year 1759 saw the final concentration of British forces around Quebec. General Wolfe was in command, and opposing him was Montcalm, the brilliant French leader. Wolfe led his men by night up the cliff to the Plains of Abraham, and there was fought the battle which destroyed all hope of French supremacy in America. Both commanders were killed, but the English were victorious, and during the next year the whole of Canada fell into their hands.

**261. The English in India.** While England was gaining an empire in America, a trading company was gaining one for her in India. This East India Company had been in existence for one hundred and fifty years, but it had merely established trading posts and had

The cap-  
ture of  
Quebec.  
1759.

made no attempt to rule the country. The French, too, wished to trade in India, and they had also established posts; but when they joined some of the native princes in their opposition to the rule of the others, it began to look as if the English company would be driven away. There was at first no good English leader, but soon one appeared, though from the desk of a clerk, the last place where one would look for a general. Young Robert Clive was em-



ROBERT CLIVE

ployed by the company, and he persuaded them to let him try to repulse the French and their native allies. He was successful, but not long afterwards, while Clive was in England, the Prince of Bengal attacked Calcutta, captured the fort, and drove one hundred and forty-six English into one small room. After the intense heat of an Indian night, there remained in the morning but twenty-three alive; the others had died a most agonizing death from suffocation. This prison was called the "Black Hole of Calcutta."

The "Black  
Hole of Cal-  
cutta."

Clive returned. He must punish the Prince of Bengal, but the prince had twenty-five times as many men as he. The armies faced each other at Plassey.

Clive called a council of war, and the majority of the officers said that victory was impossible. So said the commander, but after an hour's thought he

The battle  
of Plassey.  
1757.

changed his mind and gave orders for an attack in the morning. He was successful, and the English rule in India was established.

**262. The end of the war.** In the same year that the fall of Quebec had decided the fate of Canada, two glorious victories, the one on the land, the other on the sea, had wiped out the disgraces of the last few years. The Prussian and English troops routed a greatly superior force at Minden, and Lord Hawke completely destroyed the French fleet in Quiberon Bay. At the very moment that the mob in the streets of London were burning Hawke in effigy, because of what they took to be his inactivity, he was fighting the French in the storm, and saving his country from invasion.

The Frenchmen turned like a covey down the wind  
When Hawke came swooping from the West;  
One he sank with all hands, one he caught and pinned,  
And the shallows and the storm took the rest.  
The guns that should have conquered us they rusted on the shore,  
The men that would have mastered us they drummed and marched  
no more,  
For England was England, and a mighty brood she bore  
When Hawke came swooping from the West.

The policy of Pitt had met with success in every part of the world, but nevertheless he was soon to be driven from power. George II. had died and had been succeeded by his grandson, who reigned as George III. The new king was not favorable to Pitt, and used every effort to rid himself of his powerful minister. Pitt fully realized the importance of crushing France in Europe as well as in America, and was preparing plans for carrying on the war on a far more extended scale, when those who were associated with him in the ministry refused to support him. The king openly

encouraged them, and Pitt was obliged to resign. The peace party took possession of the government, and in 1763 the Treaty of Paris was signed. By this treaty Canada, Cape Breton, St. John's Island (now Prince Edward Island), and a number of the West India Islands were formally ceded to England. Thus the war, urged on by William Pitt, ended in a splendid triumph for the English arms.

The Seven Years' War is important because it marks the beginning of England's colonial empire. From this time dates the era of expansion which was to bring so much lustre to the British crown.

**263. Unpopularity of the king.** England appreciated the soldierly abilities of her king, and rejoiced in the vast amount of territory in both the Old World and the New that came under English rule while he was on the throne; but he was never a popular sovereign, and he often seemed far more interested in the well-being of his little Hanover than in that of England. At a time when his English subjects were especially anxious to have him remain in their land, he went to Germany, and there he stayed for many months. Some one is said to have put a notice on the door of his palace: "Lost or strayed out of this house, a man who has left a wife and six children on the parish. Whoever will give any tidings of him to the church-wardens of Saint James's parish, so as he may be got again, will receive four shillings and sixpence. N. B. This reward will not be increased, nobody judging him to deserve a crown."

**264. The novel of home life.** Together with the gain in territory, there was also a gain in the literary world, for the novel of home life came into being. It is possible that the foreign wars that were going on made the English feel a deeper love for their own homes and

the people about them. However that may be, it was in this reign that story-tellers began to describe everyday places and the thoughts and feelings of everyday people. Before this, writers had seemed to feel that no story could be interesting unless its scene was laid in "a



MALL IN ST. JAMES'S PARK IN 1738  
Showing the enormous hoopskirts then worn by ladies

country a long way off," or its characters went through a series of the most amazing adventures. Some of these novels are very long, and the story "moves" so slowly that our age finds them tedious, while, according to the present taste, others are vulgar in their incidents and coarse in their conversation. Nevertheless, it was a great gain to find that the thoughts and actions of people who were neither rich nor famous were yet full of interest.

**265. A new calendar. 1752.** One peculiar fact about this reign is that it was really eleven days shorter than the dates of its beginning and end would seem to show.

In reckoning time, the year had not been made quite long enough; that is, the almanac year was not quite so long as the sun's year, and when January 1, for instance, came around, the sun was a little farther ahead than it had been on the preceding January 1. In the course of centuries, that difference had amounted to about eleven days, and now England made the correction, and the day that would have been September 3, 1752, was called September 14. The Roman Catholic countries had made this change in Elizabeth's reign, but England did not wish to do anything that the pope had ordered, and so she had delayed. As it was, there was great opposition, for many people felt that in some mysterious way they had been cheated out of those eleven days. Until this time, the year had begun on March 25, when the sun first came north of the equator, but after this the years were counted from January 1.

### SUMMARY

By the efforts of the Wesleys and Whitefield, Methodism caused a great religious awakening in England. The influence of Sir Robert Walpole kept the land at peace for many years, but after his removal from office, George II. engaged in the War of the Austrian Succession to uphold the claims of Maria Theresa and to check France. During this war Charles Edward made an attempt to regain the English throne. His defeat at Culloden Moor ended the efforts of the Stuarts to wear the crown of England.

To check the growing power of France, England engaged in the Seven Years' War. The result in America was the complete triumph of British arms. The French, allied with native princes, attempted to force the East India Company from India. By the military genius of Clive the company's rights were maintained, and India fell under English rule.

In the literary world, the novel of home life first appeared. In 1752 England adopted the corrected calendar, and henceforth the years began on the first of January.

### 33. GEORGE III. 1760-1820

**266. George III. means to rule.** As George I. had been somewhat bored by wielding the sceptre, and George II. had been under the control of whoever had



GEORGE III.

the tact to manage him, the power of the ministers, and in particular of those of the Whig party, had been on the increase for half a century. When George III. came to the throne, he was only twenty-two years of age, but he had one very distinct idea in his mind, and that was that the king instead of his ministers should rule the land.

So far there was nothing in his determination that was unlike the notions of the Stuarts; but the difference was that while the Stuarts wished to rule for themselves and their own gain, George III. was sincerely anxious to do what was for the gain of the country. He was a good, kind-hearted man, who always meant to do what was right.



He was obstinate, but his obstinacy was not exactly wilfulness ; it was rather an inability to see that there was any other way than the one that he had chosen.

**267. Trouble with the thirteen colonies in North America.** The first difficulty of his reign was with the English colonists in America. England, like other European countries, looked upon a colony, not as a part of herself, but simply as a community forming a convenient market for the products and manufactures of the mother country and affording opportunities for a favored few to make money. Laws had been passed forbidding the colonists to make anything for themselves, and limiting their trade, each law being so framed that it should be to the advantage of England, even though it were to the injury of the colonies. Matters were brought to a head by Parliament's passing the "Stamp Act," requiring a stamp bought in England to be placed on every book, legal paper, etc. Parliament said that as by the late war the colonists had been freed from fear of the French, it was only fair for them to pay part of the expenses of the war. The colonists felt that in men and in money they had given their full share ; but their protest was not made for this reason ; it was made because, as they had no representatives in Parliament, this requirement of a stamp would be taxation without representation, and this, they said, was not according to the law of England.

There were strong sympathizers with the colonists even in Parliament. William Pitt appeared in the



A REVOLUTIONARY STAMP

House of Commons, wrapped in flannels and leaning upon a crutch. He told the members plainly **English sympathy.** that the colonists were right, and that the only course was to repeal the act. Edmund Burke, one of the great statesmen of his time, would not enter into the rights of the question, but in a most eloquent speech he made clear what the result of this foolish treatment of the colonies would be.

In spite of the appeals of men like Pitt and Burke, however, the "Stamp Act" was passed in 1765; and when the government was finally compelled to bend to the storm of opposition and repeal the act, there went with the repeal a declaration that Parliament had a perfect right to impose such taxes. If the colonists had been contending for money, this concession would have satisfied them for the time; but since they were making a stand for the principle of no taxation without representation, such a repeal only made matters worse. In the next year another attempt was made to impose additional taxes on tea, glass, paper, and paints imported into the colonies; but again there was such opposition that the bill was withdrawn with the exception of the tax on tea.

In 1770 the king found himself with a majority of his friends in Parliament, and immediately took matters into his own hands. Lord North was placed at the head of the government, and he did what the king told him to do. George had been very angry when his ministers gave way and repealed the "Stamp Act," and he had made up his mind that the colonists should suffer for **The tax on tea.** their actions. The tax on tea was still retained, not only to show that England had the right to impose a tax, but also because the East India Company was in trouble. The colonists used a great

deal of tea, but since it had been taxed in this wise, they had refused to purchase it, and so much had accumulated that the company was on the brink of failure. It had been a law that this company should pay an export tax on the tea that was taken from the London stores to be sent to the colonists, and also an import tax when it was sold to dealers in America. The ministers now agreed to allow the company to sell tea in the colonies, subject only to the three-penny import tax. This would make the company's tea cheaper than that which had been smuggled into the colonies from Holland. The colonists would buy it, the company would be saved, and the right of taxation would be maintained.

So the king and Lord North planned, and the tea came to the colonies; but no one would buy it. In Charleston it was stored in damp cellars and soon spoiled. In Boston some men disguised themselves as Indians and dropped it overboard. This high-handed action gave George the very opportunity for which he had been looking. He was determined to make the colonists suffer for their opposition and to make them understand that he was master and would be obeyed. Very stringent laws were passed, interfering with the liberty of the people, and General Gage was appointed governor of Massachusetts, to see that they were carried out. So far there had not been much union among the colonies, but at this they were all thoroughly aroused, for they felt that the mother country was not only treating them with injustice, but was intentionally trying to work them injury.

**268. The revolutionary war.** The course taken by the king met with as vigorous opposition in England as it did in America. The merchants of London and

Bristol urged the government to yield to the wishes of the colonists, and William Pitt, who had now become Earl of Chatham, rose in the House of Lords and pleaded for the withdrawal of the troops and for the repeal of the hostile acts of Parliament; this alone, he said, could save the colonies to England. "Every motive of justice and of policy," he declared, "of dignity and of prudence, urges you to allay the ferment in America." The question was put whether the English troops should be removed from the colonies. Even the king's younger brother voted for the removal; but a large majority, "the king's friends," were in favor of keeping them where they were. This was in January, 1775, and in April the war broke out.

The first encounter of the war took place at Lexington, where a party of regular soldiers, sent to seize some military stores, were encountered by a band of militiamen hastily summoned by news of the expedition. This was the call to arms, and in a short time an army of twenty thousand colonists had gathered around Boston. In the

**Bunker Hill.**

same year the battle of Bunker Hill showed the king that the colonists were in earnest in their intention to resist his measures even by force of arms. Shortly afterwards the various colonies united their forces and appointed George Washington to the position of commander-in-chief.

In the next year the colonists determined on separation. They were indignant at being classed as rebels when they felt that they were fighting only for their rights as English subjects; and they were especially

**The Declaration of Independence.**

angry because a great many of the troops sent against them were not English soldiers, but men hired in Germany. A congress was held at Philadelphia composed of delegates from all the col-

onies, and on the fourth of July, 1776, the Declaration of Independence was adopted. This completed the separation of the colonies from the mother land, and committed them to a bitter contest.

In the next year the British arms suffered a severe reverse in the surrender of General Burgoyne at Saratoga. This was the turning point of the war, although in the next year, at Valley Forge, the army of the colonists had to endure the most terrible sufferings. Then France recognized the cause of the colonists and sent a force to their assistance, while the French navy rendered great service in preventing the landing of troops and supplies. The leading men in England began to realize the hopeless nature of the struggle against the desperate determination of the colonists, supported as they now were by France and with the moral support of Spain and Holland. Even Lord North begged the king to terminate the struggle, and Chatham again urged the ministers to make any concessions rather than lose the colonies; but the king was still determined not to give in. Finally, in 1781, Lord Cornwallis was hemmed in at Yorktown between the army of Washington and the French fleet, and was compelled to surrender. This defeat convinced even the king, and terms of peace were arranged. The Treaty of Versailles in 1783 closed the war by recognizing the independence of the colonies.

The surrender at Yorktown.

At the beginning of the war, efforts were made to induce the Canadians to take up arms against England, but to no avail. The northern colonies remained loyal, and gave valuable assistance to the mother country in the struggle. On one occasion an army, under the leadership of Montgomery and Arnold, invaded Canada, but they were defeated before

Canada and the war.

Quebec, and Montgomery was slain. After peace was declared many of the settlers in New York and other states, who had fought on the side of England during the war, were compelled to leave their homes and find shelter elsewhere. The greater number of these came to Canada and helped to swell its already growing population. These men were afterwards known as the United Empire Loyalists.

During the time that the war was carried on in America, England was engaged in a conflict with France and Spain in other parts of the world. Gibraltar was besieged for three years by the combined fleets of these

two countries, but without success. In 1782 Rodney won a magnificent victory over the French fleet in the West Indies. The Treaty of Versailles put an end also to the war with France and Spain.



WILLIAM PITT, THE YOUNGER

**269. William Pitt, the younger.**

The nation as a whole was very much dissatisfied with the result of the king's policy towards the colonies, and as a re-

sult Lord North was forced to resign. No minister seemed to be strong enough to carry on the govern-

ment, until at last the king called upon William Pitt, a son of the "Great Commoner." Pitt had entered Parliament in 1780, and was but twenty-four years of age when he became prime minister. The king chose him and retained him in office, not so much because he liked Pitt, but rather because he disliked Pitt's opponents. The young prime minister soon had a large majority to support him, and at once entered upon a policy of reform, which resulted in great prosperity to England. He could not do all that he wished, because he had to respect the prejudices of the king, and George III. thought it his duty to remain firm in many matters wherein his councillors did not agree with him. Pitt removed many of the oppressive laws against Roman Catholics, and introduced the plan of sending convicts to penal settlements. **Reform of abuses.** He tried to abolish slavery, but in this was unsuccessful, as he was. Also in his attempt to reform abuses in parliamentary representation. During the years that Pitt was in power England was prosperous and happy, and until the outbreak of the French war, a very bright future seemed to be in store for the country.

**270. The Gordon Riots. 1780.** In the reign of George III. there was a revolution in America, and there were riots in London, troubles and revolt in Ireland, war with France, and a second war with the United States — enough, surely, to fill one reign, however long. To make matters harder, the king in 1782 had a severe mental attack, and during the rest of his life he was either suffering from insanity or dreading the return of the trouble.

The riots in London came about because some people were still concerned lest the Roman Catholics should gain too much power. There were many old laws against them; for instance, it was enacted that a Pro-

testant son could seize the estate of a Roman Catholic father, and that no Roman Catholic could own a piece of land. Although these laws were not enforced, people knew that they ought not even to remain on the statute books, and they were in consequence repealed. Suddenly some of the Scots were greatly alarmed, fearing that the pope would become a power in the land. Lord George Gordon, a fanatical Scotsman, was a member of the English Parliament. He collected fifty or sixty thousand people of all sorts and led them in rioting through London. The Roman Catholic chapels of foreign ministers were broken into and robbed. Judges and all who had anything to do with executing the laws were the special aim of the mob. The private house of the chief justice was sacked, his pictures, manuscripts, and law library were destroyed; the prison was broken into and the prisoners let loose, and even the Bank of England was attacked. London was set in flames in many different places. For four days the city was in terror of a half-mad fanatic and a mob of riotous people. A specially important result of these riots was that the English saw clearly just what a frantic rabble would do, and when somewhat similar scenes occurred in France a few years later, they realized the horrors of mob law better than would otherwise have been possible.

**271. Discontent in Ireland.** The laws against the Roman Catholics had been more strictly enforced in Ireland. The Irish Parliament represented only Protestants of the Church of England, and these formed but a small part of the people of the land. England looked upon Ireland as a colony of Englishmen who were troubled by natives; and even these English settlers were treated most unfairly, for England had not yet grasped the idea that the more successful her colonies



were, the better it was for the mother country. Her notion of a colony was still that of a collection of people to whom she could sell her manufactures. She even forbade the Irish to make anything for themselves that she could make and sell to them; and at one time she would not permit them to sell the produce of their farms in England, lest this should injure the English farmers. The Irish felt that they were slaves, and they longed to be strong enough to revolt.

During the progress of the struggle in America, the English government needed more troops than could easily be raised, and in the emergency Ireland had been allowed to collect and drill many thousand men. When these men were all ready to fight, Ireland demanded reforms. England hardly dared to refuse when so many trained soldiers were backing the demand, and some of the severe laws against commerce were repealed; but the Roman Catholics and the Presbyterians were still forbidden to become members of the Irish Parliament, or to have a word to say about making the laws, and the whole island was governed by the small number of members of the Church of England. No country could be expected to remain in peace and friendship with the land that imposed such a system of government, and before many years had passed there was trouble again.

**272. French Revolution of 1789.** Ireland had felt hopeful because of the success of the American colonies; and this same success had done much to bring about a revolution in France. For many years the French peasants had been terribly oppressed. There was much of the feudal system left in France, but while the nobles enjoyed its advantages, the peasants suffered from its disadvantages; for instance, France had wide, finely made roads, but the

Oppression  
of French  
peasants.

government had built them by forcing the peasants to work without wages. These peasants had to pay toll to their lord if they crossed a river; they must use their lord's mill and his wine-press, and be taxed for it. They were taxed if they sold their grain. There were two sets of taxes, or rather three, for the lords and the king and the church must each be supported. In return for all this, the nobles and the king did nothing. The position of the lower classes seemed utterly hopeless. A peasant might be a soldier, but only a noble could become an officer. A peasant might possibly become a parish priest, but only a noble could become a bishop. There was no chance to rise, no chance even to be free. To be sure, matters were no worse at this time than they had been for years past, but the peasants had borne with their lot just as long as they could bear, and the outbreak was the fiercer when it came.

In Paris there was a strong prison called the Bastille. It had many stone towers and a moat and a drawbridge.

**The Bastille.** When a noble wished to get rid of a man, he would obtain from the king a letter ordering the man to be sent to this prison, and there he would be taken without trial and sometimes even without any charge being brought against him; and there he would stay, often for the rest of his life. It is no wonder that the Paris mob first attacked the Bastille, and that they left not one stone upon another. When this was told to the king, he said, "It is a riot." "No, sire, a revolution," said the officer, and so it was, one of the most fearful revolutions in all history. The poor people seemed to lose all reason and all humanity, and to become like ravening wild beasts. Nobles who had been kind to the peasants about them were murdered simply because they were nobles. The king and the royal

family were captured by the mob and imprisoned. The whole nation was raging. At last, in 1793, the king, Louis XVI., was put to death, less for his own sins than for those of his fathers. He was a kind-hearted man who would have been glad to treat the poor fairly, but he was not determined enough

**Execution of  
Louis XVI.  
1793.**



THE BASTILLE

to break through the customs and beliefs of those who had reigned before him, and not strong enough to overcome the opposition of the nobles.

At first there was in England enthusiastic sympathy with the French Revolution. The English felt that they had obliged their sovereigns to rule justly and for the good of the people, and this was what they thought the French were trying to do. English statesmen were delighted, and English poets wrote songs in praise of the glories of liberty; but soon they saw that this was

not a struggle for justice, but a wild, mad slaughter.

**Reign of  
Terror.**

After the death of the king there was in France a horrible, savage time called the Reign of Terror. One man after another rose suddenly to power. Conspiracies were formed; multitudes of innocent persons were guillotined. After the Gordon riots the English could better imagine the furies of a French mob, which was naturally far more excitable and less self-controlled than an English mob. They saw that the three watchwords of the revolutionists, "Liberty, equality, fraternity," meant: liberty — that they might do as they pleased; equality — that every one should be dragged down to their own level; fraternity — that they and their partisans would oppose all others.

**273. War with France.** The masses of people in England were eager for war with France. The atrocities of the French Revolution had horrified them. Perhaps they felt even more keenly the execution of the sovereign of France because they had become very fond of their simple, talkative old king, and seemed to have forgotten all about his earlier blunders. He went about among his subjects, chatting with them in most familiar fashion, and asking them questions as naturally as if they were his own children. "How did the apple ever get into the apple dumpling?" and "Pray tell me how you set a trap to catch a mouse with toasted cheese?" the king queried. His subjects liked him all the better for his childlike talk, and they were heartily indignant at any impertinent criticism of the man upon whom they looked as their own familiar friend. All sympathy with the French had vanished. The guilt of oppression had been atoned for with the blood of the oppressors. England stood aghast.

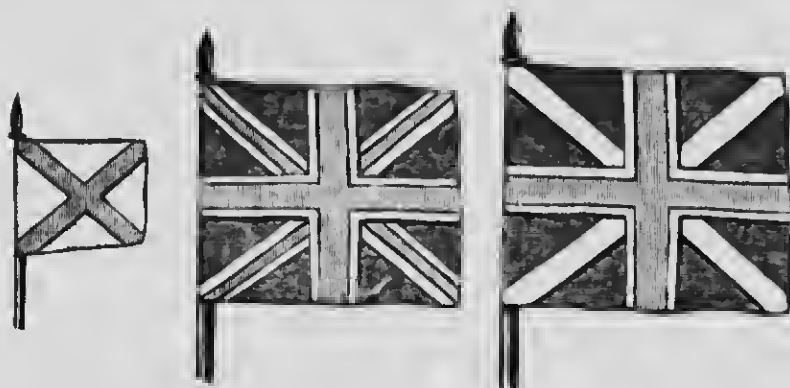
France made the mistake of believing that the masses

of the English sympathized with her, and that the king and the English nobles were tyrannizing over them; so one month after the execution of Louis, while the Reign of Terror was at its height, France declared war against England. The English had an idea that this war would be short, and it was well that they should have thought so, for troubles from another source were pressing upon them.

**274. Reign of Terror in Ireland.** Just at this time, in 1793, the Irish Roman Catholics rose again to demand their rights. They were obliged to support the Protestant church, and they had no voice in making their own laws. Under the pressure, England unwillingly granted freedom to vote for members of the Irish Parliament; but as those members must be Protestants, this was not a very great concession. There was in Ireland, too, almost a reign of terror. The Roman Catholic peasants broke into riots and outrages of all sorts. They were savage with the bitterness of many generations. Savage, too, were the punishments inflicted by the government.

**275. Union between Great Britain and Ireland. 1801.** To fight for Ireland was the very step for which France was ready. France had won her freedom, so she believed, and now she would help Ireland to win hers. France was at war with England, and every blow in behalf of Ireland was a blow at England. The French government, with the aid of its ally, Spain, sent ships to invade Ireland and help her to free herself from England. Once they were scattered by a storm. Twice the fleets were defeated by the English. England was convinced that there must be a union between the two islands. The only way to secure anything like an Irish majority in favor of a union was to buy votes, and enough votes

were bought to carry the measure. The friends of justice hoped to persuade the English to admit Irish Roman Catholics as members of the joint Parliament;



Irish flag

The Union Jack

Union Jack before 1801

THE FLAG OF THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

but this was not done, chiefly because the one idea that held sway in the faithful old king's obstinate mind was that to give freedom to Roman Catholics would be to break his coronation oath to support the Protestant church.

**276. The struggle with Napoleon.** The fighting with France was going on through these troublous times. At first England was unsuccessful on both land and sea. Spain and Holland formed a league with France, and their combined fleets threatened to sweep the English navy from the seas, and land an army in England; but the defeat of the Spanish fleet by Admiral Jervis at St. Vincent, and the almost total destruction of the Dutch fleet by Admiral Duncan at Camperdown, relieved England for a time from the danger of invasion.

St. Vincent  
and Cam-  
perdown.

Among the French, one man had now become most prominent. His name was Napoleon Bonaparte, and

he was one of the greatest generals the world has ever known. France was now governed, not by a king, but by a body of men called a Directorate. Napoleon had been a most successful officer, and these men had great confidence in whatever he suggested. His plan was to conquer Egypt, and then make his way to India, subjugating as he went. In 1798 he landed in Egypt, and in a very short time had conquered the country. In order to guard his transports, Napoleon had taken with him thir-



NAPOLEON BONAPARTE

teen men-of-war, and these he had left at anchor in Aboukir Bay. In command of the English fleet was Admiral Nelson, who was soon to prove himself as great on the sea as Napoleon was on the land. Nelson at once attacked the French fleet, and after a terrible battle of twelve hours, destroyed the fleet and killed or captured five thousand sailors. The destruction of his fleet compelled Napoleon to return at once to France.

The battle  
of the Nile.  
1798.

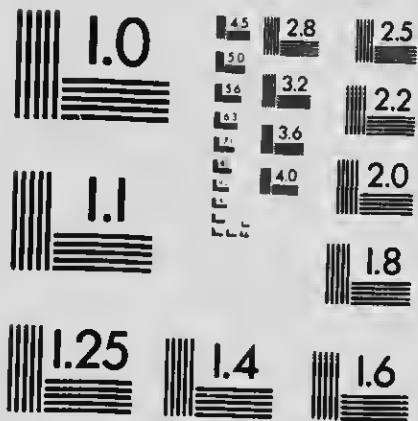
The war went on for three years longer, during which time Napoleon tried by every means in his power to crush England. He almost succeeded in forming a league against her among the northern nations, but Nelson and the fleet again saved the country. In command of a portion of the fleet, he attacked the Danish





# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



**APPLIED IMAGE Inc**

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482-0300 - Phone  
(716) 288-5989 - Fax

vessels under the batteries of Copenhagen, and compelled them to surrender. During the engagement Nelson's superior officer, who was some distance away with the remainder of the fleet, hoisted the signal to retire; but Nelson is said to have placed a telescope to his blind eye, and telling his men that he could not see any signal, to have ordered them to continue fighting. This victory broke up the league, and brought about the Peace of Amiens, which closed the war in 1802.

But peace lasted for only a short time. Napoleon had made himself emperor of the French, and was more

determined than ever to crush England. War was declared in 1803. Napoleon at once gathered an immense army and a force of transports at Boulogne. The death of the French admiral delayed the expedition, but in the meantime Spain joined France, thus giving Napoleon two powerful



LORD NELSON

navies to aid him in his plans. Once more Nelson and the navy saved England. He had been drawn away by a trick to the West Indies; but returning at headlong speed, he attacked the French and Spanish fleets

at Trafalgar. Nelson ran up the signal, so that all the fleet could see it, "England expects that every man will do his duty." Every man did his duty, and twenty of the enemy's ships were destroyed, but the great admiral himself was killed in the hour

The battle  
of Trafal-  
gar. 1805.



NAPOLEON'S MEDAL TO COMMEMORATE HIS EXPECTED CONQUEST OF ENGLAND

of his triumph. This was the last attempt made by Napoleon to invade England.

For the next few years Napoleon was the master of Europe. He did what he pleased, deposed kings, changed boundaries, blotted out states, as seemed to serve his purposes best. At his successes William Pitt had died broken-hearted; but another great statesman, Canning, was soon to take the place of Pitt. At once energetic measures were taken to destroy the power of the French emperor. Napoleon had made up his mind to place his brother Joseph on the throne of Spain. The Spaniards resisted and appealed to England for help. Troops were hurriedly sent to the Spanish Peninsula, and a vigorous campaign commenced. At first the English were successful, but Napoleon himself took command of his armies, and the tide turned. Sir John Moore, who

had made a daring march into Spain to cut the French from their base of supplies, was compelled to retreat to the seashore. Then he turned and defeated the French at Corunna, but was himself killed in the battle. The English troops were compelled to withdraw from the Peninsula, but Canning was not discouraged. Another and larger force was at once sent to Spain under the command of Sir Arthur Wellesley, soon to be known as the Duke of Wellington. For three years Wellington carried on the war in the Peninsula, fighting under incredible difficulties, and at all times against superior forces. No difficulties seemed to daunt him, no check to discourage him, until at last he drove the French across the Pyrenees, and cleared Spain of the invaders.

In the meantime, Napoleon, who had left to his marshals the conduct of the war in the Peninsula, had invaded Russia with an army of four hundred thousand men. The Russians, although defeated, would not yield, and themselves burned Moscow a short time after it had fallen into the hands of Napoleon. Nothing remained for the French but to make their way back to France in the depth of winter, through a hostile and desolate country, and under constant attack by the Russians hanging on their rear. In this retreat the whole French army, with the exception of a few thousand men, perished miserably. Napoleon was now at the mercy of his enemies. Wellington had by this time crossed the Pyrenees, and was marching northward. The Russians and Prussians had crossed the Rhine, and were advancing on Paris. Napoleon resisted desperately, but was forced to surrender. He was sent to Elba, a small island in the Mediterranean not far from the coast of France, and a

**The battle  
of Corunna.**

**The retreat  
from Rus-  
sia.**

younger brother of Louis XVI. was placed on the French throne.

In a very short time Napoleon escaped from Elba, and landing in France, was soon at the head of a large army. His veterans hastened to join him, and even the armies sent against him by the king deserted their ranks and joined his command. Now the nations of Europe were thoroughly aroused. Large armies were raised by all the powers, but that of England was the first to take the field, under the command of Wellington. Napoleon, after defeating a mixed Prussian army, met Wellington at Waterloo, on the 15th of June, 1815. The conflict lasted all day long.

The battle  
of Water-  
loo. 1815.

Napoleon's veterans fought with splendid bravery, but to no avail. The arrival of the Prussian army under Blücher completed the rout of the French. Napoleon gave himself up, and was sent to the distant Island of St. Helena, where, in 1821, he died. The Congress of Vienna, which brought the war to an end, gave Malta, the Mauri-



ARTHUR WELLESLEY, DUKE OF WELLINGTON

tius Islands, and the Cape of Good Hope to England.

Better than all territorial gains were the deeds of English soldiers and English sailors, who left to those coming after them unsurpassed examples of bravery on the land and on the sea.

**277. Condition of England.** This was the end of the fighting that, with intervals of peace, had been carried on by England and France for one hundred and twenty-six years. The taxes which it had made necessary were crushing to the poor, and they had still other troubles to meet, for England was undergoing a revolution not in government, but in methods of manufacturing. James Watt, in 1765, had so improved upon the rude steam engine of one century earlier that his work was practically a new invention. At about the same time machines for spinning and weaving were invented. These industries had previously been carried on in the home, but now men must go away from home and work when and where the owners of factories might choose. Even if the workmen were able to go to the factories, one machine could do the work of many men, and those that were not needed had no other work to do. Thousands were starving. They felt that in some way the new inventions were to blame for their troubles, and riots broke out in which much machinery was destroyed. The poor had little chance of education, for books and papers were dear, and there were no free schools. Punishments for offences against the laws were unreasonably severe. If a man could not pay his debts, he was kept in prison for life, unless he had friends to buy him out. To-day a man is put to death for wilful murder and for treason, but in the reign of George III. there was a long list of misdemeanors for which even a child might be hanged. If a person stole an article valued at

Watt in-  
vents the  
steam en-  
gine. 1765.

Factories  
are built.

Severe  
laws.

five shillings, the penalty was hanging; and when the amount was changed from five shillings to twenty, some people were in all sincerity greatly alarmed lest the land should be overrun with thieves. Others saw how unreasonable it was to take a man's life for such an offence, and a jury would sometimes save a man who had stolen a one-pound note by bringing in a verdict, "Guilty of stealing a one-pound note valued at nineteen shillings."

**278. The War of 1812-1814.** During the last ten years of the reign of George III., the poor old king was insane and blind, and his son ruled, as regent, in his place. Just after the trouble came upon him, war broke out with the United States. When Napoleon found that he could not invade England, he resolved to destroy her commerce by shutting all the Continental ports against her vessels, and by prohibiting ships of the European nations from landing at English ports. Great Britain at once answered the attack of Napoleon by proclaiming a general blockade of all ports on the coast of France and her allies. The blockade shut out the United States ships from the European trade, and as this had been very profitable, a great deal of resentment was aroused. In addition, Great Britain had exercised a shadowy right to seize and search vessels of any other nation for deserters from her own navy. The United States claimed that many citizens of that country had been forcibly taken from their own vessels, and compelled to serve in the English navy. Seizing the opportunity when the resources of England were taxed to the utmost in the conflict with Napoleon, the United States declared war, and at once invaded Canada. During the first two years of the war, the Canadian troops were compelled to keep up the conflict almost unaided, but

they succeeded in driving the invaders from the country. British troops also burned Washington, but were repulsed at New Orleans. On the sea for a time the navy of England was worsted, and on Lake Ontario and Lake Erie the English suffered repeated defeats; but towards the end of the war, the commerce of the United States was practically ruined, and most of her ports were in a state of blockade. There was much opposition in the United States to the war, and in some of the New England States there was talk of seceding from the Union. In 1814 the surrender of Napoleon gave England a chance to turn her energies to America, and before the end of the year peace was signed at Ghent. The treaty contained no reference to either of the alleged causes of the conflict.

**279. Literature.** In a reign so long as that of George III. there was opportunity for changes in literature as well as in manufacturing. **Samuel Johnson.** Johnson was the man who exerted most influence over the literary world of his day. He wrote biography, criticism, essays, and a story called "Rasselas," but his great work was the compilation of an English dictionary, the first of any real value. The worth of this book was so fully appreciated that it was even proposed to make its author a dictator over the English language, and to allow no appeal from his decision.

**Oliver Goldsmith.**

He had a friend, named Oliver Goldsmith, who, as was said, "wrote like an angel, and talked like poor Poll." Goldsmith was always out of money and was always getting into trouble, but he was so witty and so lovable that there was generally a friend at hand to help him out of his difficulties. He, too, wrote a novel, the "Vicar of Wakefield." "Rasselas" is really a kind of essay on the folly of discontent, though it has



a slender plot and the paragraphs are assigned to different characters; but the "Vicar" is a readable story about real men and women, and is written with a charming naturalness, and simplicity and humor. Goldsmith wrote poetry as well as prose, and his "Deserted Village" is as delightful as the "Vicar." Edmund Burke, the great political orator of this period, must also be remembered as an eloquent political writer, and the master of a prose style



ROBERT BURNS

that has scarcely been surpassed in majestic elevation.

Novels of home life still continued to be written, but there was also much writing of poetry before and after the year 1800. The imagination of men of literary ability seems to have been excited by the revolutions and the new thoughts of the latter part of the eighteenth century, just as it had been by the great events of the reign of Elizabeth, and some of the poetry that was written has the freshness and ease of the Elizabethan days. In Scotland Robert Burns wrote not only such irresistibly humorous poems as "Tam O'Shanter," but also such strong lines as :—

Poetry.

Robert Burns.

"The rank is but the guinea's stamp;  
The man's the gowd for a' that."

His writings, with their beauty and pathos and humor,

sound the keynote of the newly arisen interest in people because they were people, and not because they were rich or educated or of high rank. A little later Walter

**Walter  
Scott.**

Scott wrote poems that have almost the ring of the old ballads. Then he wrote historical novels, and these, too, are in sympathy with the new feeling, for in his stories it is not so often the lords and ladies as the cottagers and the men of low degree that arouse our warmest interest. Wordsworth came with his love of nature and his conviction that writing poetry was not an amusement but a serious business. Charles Lamb

**Charles  
Lamb.**

showed people the beauties of the old, half-forgotten dramatists, and wrote his "Essays of Elia" with their unequalled geniality, pathos, and humor. At the end of the reign of George III. the literature of the nineteenth century was well begun with freshness, brightness, humor, appreciation of the old, readiness for the new, and a rapidly developing feeling of sympathy for whatever is human.

### SUMMARY

The reign of George III., the longest in English history except that of Queen Victoria, was marked by a series of wars. First came the American Revolution, by which England lost thirteen colonies in America. Further manifestation of the English colonial policy caused riots in Ireland, and France, fresh from her own Revolution, was ready to help the Irish. English bribery brought about the union of Ireland with Great Britain. France declared war, but the supremacy of the English navy under Nelson freed England from all danger of French invasion. The war went on for twenty years, ending with Wellington's defeat of Napoleon at Waterloo. England had also been at war with the United States a second time.

1820

people were altering the nature of novel writing, and studies have shown that the love is not a lamb, often called "the lit- with old, eling

story  
es of  
Eng-  
ation  
and  
p the  
el and  
armacy  
dan-  
years.  
erloo.  
second







The poor suffered greatly from the heavy taxes that these wars made necessary, and from the introduction of labor-saving machinery.

### 34. GEORGE IV. 1820-1830

**280. George IV. becomes king.** When George IV. came to the throne, in 1820, there was no enthusiasm. He had really ruled England ten years, as for that length of time his father had been hopelessly insane, and this George had acted as regent. He was reckless and profligate, and did nothing but enjoy himself in wildness and dissipation. More than once Parliament paid his enormous debts, but he began to contract new ones as soon as the old ones had been settled. In the earlier days of England it was the custom for a knight in full armor to appear at each coronation and challenge to single combat any one who disputed the right of the new sovereign to the throne. At the coronation of George IV. this "King's Champion" appeared for the last time, and it does seem as if in the character of the king there was reason enough why



GEORGE IV.

some one should have responded to the challenge of the champion.

**281. Repeal of unjust laws.** The reign of George IV. is noted especially for the repeal of several unjust laws which had been passed in the time of Charles II. The object of these laws had been to counteract the influence that King Charles was constantly using in favor of the Roman Catholic church.

One of these was called the Corporation Act. It had been passed just after Charles II. came to the throne, and it declared that no one should hold any town office or be an officer in any corporation unless he was a member of the Church of England. After nearly two hundred years, this was repealed. Another was known as the Test Act, and this had been passed because Charles had issued what was called a

**Corporation  
and Test  
Acts.**



DANIEL O'CONNELL

Declaration of Indulgence; for, although this Declaration gave to members of all churches the same rights that members of the Church of England enjoyed, Parliament believed that Charles's only reason for issuing it was to give Roman Catholics more power. The Test Act required every one who wished

to hold any civil or military office to swear that he believed one of the principal doctrines of the Roman Catholic church to be false. Daniel O'Connell, an Irishman of great ability, having been duly elected,



demanding a seat in the House of Commons, notwithstanding his being a Roman Catholic. There was strong opposition, but it was finally withdrawn lest there should be war in Ireland. The Catholic Emancipation Act was passed, and at last it became possible for a Roman Catholic to have a voice in making the laws for his country.

**Roman  
Catholics  
admitted to  
Parliament.  
1829.**

**282. Who should succeed to the throne.** George IV. was not so beloved, and his royal ancestors had not been so brilliant that the English needed to long for a continuance of the family in power; but the nation would have been horrified at the idea of any change, and there was much anxiety about the succession. After George IV., his next younger brother William would rule; but neither of them had any children to inherit the throne. There was, however, the daughter of a still younger brother, a little girl eleven years old. Her father was dead, and she was living quietly and simply with her mother and her governess, playing with the dolls that she kept as long as she lived, and without the least idea that she might some day become a queen.

### SUMMARY

Acts were passed repealing the unjust Corporation Act and Test Act that had been passed during the reign of Charles II. The passage of the Catholic Emancipation Act admitted Roman Catholics to Parliament. There was much anxiety about the succession to the throne.

### 35. WILLIAM IV. 1830-1837

**283. The "Sailor King."** William IV. is called the "Sailor King," because he spent most of his life in the navy. He was bluff and cordial in his manner, kind-hearted and frank, and he meant sincerely to do his best

for the people. It never seemed to enter his mind that he was in any way superior to the rest of the nation be-



WILLIAM IV

cause of his royal blood, and he had a way of treating great and small very much alike, and a rather astonishing fashion of inviting men to dinner without the least regard as to whether they were Whigs or Tories. He cared little for the forms and ceremonies of state, but he cared a great deal about his people's loving him

and feeling satisfied with what he did for them.

**284. Reforms in electing members of Parliament.** Reforms and inventions, and not wars, make up the story of William's reign. The first reform was in the method of electing members of Parliament. In the times of Henry III. two knights represented each shire, or county. Later, representatives were sent from some of the towns, or boroughs. Which towns should be selected seems to have depended either upon the choice of the king or upon the willingness of the town to meet the necessary expense. It gradually became an established custom that these towns and no others should be represented in Parliament. As time passed, a borough which had no right of representation sometimes became the

home of large numbers of people ; while in another, which chanced to have no manufactories, the number of inhabitants had often become exceedingly small. It is said that in the year of William's coronation a certain one of these boroughs was left without a single inhabitant, and the man that owned the land quietly selected his two members and sent them to Parliament to represent no one but himself. Even this was better than the other side of the matter, for it was not quite so bad to have two men represent one person as to have many large cities entirely without representation, simply because the land on which they were built did not have any inhabitants in the olden times.

These boroughs in which so few lived were called "rotten boroughs," and the time had come when reform could no longer be postponed. A list was read **The Reform Bill, 1832.** in Parliament of the boroughs to which it was proposed to give no representation, and of those that were to send one member instead of two, or sometimes even four. This would deprive more than one hundred and fifty members of their seats in Parliament. Most of them were present, and as the bill was read, there were roars of laughter at the absurdity of such a scheme ; but the masses of the nation were demanding the reform, and finally the House of Commons, under the leadership of Lord Grey, voted for it. The House of Lords opposed the measure, but the nation was no less determined. The vote was taken again with the same result, for not only was there the customary opposition of the lords to making changes, but many believed sincerely that to have members represent people instead of land, and to depart from the old system of elections, would be a great injury to the government. Finally, the king was driven by his ministers to give permis-

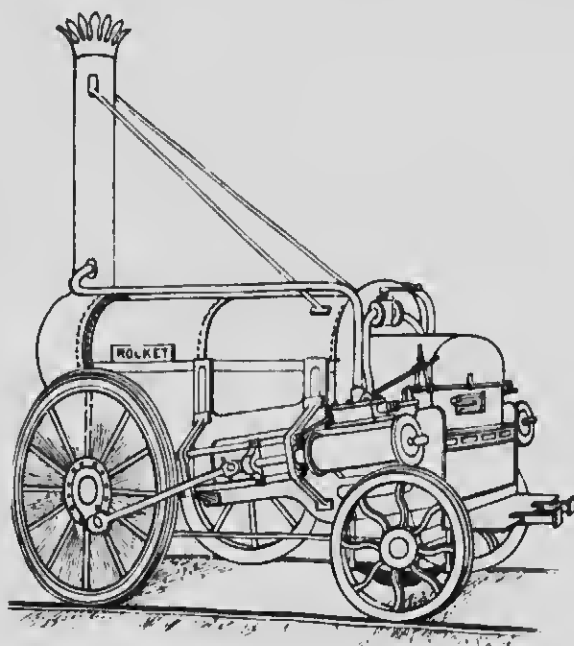
sion to make as many new peers as would be necessary to carry the measure ; and the House of Lords then yielded rather than have their ranks so crowded.

This reform was for the good of all England, but there was another reform that was especially for the **Help for the children.** benefit of the children who had been working in factories and in coal mines. They were little children, too, some of them not more than four years of age, and girls as well as boys. In the mines the children were in total darkness, often drenched with cold water from morning till night. Sometimes for twelve or fourteen hours a day they opened and shut doors whenever they heard a coal-car coming. Sometimes they had to creep on their hands and feet and drag through the wet passages heavy loads fastened by a chain to a girdle put around the waist. A commissioner appointed to examine the mines reported that he had found a little girl only six years of age dragging fifty pounds in this fashion for fourteen long trips every day. The lives of children employed in factories were no less hard, save that they did not work in darkness and in water. It was felt to be a great step in the right direction when it was decreed that no child under nine years of age should be employed, and that children between nine and fourteen should not work more than eight hours a day. When we remember that besides the other horrors of their lives they were sometimes brutally whipped for the most trifling faults, even for falling asleep, this kindness of the lawmakers seems only a little removed from utter barbarity. But there were better laws to come.

There were other slaves besides these little children, and in their behalf a good man named Wilberforce had been working for many years. The slave trade had

been forbidden for a quarter of a century, but in the West Indies negro slaves were still held to work on the sugar plantations. In 1833 it was decreed that these slaves should be made free, and the sum of twenty million pounds was ordered to be paid to the owners of the plantations to make good the loss. Wilberforce lived just long

Wilber-  
force's ef-  
forts free  
the slaves.  
1833.



STEPHENSON'S LOCOMOTIVE "THE ROCKET"

Adopted for use on the Liverpool and Manchester Railway in 1825

enough to know that the bill would become a law, and that the good to which he had devoted his life would come to pass.

Now that people had begun to have a little realization of the suffering around them, it occurred to some that even persons accused of crime had rights, and that giving a man a trial before a jury was not all that was

necessary in order to give him justice. If a man was accused of a crime, the government employed a lawyer to bring up every circumstance that would tell against him, but the man himself could not have a lawyer. He might speak in his own behalf, but very few accused men would be likely to understand the intricacies of the law, and there must have been multitudes who were imprisoned or even executed, not because they were wicked, but because they were ignorant. Now, for the first time, an accused man was allowed to have a lawyer to speak for him and to bring up every circumstance that would tell in his favor.

Accused  
men al-  
lowed to  
have law-  
yers. 1836.

There were great inventions in the short reign of the "Sailor King,"—the first steam railway, the first iron vessel, and the tiny friction match. More important than any invention was the progress of the feeling that those who have power and wealth ought to aid those who have neither.

### SUMMARY

The reign of the "Sailor King" was noted chiefly for its reforms. The principal ones were the abolition of the "rotten boroughs," of some of the worst features of child-labor, and of slavery in the colonies. Men accused of crime were then for the first time allowed to have the aid of a lawyer. The general character of these reforms indicated a gain in public sympathy for those that needed help.

### 36. VICTORIA. 1837-1901

285. **The girl queen.** It was five o'clock one June morning when a young girl in Kensington Palace was awakened by the coming of the Archbishop of Canterbury, the Lord Chamberlain, and the king's physician, to tell her that she was queen of more than eighteen

millions of people. A few hours later the great reception rooms of the palace were filled with a famous company, bishops and archbishops and nobles and illustrious commoners. Victoria was then but little more than eighteen years of age, and every one watched to see how she would behave on so difficult an occasion. Would she be elated by her new honors, or self-possessed, or shy and embarrassed? They had not long to wait. The wide doors were thrown open, and the young queen entered. She was pale, but perfectly calm. She seated herself at the head of the council table, and repeated the solemn oath that she would act for the good of her country and defend the Church of England. There was a moment's pause, for her manner was so sincere, so modest, and so dignified, and she seemed to realize so perfectly the responsibility of the high position to which she had been called, that every one was hushed. Then came the councillors' oath of fealty, and old, gray-haired men, her two uncles among them, knelt before her and solemnly promised to be true to her as their lawful sovereign. "If she had been my own daughter," said the Duke of Wellington, "I could not have wished that she should do better."

**286. A welcome ruler.** Victoria was happy in her new position. A Scottish nobleman who saw her soon after the coronation said, "The little queen was exceedingly kind, and as merry and playful as a kitten." She was a descendant of Alfred the Great and of William the Conqueror. No one else had the least claim to the throne. There was nothing in her past life that needed to be pardoned or overlooked; and the fact that upon shoulders so slender rested the weight of so great a kingdom won sympathy rather than envy for her lot. She had been brought up very simply, and had been

accustomed to less luxury than many of her subjects. Moreover, there was a strong reason why English statesmen were especially glad, and this was that now England won't have nothing to do with Hanover; for that country had a law that it should not be ruled by a woman so long as there was a man in the royal family. An uncle of the queen went to govern Hanover, and Victoria ruled over the United Kingdom.

**287. Limitations of the royal power.** The rule of an English sovereign in Victoria's day was quite a different



QUEEN VICTORIA

matter from that of a few centuries earlier. When the queen had been on the throne less than two years, her prime minister resigned, and she was obliged to select another. She offered the position to Sir Robert Peel, and he agreed to accept it; but he declared that it would be necessary to remove the chief ladies who were in

attendance upon her and appoint others who were in sympathy with the changed ministry. The queen was not pleased, and she wrote to Sir Robert that such a change was not customary, that she did not like it, and would not consent to it. Then Sir Robert replied as politely as possible that he could not take office unless



this was done. The result was that the former prime minister returned to power; but there was afterwards a compromise, and now the Mistress of the Robes, who holds the highest position in the queen's household, resigns as soon as her party is out of power. An English queen is, therefore, less free to choose her principal attendant than is the woman who is at the head of any other household in the land.

It is true that the preferences of the sovereign often count for much more than the commands of the law, and that he has much power, yet his power is a matter of influence rather than of dominion. The ruler must do as the people direct. He is at the head of the nation, a symbol of law and justice, but he no longer exercises the right to make law or interfere with the course of justice. What would the Stuarts with their "divine right" have thought of a monarch who has no choice whether to sign a bill or not, and who is obliged in practice to agree to whatever the two Houses of Parliament think best?

**288. The House of Lords.** In the days of Magna Charta only the nobles could call a tyrannical king to account and make him deal justly with his people. The nobles have now far less power than formerly. It is true that a bill cannot become a law without the assent of the Lords, but if they persist in refusing to confirm a vote of the Commons, the king, on the advice of his ministry, may then create a sufficient number of new peers to carry the measure. Moreover, there are but few subjects on which the Lords may present bills, and even those bills cannot become laws until they have passed the Commons.

The House of Commons is inclined to go ahead, and the House of Lords to hold back, and to require further

consideration of proposed reforms and innovations. The Lords endeavor to carry out the principle that second thoughts are sometimes best; and no one can deny that it is an excellent plan to have one of two bodies of lawmakers not in a hurry to adopt every new idea. They, however, have almost invariably yielded when they saw



HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT, OPENED IN 1852

that the Commons were really in earnest. The House of Lords has a very important place in the British Constitution, and is likely to have, so long as its ranks continue to be recruited from the great artists, musicians, authors, generals, and statesmen of the country.

**289. The House of Commons.** The real power lies in the hands of the Commons, and it is the Commons that hold the money-bags of the kingdom. When King Henry VII. wanted money, he simply took it from any of his subjects that possessed it. To-day neither House of Lords nor king dares even suggest

such a thing as a tax. The proposal to raise money must come from the House of Commons, and from nowhere else.

**290. Marriage of the queen. 1840.** Victoria as a sovereign stood alone. She could consult no statesman as an individual; he must always be looked upon as representing a party. Her marriage in 1840 to her cousin, Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, was especially pleasing to her personal friends, although many of her subjects felt a vague jealousy that a foreigner should hold in England a position of such influence. Momentous questions of precedence arose, which were partially settled when the Duke of Wellington declared, "Let the queen put the prince just where she wants him to be."



PRINCE ALBERT

The fears of Prince Albert's harmful influence were groundless. From his marriage to his death in 1861, he devoted himself to the best good of his adopted country. The Great Exhibition of 1851 was suggested and planned by him. His interest in art and in education was an unfailing inspiration and stimulus to the people of England.

**291. "Penny postage" established. 1840.** At the beginning of Queen Victoria's reign the postage on a letter was so great that poor people were unable to send letters at all, and even those who could afford to pay the heavy charges wrote as seldom as possible. It cost

a shilling to carry a letter from London to Edinburgh, and it was said that if an Irish laborer working in England wished to write to his family at home, it would take one fifth of his weekly wages to send the letter. In 1837 Rowland Hill began to urge the government to reduce the rate of postage, and to make a uniform charge of one penny on a letter sent to any part of the kingdom. It was found that this was the actual cost of delivering the letters, and that the remainder of the money had been wasted in useless expenses. For a long time the government refused to make the reduction, but at length they were compelled to give way before the popular demand, and in 1840 "penny postage" was established.

**292. The "Opium War." 1840.** In the year of the royal marriage, England was fighting against China. This contest was known as the "Opium War." The English were raising large quantities of opium in India, and they were finding the Chinese exceedingly good customers. China had never been willing to trade with foreigners, and moreover she was indignant at the persistent efforts of England to force the hated drug upon her. Its use had increased so that the English sent eight times as much in 1839 as in 1810, and the dealers were making fortunes. England would not yield, and the result of the war was that China was forced to open her ports to British trade.

**293. The Afghan War. 1841-1842.** In 1841 the English were called on to interfere in a struggle between two claimants for the throne of Afghanistan. Dost Mohammed, who had usurped the throne, was friendly to Russia, and it was feared that English interests in India would suffer if he were allowed to remain in possession of the country. Accordingly an English army

invaded Afghanistan, deposed the usurper, and placed the rightful king on the throne. On the way back to India, the army was treacherously attacked, and out of a force of 16,000 but one man succeeded in reaching the frontier; the remainder were either killed or taken prisoners. In the next year another expedition rescued the prisoners, punished the treacherous Afghans, and compelled respect for English arms.

**294. The Chartist Agitation, 1848.** Not long before the beginning of Victoria's reign, the "rotten boroughs" were done away with, and the Lords felt that a great deal had been granted to the masses of the people. Not every one agreed with their views. A man must even then have an income *from land* of three hundred pounds before he could become a member of the House of Commons. This was an old law, and its object was to keep the law-making in the hands of those who held land instead of those who were poor, or even those who were wealthy but had no land. Many people believed that a man owning landed property would have a greater interest in the well-being of the country than a man who had only money; and as for the poorer people, they were not thought of at all.

The time had come when the working-men had begun to think for themselves. Thousands of them had no representation in the government, and they began to hold meetings and to discuss their wrongs. Little came of the movement until 1848, when they decided to send a petition asking that every man in the king-  
dom should have the right to vote, that the  
property qualification for members of Parliament should be abolished, and that each member should receive a salary, so that if a poor man was elected, he might be enabled to take his seat. These were three of the six

**The Chartist demands.**

demands of the petition. The other three were for annual Parliaments, for vote by ballot, and for a division of the country into electoral districts of equal population, so that all members of Parliament might represent the same number of men. Their great grievance was taxation without representation. Those who were trying to bring about these reforms were called "Chartists," because their plan was set forth in what was called the "People's Charter."

There were such alarming stories of the millions of names that would be on this charter, and the million of people that would go with the wagon-load of petitions to the doors of Parliament, that London was greatly alarmed. Troops were drilled, ready to defend the capital, and no less a man than the Duke of Wellington was called upon to command them. So much was done that there was a vast amount of amusement when it was found that the "millions" that had seemed so startling had dwindled to a comparatively small number, and that all the fright had been for nothing. The Chartist demands were not unreasonable, and several of the reforms called for have since been either wholly or partially accomplished.

**295. The repeal of the Corn Laws. 1846-1849.** There were other old laws, called "corn laws," that were bringing distress upon great numbers of people. During the wars preceding Victoria's reign, there was much difficulty in obtaining "corn," — meaning in England all kinds of grain, — and the price was exceedingly high. When a time of peace came, the price would naturally have fallen, but as the laws were in great part made by landowners and in their own interest, a heavy duty had been imposed upon all grain brought into England. This was an exceedingly good thing for the landowners, but not

so good for the poor people who worked in the factories and had to buy their bread. The towns, led by men like Richard Cobden and John Bright, protested vigorously for years against this injustice, but the landlords were so strong in Parliament that nothing was done, and the laws remained as they were.

In 1845 there was a terrible famine in Ireland because of the failure of the potato crop. The peasants of Ireland were always poor, and they were unable The famine in Ireland. to pay the high price that was charged for grain. Thousands died of hunger, and the government was forced to do something to relieve the distress. Sir Robert Peel, who was then at the head of the Sir Robert Peel. government, had up to this time been opposed to any change, but he now saw that grain must be allowed to come into the country free, or thousands more would perish. He introduced a bill into Parliament to modify the corn laws, and after a very bitter debate, the measure was carried. This was not all accomplished at once, but in a few years the duties had been for the most part removed.

**296. The Crimean War.** In 1854 England joined France in a war against Russia, called the Crimean War because most of the fighting took place in the Crimea, a peninsula in the Black Sea. Russia was carrying on her old quarrel with Turkey, and was eager to get possession of Constantinople, that she might control the Black Sea and send her fleet into the Mediterranean if she chose. England was forced into the contest because she was afraid that if Russia should succeed in conquering Turkey, that country would become so powerful in the East that the possession of India would be endangered. War was declared in 1854. Troops were at once despatched to the Crimea, and siege laid to

Sebastopol, the great grain port of Russia in the Black Sea. At the Alma River, at Inkermann, and at Balaclava, the British troops and their allies fought bravely and were successful in every battle. At Balaclava took place the "Charge of the Light Brigade," which Tennyson's poem has made immortal. The next year, after a very stubborn siege, Sebastopol was taken; then Russia yielded, and peace was declared. England gained no permanent advantage from the war.

The Crimean War is remembered chiefly for the heroism of the soldiers in battle and for the sufferings they endured. The supply department was very badly managed, and for some time there were neither doctors, nurses, nor hospital accommodation. Thousands died for want of proper food and clothing. At last the people of England were aroused and insisted on immediate action. The ministry that was then in power was removed and another took its place. Supplies were hurried to



FLORENCE NIGHTINGALE

the Crimea, and doctors and nurses were also sent. Among the latter was Florence Nightingale, whose name will always be remembered for her work in caring for the sick and suffering among the soldiers.

**297. The Indian Mutiny.** Hardly was the Crimean



War brought to a close when a terrible mutiny broke out in India among the Sepoys, or native soldiers in the service of the British government. There was some dissatisfaction among the people of India at the way in which the government was administered, but the mutiny itself was almost entirely confined to the troops. Even although the country seemed to be quiet, the English well knew that it was wise to keep up a strong military force. This had been done chiefly by filling the ranks with Mohammedans and Hindus serving under English officers. In 1857 a new kind of rifle was introduced that required cartridges greased with a mixture of tallow and lard, and the soldier was obliged to bite off the end of the cartridge. The Hindu looked upon the cow as sacred, the Mohammedan scorned the hog as unclean; and unscrupulous men, for purposes of their own, persuaded the soldiers that the government had introduced this new cartridge on purpose to insult their religion. This was the immediate cause of the mutiny of 1857.

The mutiny seemed to break out everywhere at once, and was accompanied by frightful massacres, which exhibited all the atrocities of barbaric warfare. The English were comparatively few in numbers and in the midst of enemies, who were waiting only the opportunity to murder them. Delhi was captured by the Sepoys, and the Mogul emperor again proclaimed. Nana Sahib, the moving spirit in the mutiny, cut down the English soldiers at Cawnpore by treachery, and massacred the helpless women and children.

The massacre at Cawnpore.

Brigadier Lawrence was shut up in Lucknow, which was defended by a small force of English and Hindus for eighty-seven days, although Lawrence himself was killed early in the siege. In Agra and Allahabad similar terrible scenes took place.

But there were brave and competent Englishmen in India. Lord Canning, the governor-general, was a man of energy and resources, and behind him were men like Havelock, Outram, and Nicholson. City after city was retaken from the mutineers. Sir Colin Campbell was hurriedly sent to India to take command of the forces. Cawnpore, Delhi, and Lucknow were speedily recaptured, and the mutiny was at an end. Severe measures had to be taken in many instances to quell the revolt, but as a general rule, those in authority, in spite of a natural desire for vengeance, did not abuse their power. Canning himself, after the suppression of the mutiny, was blamed for his clemency towards the mutineers, but time has proved the wisdom of his course. At Cawnpore a beautiful shrine with a statue of the Angel of Peace has been erected in memory of those who were so pitilessly slain. On it is the inscription: "Sacred to the perpetual memory of a great company of Christian people, chiefly women and children."

The result of the mutiny was that the government of India was taken out of the hands of the East India Company and placed under the direct control of the crown. On New Year's Day, 1877, Queen Victoria was proclaimed Empress of India, a title which is now much more than a name.

**298. The "Alabama Claims."** In 1861 civil war broke out in the United States. English sympathy was divided. The nobles and many prominent men were inclined to favor the South, while a few clear-headed statesmen and the masses of the people favored the North, even though the impossibility of obtaining cotton from the United States stopped the English factories and caused much suffering. Though the government declared officially that England would aid neither side, yet the sympathiz-

ers with the Southern States were allowed not only to fit up swift vessels for running the blockade and carrying arms and other things to the South, but even to build a privateer, the "Alabama," to destroy the merchant vessels of the United States government. This action of the English government aroused a great deal of resentment in the United States, and after the war was brought to a close a claim for damages was made. As there were several other matters in dispute between the two governments, including several claims of Canada, a commission was appointed to go into the whole question. This commission met at Washington, with the result that the "Alabama Claims" were referred to an international court of arbitration which met at Geneva. This court decreed that \$15,500,000 was a fair recompense, and England paid the sum promptly to the United States.

The Wash-  
ington  
Treaty.

**299. Board schools established. 1870.** In the midst of the wars of the century, the question of educating the children was becoming more and more pressing. When Victoria first came to the throne, there were few schools in which children who could not pay for their tuition could be educated. Many people thought that the poor were meant to stay poor and do the hard work of the world. Others had tried to do what they could and had given generously. Perhaps the greatest gift of all was that of John Pounds, a shoemaker, who for many years taught poor children without charge; five hundred in all he had saved from ignorance. The government had made some small appropriations for the schools, and the churches had done what they could; but it was estimated that half the children in the kingdom had no opportunity to learn to read. At last the government began to realize that it is better to teach children to

become good citizens than to punish them, when they have grown up, for being bad ones, and "board schools" were established. At present there is nothing to prevent every child in the kingdom from receiving a good elementary education free of charge. At about the same date, religious educational freedom was granted, and then, for the first time, a Dissenter, that is, one who is not a member of the Church of England, could take a degree at Oxford or Cambridge.

**300. Jews admitted to Parliament. 1858.** The Jews had been treated more fairly in England than in other countries, but even in England they had not found justice. Edward I. had expelled them, and although Cromwell allowed them to return, they had never been able to enter Parliament, chiefly because they would be required to take an oath "on the faith of a Christian." The Commons voted to modify this wording, but ten times the Lords refused to agree. At last, at the eleventh trial, the Lords yielded, and in 1858 a man of Hebrew birth took his seat in the House of Commons.

**301. Irish reforms.** Throughout the reign of Victoria, the "Irish question" was a pressing matter. One difficulty after another rose and "would not down." After Daniel O'Connell's success in securing parliamentary representation for Roman Catholics, he aimed at nothing less than a free Parliament for Ireland and a separation from England. What might have been the result if the life of this earnest, eloquent, enthusiastic leader of the people had been prolonged, it is not easy to say.

One great cause of complaint in Ireland was that all inhabitants, of whatever church, were taxed to support the Episcopal church. Another was the famous "land

question." Vast areas of Irish land were owned by Englishmen who perhaps had never been in Ireland, and had no further interest in the country than to see that the agents were prompt in forwarding their rents. A tenant might be driven from his farm at any moment. If he drained a swamp or cleared a bit of land from stumps and stones, his rent would be raised because the land had become more valuable. Ireland found a friend in William Ewart Gladstone, a man who, as chancellor of the exchequer and prime minister, was for more than forty years the most prominent statesman in England. Under his leadership a law was made that the Irish should not be taxed to support the Episcopal church. Gladstone also succeeded in carrying through a law that the tenant should be paid for making improvements, and that if he paid his rent he should not be driven from his farm at the whim of the landlord.

This law was good, but the landlords found ways of evading it. Then a strong party arose in Ireland demanding "Home Rule," that is, that Ireland <sup>"Home Rule."</sup> should rule herself. The leader was Charles Stuart Parnell. He was a calm, cool man, but many of his followers were hot-headed and violent; frequently there were murders and other crimes in Ireland, and there was fierce vengeance on the part of the English government. In spite of this, Gladstone still struggled in behalf of Irish home rule, but though the bill was finally passed by the Commons, it was defeated by the Lords. Within the last few years, an improved land bill has been passed, and a kind of local self-government has been established in Ireland by which each little district elects a council to manage its local affairs. Further, in the summer of 1903 an act was passed by which the English gov-

Parnell.

ernment agreed to assist the Irish peasants to purchase the land on which they lived from its landlords, so that each man might own and cultivate his little plot of ground.

**302. The Boer War. 1900-1902.** In 1900 England became engaged in a struggle with the Transvaal Republic and the Orange Free State. South Africa had originally been settled by the Dutch, who soon became known as Boers, the Dutch word for *farmers*. In the course of the wars with Napoleon this land fell into the hands of the English. The Boers disliked English rule. They preferred to live by themselves, cultivating great tracts of territory and pasturing large herds of cattle, who were looked after by natives, servants in name, but in reality slaves. On several occasions the Boers abandoned their homes before the advance of English settlement, and went further north, finally settling down in the Transvaal and the Orange Free State. But difficulties with the natives were

**Trouble  
with the  
natives.**

constant, and England was frequently called on to protect the new settlements against the tribes, who were justly angry at the way in which they were treated by the Boers. In 1881, after the close of a terrible war with the Zulus, in which the English had lost many men, the Transvaal demanded that England should recognize it as independent, as some years before the Orange Free State had been so recognized. The result was that the Boers invaded Natal and defeated small bodies of English troops at Laing's Nek and Majuba Hill. Immediately after the latter battle the English government gave up the contest and declared the Transvaal to be independent except in matters relating to foreign affairs and dealings with the native chiefs.

Then gold was discovered in the Transvaal, and this new interest brought swarms of people, chiefly English, into the country. The Boers were very ignorant and very prejudiced, and they were determined to yield nothing. Instead of welcoming the newcomers and admitting them to a share in the government, they did what they could to make their position uncomfortable, imposed heavy taxes and monopolies upon them, and refused to grant them any privileges in return. The English government finally interfered in behalf of the Outlanders, as the new settlers were called, and requested the Transvaal to treat them with more consideration. This was refused, and then it became a question as to who should rule in South Africa. The Orange Free State sided with the Transvaal, an insolent answer was given to the English demands, the Boers invaded English territory, and the struggle broke out.

At first the Boers, strong in the remembrance of Majuba Hill, advanced rapidly and hemmed in large bodies of English troops in Ladysmith, Mafeking, and Kimberley. These places made a heroic defence, and at once tremendous efforts were made to relieve them. At first the English troops, over-confident and ill-prepared, suffered some severe reverses, but now the whole empire was shaken to its centre. Troops were poured into South Africa from England and India; Canada, Australia, and New Zealand furnished men and hurried them to the seat of war, and soon a large army under Lord Roberts marched into the Orange Free State. By a brilliant march, Lord Roberts captured the Boer general Cronje with his army, entered Bloemfontein, the capital of the Orange Free State, and soon was in possession of Pretoria, the

The Out-  
landers.

Colonial  
aid.

capital of the Transvaal. The immediate result of this rapid series of manœuvres was the relief of the besieged places, to the intense joy and relief of the whole empire. Lord Roberts was now obliged to return to England, and the conduct of affairs was left to Lord Kitchener. However, the war was not yet over; in fact the most difficult part was to come. The Boers were determined not to give in and fought desperately to retain their independence. They separated into small bands, mounted on rapid horses, and kept up a guerilla warfare for some time longer. At last, however, they recognized that defeat was inevitable, and on May 31, 1902, a peace was arranged. Liberal terms were granted to the Boers, but the two republics became a part of the British Empire.

**303. Great Leaders.** The two men who played the greatest part in the affairs of England during the reign of Queen Victoria were William Ewart Gladstone and Benjamin Disraeli. They were both great orators, both great statesmen, and both of them strong and determined leaders, but in character and in political methods the two men were entirely different. Disraeli won the admiration of the people by his brilliancy and his wit, and won the votes of the people by his political sagacity,—some would have said by his cunning. He showed a remarkable foresight



BENJAMIN DISRAELI, EARL OF  
BEACONSFIELD



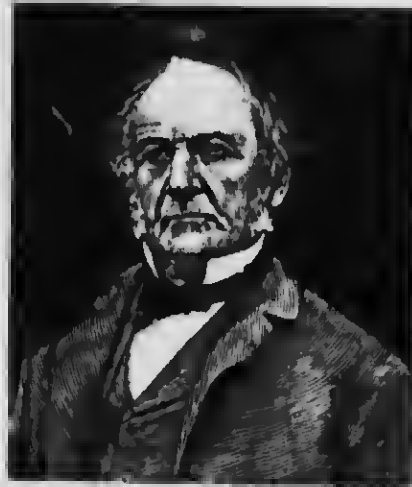
in realizing that Great Britain was to experience a wonderful expansion and to become a world empire.

He secured for England control of Egypt and the Suez Canal, and caused Queen Victoria to be proclaimed as Empress of India. For this honor she always showed him great favor, but it was more than a mere act of flattery on his part, it was an act of real statesmanship.

Gladstone was more successful in dealing with affairs at home than abroad. Under his government the condition of the poor was much improved, and a great advance was made in popular education. He failed to secure Home Rule for Ireland, but his efforts to pass this measure showed better than anything else his great earnestness and his terrible determination. Many people have not yet forgiven him for withdrawing the English troops from the Transvaal after the battle of Majuba Hill, but no one could doubt that he thought his action to be right, and the only one he could possibly take. He possessed great moral earnestness, and by his powers of eloquence could generally make it appear that his course was the only just and reasonable one to follow.

It is not often that two such great leaders are opposed to each other in Parliament, and England was fortunate to have two such men in control of the kingdom during a large part of Victoria's reign.

Disraeli.



WILLIAM EWART GLADSTONE

Gladstone.

**304. Inventions of the century.** The nineteenth century was an age of marvels, and if a man who lived in 1800 could visit the world to-day, he would almost fancy that witchcraft had been at work. He would find that he could see a great deal more. The improved telescope would show him what had been mysterious because it was so far away, and the microscope what had been unsuspected because it was so small, while the X-rays would enable him to look through solid substances. He would find, moreover, that by means of the telephone he could hear much farther. In 1800 the only way to obtain a portrait was by long, wearisome sittings with an artist; to-day we ask a ray of light to help us, and in a moment we have a photograph. When the man of 1800 wished to forward an important message, he sent a courier on horseback. We use the telegraph, and already we are complaining of the clumsiness of the slender wire and are looking toward a general adoption of "wireless telegraphy." We speak of the industrial revolution of one century ago, but we have an industrial revolution almost every day in the discovery of some new process of manufacturing; and almost before the invention is fairly chronicled, a greater one has taken its place. The man of 1800 had done his work by the strength of his own right arm, and felt as if the world was being overthrown by the introduction of steam-driven machinery. We are finding that electricity can do more than steam, and we are experimenting eagerly with compressed air. Who can tell what will be the motive power of the future? We are quite accustomed to impossibilities, and what would have been to the man of 1800 only a wild flight of the imagination is to us but the merest commonplace of every day.

305. The literature of Victoria's reign. It is not difficult to look back upon a century that is long past and see who were the greatest writers, but the Victorian age is so near that we cannot always distinguish the books that will last from those that are liked for a moment and then forgotten. The great events of the Elizabethan period stimulated the imagination, but the marvellous inventions of our own time are just as exciting. To-day education is far more general. Every one wishes to write, and in this mass of writing there is much that is really excellent. To select from the long list of



CHARLES DICKENS



LORD TENNYSON

authors that seem to be great is not easy. Tennyson is perhaps the first of the poets. Among historians the name of Macaulay is most familiar to the English people as a whole, partly because he wrote a history of their own land, but chiefly because his style is so clear and interesting that his books are easy to read.

Among the books of whose making there is no end, the novel holds the most prominent place. Scott, Dickens, Thackeray, and "George Eliot" have long been our best known writers of fiction, four authors who are so dissim-



LORD MACAULAY

ilar that the popularity of all is, in itself, a proof that the novel is enjoyed by all kinds of people. But the object of the novel of to-day is not merely to give pleasure. Fiction is no longer a source of amusement and nothing more; it has become a useful servant. If one would bring forward some new theory, he is sure of a wide read-

ing if he can embody it in an interesting story. If a new play is needed, a popular novel is dramatized. If the average man would read history, he is inclined to seek the historical novel; and frequently, for his religion, he is wont to imitate the idealized hero of some work of the imagination. More than one clergyman has left the pulpit that by bringing forward his ideas in story form he might preach truth to thousands instead of to hundreds.

Whither this tendency will lead us is a question. Who shall say, for instance, whether the present popularity of the novel whose whole attention is given to its hero indicates some glorious future development of the power to delineate character, or whether the frequent carelessness of the rest of the book betokens a step in the path that leads away from literary merit? Perhaps the

most excellent feature of this ascendancy of the novel is that we require our fiction to be true to life. Adventures must be probable, characters must be consistent, and the historical novel, if it would have more than a passing fame, must be the work of the student as well as the teller of stories.

**306. Influence of Queen Victoria.** There were world-stirring events during the life of Queen Victoria, but no one of them held so steadily the interest and attention of the English-speaking world as did the queen herself. The lives of few sovereigns have been so open as hers in every act, almost in every thought. We know her from the time when her only responsibility was the care of her great family of wooden dolls to the sad January day of 1901 when her life came to its close. Only four short years after the dolls were packed away, the young girl whose every motion had been watched, whose every thought had been guided, must stand alone at the head of a kingdom, so much alone that even the mother did not come to the daughter's door save by request of the queen.

Her twenty years of marriage with Prince Albert were the happiest period of her life, and at his death her sorrow was so overwhelming and so enduring that her people felt almost impatient with her avoidance of all social life. Neither grief nor weariness, however, was allowed to interfere with the hard work which, from the beginning of her reign to its close, she felt was demanded by her position. One of her prime ministers is said to have declared that he "would rather manage ten kings than one queen," for she would do nothing for expediency and would sign no papers that she did not understand. In the year of the Chartist excitement, for instance, every one of the 28,000 despatches that came

to the foreign office passed through her hands and engaged her thoughts. It was no easy life that she led.

In her reign there were "wars and rumors of wars," but the influence of Victoria herself was always for peace. In her the Hanoverian obstinacy and corruptness became firmness and purity. One of the stories of her childhood says that when she first knew that some time she would be queen of England, she said, "I will be good." Marcus Aurelius says that it is "hard to be good in a palace," but Queen Victoria showed by her sixty-three years in "that fierce light which beats upon a throne" that her childish promise was as sacred to her as the solemn oath of her coronation.

#### SUMMARY

The position of both sovereign and House of Lords has undergone steady change, and the real power lies to-day with the House of Commons. In Victoria's reign the result of the Chartist agitation, of the repeal of the corn laws, and of the admission of Jews to Parliament gave increased freedom to many thousand people, while "board schools" made it possible for a much larger number of children to obtain an education.

In this reign there were several wars: the "Opium War" with China; the Afghan War; the Crimean War, famous chiefly for the bravery of the soldiers and the suffering they endured; the terrible Indian Mutiny, and the war with the Boers in South Africa. The "Alabama Claims" against England by the United States were settled by arbitration. The demand of Ireland for reforms has long been a pressing question, but some progress was made towards its solution.

The literature of the reign is of immense bulk and of widely varying value, some of it approaching near to the most excellent work of the past ages. The progress of invention is unprecedented.

In one sense the reign of Victoria was a "personal mon-

archy," for by the irresistible force of a strong, pure womanhood, she attained that sovereignty over her land and her people for which arbitrary and tyrannous rulers have vainly sought. Well may the laureate of her time bestow upon her the highest praise that a woman can ask, the greatest reward that a sovereign can receive: —

"She wrought her people lasting good."

### 37. EDWARD VII. 1901—

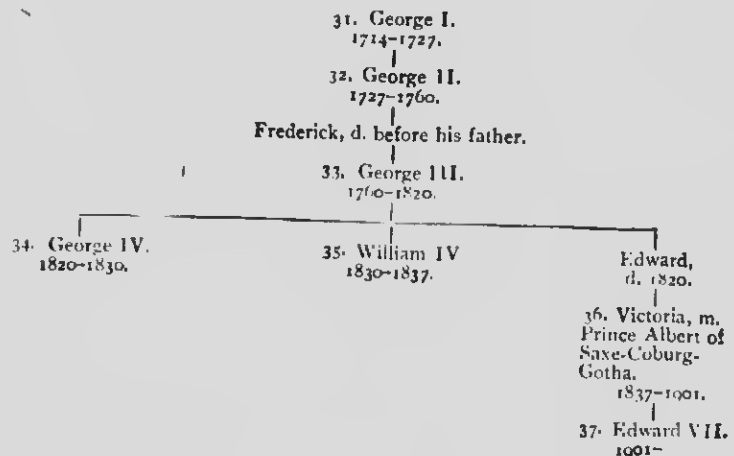
**307. King Edward VII.** On the death of Victoria her eldest son, Albert Edward, who for many years as Prince of Wales had represented his mother in all important matters of state ceremony, became king under the title of Edward VII. It should be remembered that while the king is the seventh Edward who has ruled over England, he is the first Edward to bear sway over the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland. In his first speech from the throne, he said: "My beloved mother during her long and glorious reign has set an example before the world of what a monarch should be. It is my earnest desire to walk in her footsteps."



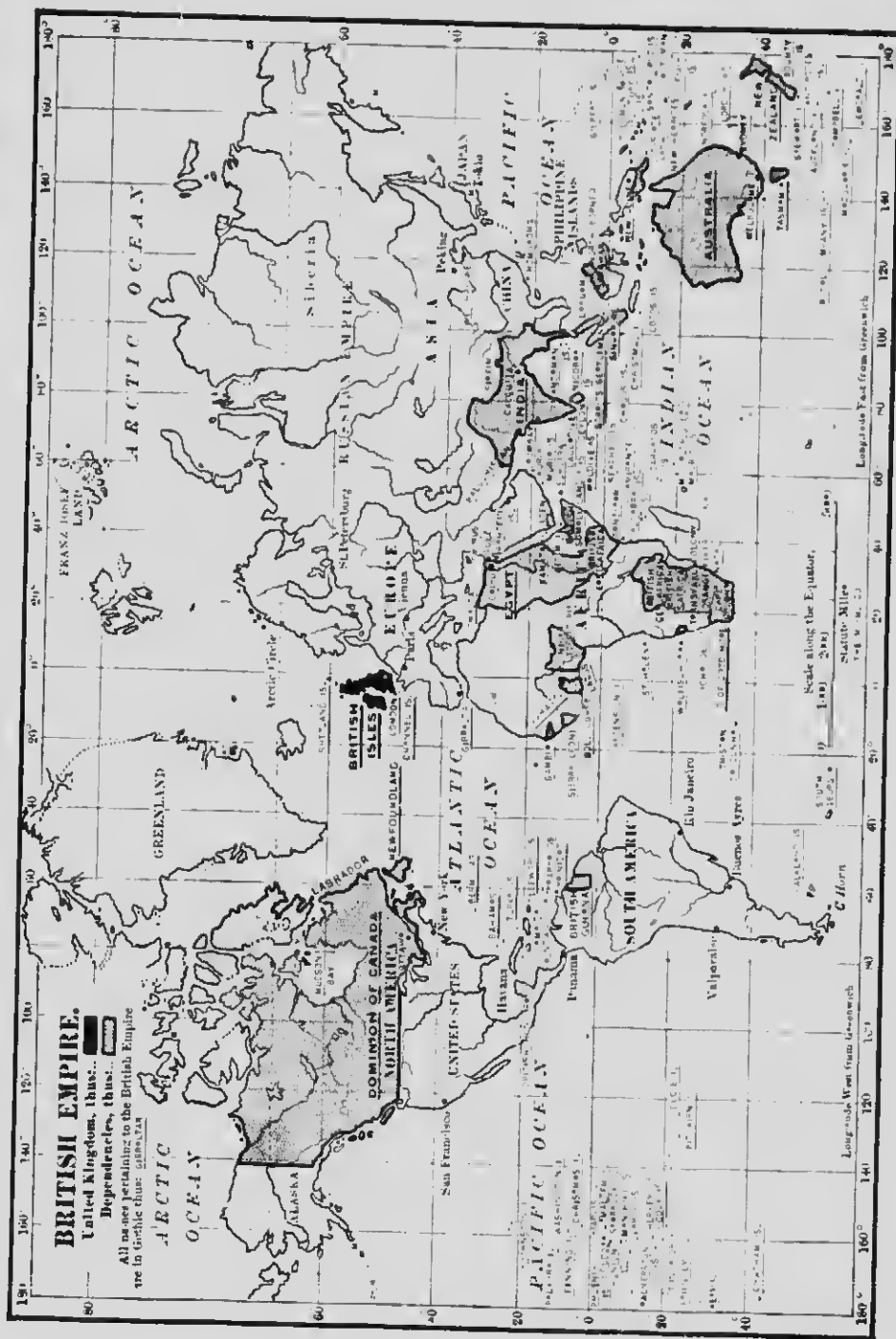
EDWARD VII.

Elaborate preparations were made for the coronation of the king. Representatives from all parts of the British Empire, and envoys from all civilized countries gathered in London to swell the pageant. On the day before that appointed for the ceremony the word went out that the king was ill. The serious nature of his illness was soon realized, and a hush of expectation fell upon the anxious multitudes. But happily their fears were presently to yield to hope and then to unbounded joy, for the crisis was soon past and the king was in a short time restored to health. When the deferred coronation took place later in the year, after a public thanksgiving in Westminster Abbey, there was less pompous pageantry than had been originally planned. But deep in the hearts of King Edward's subjects was a devout sense of gratitude that his life had been spared, and the stately ceremonies took on an added solemnity from the memory of what had gone before.

## HOUSE OF HANOVER







## CHAPTER IX

### THE BRITISH EMPIRE

**308. Progress of the Empire.** In all the history of dominion, there is, perhaps, nothing more astounding than the fact that part of one small island, almost without allies or even well-wishers in her conquests, should have made herself mistress of wide possessions in Europe, Asia, Africa, America, and Australasia, and should have established her control over nearly ten times as many people as there are in Great Britain and Ireland. England's colonial expansion during the reign of Victoria is one of the marvels of a marvellous age. In America, save for the addition of the islands lying to the north of Hudson Bay, the territories of England have but slightly increased during the last sixty years; but vast areas of land in western, southern, and eastern Africa have fallen under English sway, as has also an extensive Indian Empire, only a small portion of which belonged to England at the accession of Victoria. New Zealand, Tasmania, and a few settlements in south-eastern Australia were, in 1837, the limit of English possessions in Australasia, where her rule now extends over many millions of people.

The feeling of England towards her colonies has undergone a great change in the last century. One hundred years ago she regarded a colony as a community to be despoiled, so far as it might be done under pretence of law and without revolt. Fifty years

later, a colony was to her an encumbrance which she was obliged to treat with some show of interest and fairness, but upon which favor would be wasted, since the natural course of a colony would be to cut loose from the mother country. Very different is her present feeling. England now looks upon her colonial possessions with pride in their growth, an increasing confidence in their loyalty, and a realization that in the united allegiance of her widely separated dominions must lie her strength.

**309. The Dominion of Canada.** The greatest of all the self-governing colonies of Great Britain is Canada. In 1763, when the Treaty of Paris formally ceded the country to Great Britain, the population consisted of but a few thousand Frenchmen, settled for the most part in the neighborhood of Quebec and Montreal, together with some scattered settlements along the Atlantic coast, which at the time of the conquest of Canada already belonged to England. Soon settlers began to pour into Canada from the British Isles, and to push westward. These were joined shortly afterwards by the United Empire Loyalists, who founded the present province of Ontario and helped to fill up the settlements by the sea. The country was then divided into Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Upper Canada, Lower Canada, etc. With the incoming of a



LORD DURHAM

large British population, a struggle for constitutional government began in all the provinces. Although the names of the men taking part in the struggle were different, yet the general features of the contest were the same in each section of the country. The British government, taught by the American Revolution, was prepared to grant the largest measure of self-government consistent with imperial control, and did their best to satisfy the demands of the people. At last, however, rebellion broke out in Upper Canada and in Lower Canada, and the home government, thoroughly alarmed, sent Lord Durham to Canada to report on the condition of affairs. Lord Durham came to Canada, saw for himself, and presented a masterly report, in which he recommended that Upper Canada and Lower Canada (Ontario and Quebec) should be joined into one province. This was done by the Union Act of 1841. After some years it was found that this act was not satisfactory, and further measures were discussed. It was felt by the leading statesmen of the time that it would be in the best interests of the country that all the British possessions in the northern part of the continent should be united. Steps were at once taken to this end, with the result that on the 1st of July, 1867, the British North America Act was proclaimed, and the four possessions, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Quebec, and Ontario, were formed into the Dominion of Canada. British Columbia and Prince Edward Island joined confederation shortly afterwards, and very soon the immense North West Territories, including the Province of Manitoba, were acquired by the Dominion. From the scattered colonies of 1763 has been formed, in less than one hundred and fifty years, a nation of

**Lord  
Durham.**

**The Union  
Act. 1841.**

**British  
North  
America**

**Act. 1867.**

nearly six millions of self-governing people, strong in their devotion to their country, and loyal to the Empire to which they belong.

**310. The Commonwealth of Australia.** Next in importance of the great self-governing colonies is the Commonwealth of Australia, which includes the whole of the island continent, together with Tasmania. New Zealand, a large and important island in the Pacific Ocean near Australia, is not as yet included in the Commonwealth. Soon after the discovery of the island by Captain Cook, settlers began to flock thither. A portion of the country was used as



SIR HENRY PARKES

a penal settlement for convicts, but this practice was soon discontinued. The rich grazing fields began to attract attention, then gold was discovered, and the success of Australia was assured. Up to a few years ago the country was divided into a number of independent, self-governing colonies, but chiefly through the patriotic efforts of Sir Henry Parkes and a few other leading statesmen, plans were made to federate the various states on the model of the Canadian confederation. The effort was successful, and on the 1st of January, 1901, the Commonwealth of Australia was established. The population now numbers over four millions of people, and is constantly increasing. The people of Australia are no less hopeful

The Com.  
monwealth.

of their country than are the people of Canada, nor are they any the less loyal to the Empire of which they both form a part.

**311. The Empire of India.** In India the king of England as Emperor of India rules over nearly three hundred millions of people, for the most part native born. This great dominion, however, was not all acquired at once. When the Treaty of Paris was signed in 1763,



WARREN HASTINGS

a comparatively small part of India was in British hands. The government at that time was administered by the East India Company, a trading corporation established in 1600. In 1774 the home government assumed a partial control, and appointed Warren Hastings the first Governor-General. He ruled India wisely and well for eleven years, and during

Free British dominion was firmly established in the country. Doubtless in these troublous times he made mistakes, and when he returned to England, he was accused of cruelty and many other crimes, but after a trial which lasted seven years, he was honorably acquitted. From this time the expansion of the Indian Empire has been little short of marvellous. State after state has been added to the dominions of the crown. In some of these the native princes still rule, but the real power is with the Indian government.

Expansion  
of the  
Empire.

Up to the year 1858 the government of India was in the hands of the East India Company, assisted by a Governor-General and a council appointed by the crown. But the terrible Indian Mutiny showed clearly to the home government that they must take upon themselves the direct control of the country. And now India is governed as a part of the British Empire, with the king of England as its Emperor. A Governor-General and a council preside over its affairs, and in the Imperial house is a Secretary for India, who is a member of the cabinet and responsible to Parliament for the way in which the country is governed.

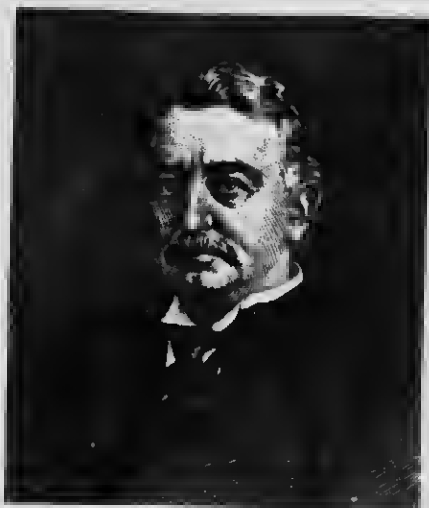
**Present  
govern-  
ment.**

With the growth of territory and the increase of the already enormous population, the difficulties of administration are becoming every day greater. But British rule in India has resulted in untold good to the native races. The country is governed for the benefit of the people who live in it, not for the profit of those who rule. Law and order have been established in all parts of the country; abuses have been abolished; education has been placed more and more within the reach of all; the fullest liberty of discussion is allowed, — these have been some of the advantages resulting to India from British rule. So long as these continue to be the guiding principles of those in authority, so long will the people be contented, British authority respected, and British sovereignty maintained.

**Benefits of  
British  
rule.**

**312. British South Africa.** What is destined to be the third great self-governing colony will probably be formed, before many years, from the states which at the present time are included in British South Africa. These are Cape Colony, Natal, the Orange River Colony, the Transvaal Colony, and Rhodesia. This latter

state is named after Cecil Rhodes, the man who first conceived the idea of forming a great British state within South Africa, and who all his life worked with that end in view. The British first gained a foothold in South Africa during the wars with Napoleon, when the country was captured from the Dutch. Successive conquests over native tribes, treaties with friendly chiefs, expeditions led by dauntless explorers, and fierce conflicts with the Dutch



CECIL RHODES

settlers or Boers, have gradually spread the bounds of British territory until now it includes almost the entire southern portion of the African continent. The population is not numerous, there being only about one million white men and about five million natives, but settlers are now beginning to flock into the country. The problem of how to deal with the native races meets Britain here, as well as in other places where she rules, but the policy of kindness and firmness which is being carried out in South Africa will certainly bring about the desired result.

**313. Remaining portions of the Empire.** In addition to Canada, Australia, India, and South Africa, Britain has possessions in all parts of the world. She is responsible for the affairs of Egypt, has possession of the Suez Canal, and through the victories of Lord



Kitchener, controls the valley of the Nile. She has established a protectorate over East, Central, and West Africa, with about half a million square miles of territory, and over fifty millions of native inhabitants. She holds Gibraltar, the key to the Mediterranean, and Aden, which commands the entrance to the Red Sea. In fact there is no quarter of the globe in which her flag does not fly, in which her influence is not felt.

**314. The growth of imperial sentiment.** During the last few years there has been growing up in all parts of the Empire a sentiment in favor of a closer union between the various parts of which it is composed. It is felt that where there is such a vast extent of territory and where there are so many interests in common, much good would result in many ways if a union of some kind were brought about. No definite scheme of union has yet been proposed, but a plan by which closer trade relations might be maintained between Great Britain and the colonies is favored by leading statesmen both in the mother country and in other parts of the Empire. The strongest advocate of this course is, perhaps, Mr. Joseph Chamberlain, who as Secretary of State for the Colonies, has done so much to weld the Empire together. But whether or not this closer connection is established,



JOSEPH CHAMBERLAIN

the loyalty of the outlying portions of the Empire to the motherland will not be lessened, nor will they hesitate to rally again to her side, should ever the necessity rise.

“ Shall we not through good and ill  
Cleave to one another still?  
Britain's myriad voices call,  
Sons, be welded each and all  
Into one Imperial whole,  
One with Britain heart and soul!  
One life, one flag, one fleet, one Throne!  
Britons, hold your own.”

TENNYSON.

re to  
hesi-  
ssity

## APPENDIX

### THE BRITISH EMPIRE

FROM THE LATEST OBTAINABLE STATISTICS

	Area in Square Miles	Population
<b>The British Empire . . . . .</b>	<b>12,171,120</b>	<b>395,960,000</b>

#### EUROPE

<b>THE BRITISH ISLES (including the Channel Islands and Isle of Man)</b>	<b>121,377</b>	<b>41,454,621</b>
England . . . . .	51,000	30,827,914
Wales . . . . .	7,378	1,698,161
Scotland . . . . .	30,000	4,472,000
Ireland . . . . .	31,759	4,456,546
<b>EUROPEAN POSSESSIONS</b>		
Gibraltar . . . . .	2	26,830
Malta and Gozo . . . . .	125	192,070

#### ASIA

Aden and Perim, Sokotra, etc. . . . .	1,467	53,910
British Borneo, Labuan, and Sara- wak . . . . .	84,031	688,411
Ceylon . . . . .	25,365	3,576,990
Cyprus . . . . .	3,584	237,022
Hong Kong . . . . .	426	334,400
India and Burmah . . . . .	1,700,000	294,266,701
Straits Settlements and Feudatory States . . . . .	40,000	1,567,967
Wei-hai-wei . . . . .	270	78,000

#### AFRICA

Cape Colony . . . . .	276,775	1,787,960
Natal (with Zululand). . . . .	35,019	929,970
Orange River Colony. . . . .	48,326	207,503
Transvaal Colony . . . . .	119,109	867,807

	Area in Square Miles	Population
Rhodesia . . . . .	643,000	1,350,000
Basutoland . . . . .	10,293	218,324
West Africa (Gambia, Sierra Leone, Gold Coast, and Lagos) . . . .	87,200	3,650,000
Mauritius, etc. . . . .	1,085	380,040
Seychelles Islands . . . . .	148	20,275
Central Africa Protectorate . . . .	58,000	1,000,000
East Africa Protectorate . . . . .	270,000	2,500,000
Nigeria Protectorate . . . . .	346,730	24,000,000
West Africa Protectorate . . . . .	30,000	500,000
Central Africa (Uganda) . . . . .	58,000	1,000,000

## AMERICA

The Dominion of Canada . . . . .	3,606,546	5,390,740
Newfoundland . . . . .	42,734	208,000
Labrador . . . . .	120,000	4,106
West India Islands . . . . .	12,329	1,442,829
Honduras . . . . .	7,562	31,471
British Guiana . . . . .	109,000	(est.) 286,484

## AUSTRALASIA

Commonwealth of Australia . . . .	2,973,076	3,788,310
New Zealand . . . . .	104,471	815,820

## ISLANDS

South Sea Islands . . . . .	22,311	330,000
Indian Ocean Islands . . . . .	1,085	401,146
Atlantic Islands . . . . .	4,894	25,140

# INDEX

- Acadia. See Nova Scotia.  
 Accused men allowed to have lawyers, 344.  
 Addison, Joseph, 286.  
 Aesop's Fables, translated by Henry I., 50, printed by Caxton, 146.  
 Afghan War, the, 350, 351.  
 Africa, British South, acquisition and growth of, 377, 378.  
 Agincourt, battle of, 139.  
 Aix-la-Chapelle, Treaty of, 302.  
 Alabama Claims, 357.  
 Albert, Prince Consort, 349.  
 Alfred the Great, Statue of (frontispiece): reign of, 24-27; his work for his kingdom, 25;  
 America, discovered by Columbus, 160; voyage of the Cabots, 160; visited by Frobisher, 205; visited by Raleigh, 210, 220; founding of Plymouth, 220; of Pennsylvania, 257; English gains in America during Anne's reign, 289; during the reign of George II., 306-9. See Colonies and United States.  
 Amiens, Peace of, 328.  
 Angevins, name, 64; genealogy of, 122; ——— empire of Henry II.  
 Angles, 14.  
 Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, begins, 26; 38, 42, 54, ends, 60.  
 Anjou, 56.  
 Annapolis (in Nova Scotia), 301.  
 Anne, character and portrait, 285; her favorites, 292, 291.  
 Anne of Cleves, 174, 175.  
 Anne of Denmark, picture, 217.  
 Anselm, Archbishop, 45, 50, 51.  
 Arabs, their treatment of pilgrims, 47.  
 Archer, English, picture, 109; archers at Crecy, 108, 109; at Agincourt, 130.  
 Armada, the Invincible, 200, 204; picture of the, 203.  
 Arthur, King, legends of, 13, 61, 74, 75, 82, 96, 101, 146.  
 Arthur, nephew of King John, 82.  
 Arthur, son of Henry VII., 159, 167.  
 Augustine, Saint; preaches Christianity in England, 17, 18.  
 Australia, discovered by Captain Cook, 375; establishment of the Commonwealth of, 373.  
 Balachava, battle of, 354.  
 Ball, John, picture of, 112, 115.  
 Ballads, 101, 102; ballad of Chevy Chase, 125; influence of the Robin Hood, 147; Sir Walter Scott's, 336.  
 Baltic, battle of the, 328.  
 Balliol, John, 97.  
 Bannockburn, battle of, 104, 105.  
 "Barebone's Parliament," 246.  
 Baronet, 218.  
 Barons, of Henry I., 61; cruelty of Stephen's, 58; John's quarrel with the, 84-88; led by De Montfort oppose Henry III., 91-93; condemn Gaveston, 104.  
 Bastille, picture of the, 323.  
 Bayeux, tapestry, 56; pictures from the, 32, 33, 35, 37.  
 Beaconsfield, Benjamin Disraeli, Lord, 363.  
 Beauchamp, 49, 50. See Henry I.  
 Becket, Thomas A., early manner of life, 66, 67; contest with Henry II., 67-71; disputing with Henry II., picture, 68; picture, 70; murder of, 71; 92; 119.  
 Bede, the Venerable, 10-21.  
 Bedford, John, Duke of, Protector, 133, 135.  
 Beggars, increase of and laws against, 172, 173.  
 Berevolences, originated by Edward IV., 145; abolished by Richard III., 150; revived by Henry VII., 158; favored by James I., 218; a form of, 224; vetoed by Parliament, 245.  
 Bengal, the Prince of, 307.  
 Beowulf, 15-17.  
 Bible, translated by Wiclif, 118; sold in Germany, 145; its sale forbidden in England, 146; translated by Tyndale, 177; translated in time of James I., 214; copy presented to Charles II., 253.  
 "Bill of Rights," 273.  
 Black Death, 111; effect on villeinage, 112, 113, 172.  
 Black Hole of Calcutta, 307.  
 Black Prince, at Poitiers, with pictures of effigy, 110; death, 115.  
 Blake, Admiral Robert, picture of medal commemorating his victory over the Dutch, 247.  
 Blenheim, battle of, 289, 290.  
 Bloemfontein, entered by Lord Roberts, 362.  
 Blois, 57.  
 Blondel, 79.  
 "Bloody Assizes," the, 266.  
 Blucher, Field Marshall, at Waterloo, 331.  
 "Blue-Coat School." See Christ's Hospital.  
 Board schools established, 358. See Education.  
 Boer War, the, 360-362.

- Boleyn, Anne, early life of, 167, 168; marries Henry VIII., 169; is executed, 173; 175, 183.
- Bonaparte, Joseph, 329. See also Napoleon.
- Border warfare, 124, 125.
- Boston, in the beginning of the American Revolution, 315.
- Bosworth Field, battle of, 152.
- Bothwell, James Hepburn, Earl of, 197.
- Boyne, battle of the, 280.
- Braddock, General, 305.
- Brandon, Charles, 164, 167, 180.
- Bright, John, 353.
- Britain, early knowledge of, 1; Caesar's invasion of, 3; Caesar's landing in (picture), 3; harassed by Scots, Picts and Saxons, 9, 12; gains and loss from Roman rule, 11; described by Bede, 20.
- British Empire, growth and extent of, 363.
- British Empire, Map of, 371; change of feeling in England towards colonies, 372, 373; other possessions of the, 378, 379; growth of Imperial sentiment 379.
- British Kings, Geoffrey of Monmouth's History of, 60.
- British North America Act, authorizes the formation of the Dominion of Canada, 374.
- Britons, the, Caesar's account of, 4-7; coracles of, (picture), 5; under the Romans, 9-11; "Groans of the Britons," 12; killed or expelled by the Saxons, 13; descendants of, 96.
- Bruce, Robert, King of Scotland, contest with Edward I., 99; besieges Stirling Castle, 104; wins at Bannockburn, 105.
- Buckingham, George Villiers, Duke of, 220.
- Bunker Hill, battle of, 316.
- Bunyan, John, portrait of, 256.
- Burgoyne, General, his surrender at Saratoga, 317.
- Burke, Edmund, 314; 335.
- Burleigh, William Cecil, Lord, 193, 199.
- Burning at the stake, the first, 125. See Persecution.
- Burns, Robert, 335.
- By, Danish word for town, 25.
- Cabal Ministry, the, 259.
- Cabinet, 272, 298, 299.
- Cabot, John and Sebastian, 160.
- Cadiz, Drake at, 201, 203.
- Cædmon, early English poet, 18, 19.
- Caesar, Julius, 160. See Britain.
- Calais, captured by Edward III., 109, 110; palace of Henry VIII., at, 164, 165; England loses, 187, 188.
- Calendar, correction of the, 310.
- Cambridge, University of, admits Dissenters, 358.
- Campbell, Sir Colin, 356.
- Camperdown, destruction of the Dutch fleet at, 326.
- Canada, the conquest of, 305, 306; Quebec taken by General Wolfe, 306; attitude of —, during England's war with the American Colonies, 317; Upper and Lower —, 373; British North America Act, 374.
- Canning, George, 329-30.
- Canning, Lord, Governor-General of India during the Mutiny, 355.
- Cannon, first used at Crécy, 109; picture of, 131; — of the state under control of the king, 155.
- Canterbury Cathedral, scene of A Becket's murder, with picture, 70, 71; penance of Henry II., at, 71.
- Canterbury Tales, 119, 120; picture of pilgrims, 120; printed by Caxton, 146.
- Canute, 27-29.
- Cape Colony, 377.
- Castles built by Normans, 39, 41; picture, 40; destroyed, 65.
- Catholics, in England under Henry VIII., 170, 171; under Mary, 184; under Elizabeth, 190, 192, 198, 202; under James I., 213, 214, 216; under Charles I., 222; under Charles II., 257, 260; under James II., 267-270; under William III., 272; Gordon riots, 319, 320; — in Ireland allowed to vote for members of Irish Parliament, 325; Catholic Emancipation Act, 339; disestablishment of the Irish Church, 350.
- Cavalier, picture of a, 235.
- Cawnpore, massacre at, 355; memorial at, 356.
- Caxton, William, 145-147; fac-simile of his printing, 146.
- Cecil, Sir William. See Burleigh.
- Chamberlain, Joseph, 379.
- Charge of the Light Brigade, 354.
- Charles I., his theory of the "divine right," 221; treachery in regard to his marriage, 222; appearance and character, 223; portrait, 223; his illegal taxation, 224; rules without Parliament, 228; revives the Star Chamber and the Court of High Commission, 228; persecutes the Puritans, 229; demands "ship-money," 230; forces the Prayer Book on Scottish Presbyterians 230; calls the "Long Parliament," 231; has trouble in Ireland, 231-233; tries to arrest members of Parliament, 234; Civil war, 236; his execution, 238; picture of his trial, 239.
- Charles II., seeks the throne during the Commonwealth, 242-244; becomes king, 252-255; his portrait, 254; his character and court, 255; persecutes Dissenters and Quakers, 256-257; is kind to sufferers by the great fire, 258; robs the Treasury, 260; is plotted against, 261; his death, 263.

- Charles Edward, the "young Pretender," attempts to regain the throne, 303, 304; portrait, 303.
- Charles V., the Emperor, 164, 166, 169, 173.
- Charles VII., of France, 135-138.
- Charleston, 315.
- Charter, of Henry I., 51, 84; of Stephen, 57; of Richard I., 78; of towns disregarded by John, 83; Magna Charta, with fac-simile extract, 85-87. See Chartists.
- Chartists, 351, 352.
- Chatham, Lord. See William Pitt.
- Chaucer, with portrait, 119, 120.
- Chester, or Castra, 8.
- Chevy Chase, ballad of, 125.
- Child-labor and law against, 342.
- Children, harsh treatment of, 134, 171.
- China, Opium War with, 350.
- Christianity preached in England by St. Augustine, 17; in Ireland by St. Patrick, 17.
- Christ's Hospital, 179, 180.
- Church, the, early and mediæval; riches of, 21, 22; ignorance of the priests in Alfred's time; supports William Rufus and is plundered by him, 43-45; supports Henry I. 51; punishments of, 67; John's quarrel with, 82, 83; neglects the poor, 114, 117; wealth of, 128; encourages Henry V. to make war upon France, 129; (the building) as a refuge, 149; the Protestant Reformation of, 167, 170; Henry VIII. becomes head of the English Church, 170; introduction of the English Prayer Book, 178; authority of the pope restored by Mary, 184; final separation from Church of Rome by Elizabeth, 190; number of members in time of Elizabeth, 198.
- Church of England. See Church.
- Puritans, and Presbyterians.
- Church of Ireland, disestablishment, 359. See Catholics and Ireland.
- Civil wars, between Stephen and Matilda, 50, 60; John and his barons, 84-88; of the Roses, 140-142, 152, 155; between Charles I. and Parliament, 235-238; in the United States. See United States.
- Clive, Robert, with portrait, 307.
- Clyde (River), 9.
- "Coeur de Lion." See Richard I.
- Coinage, punishment of coiners degrading, 53; monopolized by Henry II., 65; debased by Henry VIII., 171.
- Colin, colonia, 9.
- Colonial expansion, 363.
- Colonies, in America. See America and United States. England's feeling towards, 313, 315, 316, 317, 372, 373.
- Columbus, Christopher, 160.
- Commons. See Parliament.
- Commonwealth, time of, 241-246; picture of seal of, 245.
- "Confessor," the. See Edward the Confessor.
- Constantinople, captured by the Turks, 166.
- Convents, early wealth of, 22. See Monasteries.
- Copenhagen, battle of, 328.
- Coracles of early Britons, picture, 5.
- Corn-laws, and repeal of, 352-3.
- Cornwallis, General Lord, 317.
- Coronation chair, picture, 98.
- Corporation Act, repeal of, 338.
- Corunna, battle of, 330.
- Costume, pictures of, in the time of Henry I., 52, 54; in the time of Richard I., 81; in the 15th century, 140; in the time of Henry VII., 159; in the time of Elizabeth, 194; of soldiers in the time of Charles I., 225; in the time of Charles II., 261.
- Costume, in time of George I., 290; in time of George II., 310.
- Court of High Commission, 228, 231.
- Courts, cruelty of the, 67; of the barons', 73; district courts of Henry II., 73; require the English language, 114; unfairness of, 139.
- Covenanters, the, 287.
- Cowton Moor, battle of, 59.
- Cranmer, Archbishop Thomas, compiles the Book of Common Prayer, 178; burned at the stake, 186.
- Crécy, battle of, 108, 109; result of, 111, 112, 130, 172.
- Crimean War, 353, 354.
- Cromwell, Oliver, attempts to sail to America, 229; his "Ironsides," 236; commands the army, 237; seizes Charles I., 238; holds chief power, 241, 242; picture, 243; his Irish campaign, 243; his Scottish campaign, 243; dissolves Parliament, 244; becomes Lord Protector, 246; increases the naval power of England, 247; protects the Waldenses, 248; permits the return of the Jews, is kind to the Quakers, 249; last years, death and burial, 250, 251; his body beheaded, 254.
- Cromwell, Richard, 251.
- Cromwell, Thomas, with portrait, 174, 175.
- Crossbowmen, Genoese, at Crécy, with picture, 108.
- Crusades, 46-48; effigy of a crusader, 47; connection with the legend of the Holy Grail, 75; Richard I. as a crusader, 78, 79; the children's crusade, 93, 94; gain from, 94, 95; 112.
- Culloden, battle of, 304.
- Curfew, 41.
- Da Gama, 161.
- Danes, harass England, 10, 22-25; coming of the, picture, 23; as kings of England, 27-29; descendants of, 97.
- Darien Company, the, 287.
- Darnley, Henry Stuart, Lord, 196.

- Dauphin, French, invited to rule England, 87.  
 Declaration, of Rights, 271; of Independence, American, 316; of Indulgence, 338.  
 "Defender of the Faith," 167, 170.  
 Defoe, Daniel, 267.  
 "Deserted Village," 337.  
 Dettingen, battle of, 302.  
 Dickens, Charles, portrait of, 365.  
 Dictator over English language, Samuel Johnson, 334.  
 Dictionary, compiled by Johnson, 334.  
 Directorate, in France, 347.  
 Discoveries of Columbus, the Cabots, and Vasco da Gama, 160-162; of Drake, 201; of Raleigh and Frobisher, 205; of Captain Cook, 375.  
 "Divine right," the belief of James I., 216, 217; of Charles I., 222; of James II., 267.  
 Douglas family, 125.  
 Dover, cliffs, picture of, 2.  
 Drake, Sir Francis, with picture, 201; vice admiral, 202; 203.  
 Dress, expense of, in Elizabeth's time, 194.  
 Druids, the, 5-7.  
 Dudley, Lord Guilford, 180-182, 186.  
 Dudley, Robert, See Leicester.  
 Dunbar, battle of, 243.  
 Duncan, Admiral, 336.  
 Dunkirk, acquired by England, 247.  
 Du Quesne, Fort (in America), 305-6.  
 Durham Cathedral, picture, 50.  
 Durham, Lord, sent to Canada, recommends the union of Upper and Lower Canada, 374.  
 Dwellings, of Britons, 4, 9; of Romans in Britain, 9; of Saxons (picture), 15; of rich and poor in Elizabeth's time, 192-195.  
 East India Company, 306, 376, 377.  
 Ecclesiastical History, 20; translated by Alfred the Great, 26.  
 Edgehill, battle of, 236.  
 Education, convent schools in early England, 19, 22; encouraged by Alfred the Great, 25, 26; board schools established, 358. See Learning.  
 Edward I., as prince, 91; goes on a crusade, 93; his representative Parliament, 96; conquers Wales and gives it a prince, 96, 97; tries to conquer Scotland, 97-99; banishes the Jews, 99, 100; death, 99.  
 Edward II., favorites of, 104, 105; is deposed, 105, 106.  
 Edward III., marches against Scotland, 106; seeks the French crown, 107-111.  
 Edward IV., accession, 141, 142; loses the support of Warwick, 144; portrait, 144; is restored to the crown, 144; originates "benevolences," 145; 149.  
 Edward V., 148-151; in the Tower, picture, 151; impersonated by Warbeck, 157.  
 Edward VI., birth, 173; 175; character, 176; portrait, 177; hears Latimer preach, 177; Prayer Book of, 178; establishes schools, 179, 180; his will and death, 181; his council, picture, 179.  
 Edward VII., 369.  
 Edward the Confessor, becomes king, 30; promises his crown to William of Normandy, 31; recommends Harold, 32; builds Westminster Abbey, 30; 107.  
 Egbert, "King of the English," 21; drives away the Danes, 24.  
 Elba, 330.  
 Eliot, John, 249.  
 Elizabeth, birth and early life, 173, 175, 181, 183, 186, 188; portrait, 189; accession, 189; declares herself a Protestant, 190; is crowned, 190, 191; is carried in state, picture, 191; her difficulties, 191, 193; manner of living in her reign, 193, 195; conduct toward Mary of Scotland, 195-200; excommunicated, 205; English devotion to, 205; Elizabethan literature, 205-208; character, 208, 209.  
 Elizabeth (of York), Lancaster and York united by her marriage to Henry VII., with her portrait, 156.  
 Emma, 27; marries Canute, 29, 30.  
 Empress of India, Victoria proclaimed as, 357.  
 England, early connection of Ireland with, 232; condition of, 332.  
 "English and Spaniards," 186.  
 "English Pale," 72.  
 Epitaph of Charles II., 255.  
 Essays of Elia, 336.  
 Essex, Robert Devereux, Earl of, 232.  
 Evesham, battle of, 91-93.  
 "Exclusion Bill," 262.  
 Excommunication, 70; of John, 83; of Luther, 167; of Henry VIII., 171; of Elizabeth, 202.  
 Factories, first built, 333; law regulating children's labor in, 342.  
 Faerie Queene, 206.  
 Fairfax, Sir Thomas, 237.  
 Famine, in Ireland, 353.  
 Favorites, of Edward II., 104, 105; of James I., 217, 218; of Anne, 290, 291.  
 Fawkes, Guy, 216.  
 Ferdinand, king of Spain, 159, 160.  
 Feudalism, in England under the Conqueror, 37, 38; affected by scutage 66; by the Crusades, 93, 95; by Crécy, 111; by the Black Death, 112; disappearance of, 155; remains of, in France, 321.  
 Fire-ships, 204.  
 Fisher, Bishop John, 171.



- Flanders, ally of England, 107; fine weaving introduced from, 112; Caxton living in, 145.  
 Flodden Field, battle of, 164.  
 Florence, the refuge of Greeks in, 166.  
 Forth (River), 9.  
 Fotheringay Castle, 200.  
 France, subdued by Caesar, 1; English possessions in, 73; English possessions in, forfeited by John, 82; the Hundred Years' War, 107-138; Joan of Arc's deliverance of, 145-148; England fears becoming a province of, 196; influence of, on English literature in Anne's time, 286; opposes Maria Theresa, 302; French power in India, 307; recognizes American Independence, 317; declares war against England, 325. See Revolution, French.  
 Francis I., king of France, 164-166.  
 Francis II., king of France, 195, 196.  
 Frederick the Great, 304.  
 Freedom of the press, 273.  
 "Freeman, Mrs.," 291.  
 French language, spoken at the English court, 60; romance brought to England, 60; learned by the English, 100; English borrows words from, 100; Frenchmen learn English, 100.  
 Froisher, Martin, 202, 205.  
 Froissart, 110.  
 Frontenac, Fort, 306.  
 Gama, Vasco da, 161, 162.  
 Gaveston, Piers, 104.  
 Geldes, Janet, 230.  
 Genealogy, of Norman kings, 63; of Angevins, 122; of Lancaster, York, and Tudor sovereigns, 154; of the Tudors, 210; of the Stuarts, 293; of the Hanoverians, 371.  
 Geneva award, 357.  
 Genoese crossbowmen, with picture, 108, 109.  
 Gentleman, the knight the ideal, 76.  
 Geoffrey of Anjou, 56, 59, 64.  
 Geoffrey of Monmouth, 60, 74.  
 George I., accession, with picture, 294; his treatment of James Edward's supporters, 296; his absence from cabinet meetings, 299.  
 George II., accession, 299; opposes Walpole, 300; portrait, 301; fights at Dettingen, 302; his unpopularity, 309.  
 George III., as Prince of Wales, 300; accession, character, with portrait, 312; his persistency in the American Revolution, 314, 315; acknowledges the independence of the United States, 317; opposes religious freedom, 326; regency of his son, 333; literature during his reign, 334-336.  
 George IV., as regent, 333; accession, character, with portrait, 337.  
 "George Eliot," 366.  
 George, Saint, 284.  
 Gibraltar, 201.  
 Gladstone, William Ewart, with picture, 359-363, 364.  
 Glastonbury, abiding place of the Holy Grail, 74.  
 Globe Theatre, picture, 208.  
 Gloucester, Duke of, uncle of Henry VI., 133.  
 Godwin, Earl of Wessex, 29.  
 "Golden Age of English Literature," 206.  
 Goldsmith, Oliver, 325.  
 Gordon, Lord George, 320.  
 Gordon riots, 319, 320.  
 Government, origin of some modern customs of, 290.  
 "Grand Remonstrance," 233.  
 Great Britain, formation of the kingdom, 288.  
 "Great Commoner." See William Pitt.  
 Greeks arouse interest in the old knowledge, 165; Greek scorned by the English clergy, 166.  
 Greenland, 205.  
 Gregory, Pope, 17.  
 Grendel, 15, 16.  
 Grey, Lady Jane, with portrait, 180, 181; sent to the Tower, 182; her twelve days' reign, 182; Mary signs her death warrant, 186.  
 "Groans of the Britons," 12.  
 Guilds, 195, 206.  
 Gunpowder Plot, with picture of the conspirators, 214-216.  
 "Guy Fawkes' Day," 216.  
 Habeas Corpus Act, 263.  
 Hampden, John, attempt to sail to America, 229; refuses to pay unjust taxes, with portrait, 230; killed in battle, 237.  
 Hanging Stones, 7.  
 Hanover, fears of George II. for, 299; his interest in, 303; England free from, 336; House of Hanover, genealogy of, 271.  
 Harbingers, 186.  
 Harfleur, besieged by Henry V., 130.  
 Harold, Earl of Wessex, in Normandy, 31, 32; at the battle of Senlac, 34-36.  
 Hastings, battle of. See Senlac.  
 Hastings, Warren, First Governor-General of India, 376.  
 Havelock, General, 306.  
 Hawke, Lord, 308.  
 Hawkins, Sir John, 202.  
 Henry I. (Beauclerc) receives silver from his father, 42, 43; accession and character, 51; invades and conquers Normandy, 52; punishes coiners and regulates "purveying," 53; his severe taxation, 54; marriage 55; loses his son, 55; plans for Matilda to succeed him, 56; death, 56.  
 Henry II. (Plantagenet), 64; destroys castles, 60; reforms the coinage, 65;

- introduces scutage, 65; his contest with a Hecket, 66-71; his penance at Canterbury, 71; subdues part of Ireland, 71; his judicial reforms, 73; death, 74.
- Henry III., the first child king, with picture of his coronation, 89, 90; demands money to secure the Sicilian crown, 91; opposes de Montfort and the other barons, 91-93; building during his reign, picture, 92.
- Henry IV., chosen by Parliament, 121; his Welsh campaign, 123-125; makes war upon France, 124; portrait of Henry and his court, 124; his relations with his son, 126; death, 126, 128.
- Henry V., as prince, 126, 127; generosity to his foes, 128; partially conquers France, 129-132; death, 132.
- Henry VI., unhappy childhood, 133, 134; his French lands, 133-138; becomes insane, 139; captured by the Earl of Warwick, 141; deposed, 142; restored, 144; imprisoned, 145.
- Henry VII., betrothed to the daughter of Edward IV. of York, 151; wins at Bosworth Field and is crowned, 152; portrait, 156; methods of raising money, 157, 158; does not aid Columbus, sends the Cabots, 160; chapel of, picture, 161.
- Henry VIII., early traits, with portrait, 162-164; meets Francis near Calais, 164; his interest in the Renaissance, 166; becomes "Defendar of the Faith," 167; his struggle for a divorce from Katharine and his marriage to Anne Boleyn, 167-170; his persecutions, 170, 171; seizes the smaller monasteries, debases the coinage, 171; executes Anne and marries Jane Seymour, 173; marries Anne of Cleves, 174; divorces her, 175; his will, 175, 177, 180, 183; planned a marriage for his son with Mary Queen of Scots, 195.
- Hill, Rowland, introduces Penny Postage, 350.
- History of British kings, 60; history written, 60, 101, 102.
- Holland, the Pilgrims' refuge, 220; relations with England during the Protectorate, 247.
- Holy Grail, legend of, 74; connection with the crusades, 75.
- Holy Land, ruled by Arabs, 46, 47; ruled by Turks, 48, 78, 93, 126.
- "Home Rule," for Ireland, 360.
- Hood, Robin, ballads of, 101; their influence on the English people, 147.
- Hooper, John, Bishop, 186.
- "Hotspur," Harry Percy, so-called, 125, 128.
- Howard, Admiral, 202, 209.
- Hudson Bay, 292.
- Hundred Years' War, cause, 107; in time of Edward III., 107-111; 115; ends, 118; effects of, 130, 141.
- "Inclosing," 172, 178, 179.
- Independents, go to America, 221; in the war between Charles I. and Parliament, 238, 241.
- India, the English in, 306; English rule established in, 308; Sepoy Mutiny, 354-357; Queen Victoria becomes Empress of, 357; the acquisition and expansion of the Empire of, 376, 377; present government in, 377; benefits of British rule in, 377.
- Inquisition, 185.
- Interdict, John's kingdom placed under, 82.
- Inventions, steam engine and machines for spinning and weaving, 323; of the nineteenth century, 351, 352.
- Ireland, early churches and schools in, 17; partially subdued by Henry II., 72; ruled by John, 72; "Strongbow" in, 72; review of England's connection with, 231, 232; revolt against Charles I., 233; supports Charles II., 242; Cromwell's campaign in, 243; supports James II., 274-277; the English Parliament claims the right to make laws for, 292; Roman Catholics shut out of Parliament of, 320; Irish Parliament represents only members of the Church of England, 321; commercial limitations of, 321; raises troops and demands reforms, 321; obliged to support the Church of England, 325; Reign of Terror, 325; Irish allowed to vote for Protestants as members of the Irish Parliament, 325; united with England, 325; attempts of France and Spain to free, 325; the Irish flag and the "Union Jack," picture, 326; famine in, 353; the "land question," 359; Church of England disestablished in, 359; gain in the land tenure, 359; "home rule," 360; local self-government granted, 360.
- "Ironside," 237.
- Isabella, child queen of Richard II., 121; sent back to France, 124.
- Isabella, queen of Spain, 159, 160.
- Jacobites, 276, 280, 304.
- James I., birth, 196; proclaimed king of Scotland, 197; accession, appearance, 211; portrait, 212; confers with Puritan ministers, 213; his belief in the "divine right," 216, 217; favorites, conflict with Parliament, 217, 218; dealings with Spain, 218-220; executes Raleigh, 219; death, 220.
- James II., comes to England with Charles II., 252, 261, 262; accession, 263; Monmouth's rebellion and James's revenge, 263-265; arbitrary rule of, 267; attempt to restore the Roman Catholic Church to power in England, 268; imprisons the seven bishops, 269; portrait, 270; abdicates the throne, 270; tries to regain the throne, 276-277; death, 284.

- James Edward (the Pretender), 284; attempts to gain the crown, 295, 296.  
 Jeanne d'Arc. See Joan of Arc.  
 Jeffreys, Judge George, with portrait, 265, 266; death, 271.  
 Jerusalem, 46; ruled by Saracens, 75, 79, 94; Jerusalem Chamber, 126.  
 Jervis, Admiral, 326.  
 Jesuits, 109.  
 Jews, robbed for the crusade of Richard I., 78; robbed by John, 81; banished by Edward I., 99, 100; allowed to return by Cromwell, 352; in Parliament, 358.  
 Joan of Arc, with picture of Statue, 135-138.  
 John, rules Ireland, 79; rebels against his father, 74; tries to keep Richard I. in prison, 80; murders his nephew, loses his French lands, 82; quarrels with church and barons, 82-88; his cruelty and injustice, 83; signs Magna Charta, 85; death, 88.  
 Johnson, Samuel, 314.  
 Jonson, Ben., 207.  
 Jewish boat, picture, 13.  
 Katharine of Aragon, unmarried, Prince Arthur, 159, 160; marries Henry VIII., 167, 173, 175.  
 Kensington, Palace of, 344.  
 Kent, king of Kent accepts Christianity, 17, 18.  
 King George's War. See War of Austrian Succession.  
 "King Monmouth," See Monmouth.  
 "King of the English," title assumed by Egbert, 21.  
 Kirke, Colonel Percy, 265.  
 "Kirke's Lambs," 265.  
 Knighthood, becoming a knight, with picture, 76, 77; the good and the bad in, 77; effigy of a knight, 78; picture of knights in armor, 129; knights at Agincourt, 130, 131.  
 "Knights of the Royal Oak," 256.  
 Labrador, 295.  
 "Land," 82.  
 La Hogue, naval battle of, 282.  
 Lamb, Charles, 336.  
 Lancaster, House of, conflict with House of York, 140-152, *passim*; genealogy of kings of, 154.  
 Land, belonging to the king, 37, 38; changes in ownership caused by the crusades, 94, 95; land, not people, represented in Parliament, 341.  
 Land question, the Irish, 359.  
 Langland, William, writes "Piers Plowman," 114.  
 Langton, Archbishop Stephen, 82; leads the barons against John, 83.  
 Language, the English, William the Conqueror tries to learn it, 39; spoken by the masses of the people, 60; gained many new words from the French, 100, 101; courts of justice require English, 114; becomes the literary language 120; laws printed in, 150; used in the church service, 178; softened by the French, 205.  
 Language, French, used at court, 60.  
 See Language, the English.  
 Language, Latin, used in church and convent, 20, 60; Alfred the Great translates Latin books into English, 26; Henry I. translates from Latin to English, 50.  
 Latimer, Bishop Hugh, preaches before Edward VI., 177; burning of, 186.  
 Land, Archbishop William, 227, 228, 231.  
 Lawrence, Brigadier, 355.  
 Learning, of the Druids, 7; of early Ireland, 17; classic learning revived (Renaissance), 166.  
 Leicester, Robert, Earl of, 193.  
 Leopold, Duke of Austria, 78, 79.  
 "Levelers," 242.  
 Lexington, 316.  
 Literature, English, Caedmon, 18, 191.  
 Bede, 19-21; Beowulf, Epic of, 15, 17; Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, begun, 26; ended, 60; King Alfred's writings, 26; history written, 60, 101; ballads of Robin Hood, 191; Langland writes Piers Plowman, 114; Chaucer, 119, 120; ballads, not books, composed in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, 146, 147; of the Elizabethan age, 203-208; plays in the time of James I., 217; Milton writes Paradise Lost, 248, 249, with picture of Milton; Bunyan writes Pilgrim's Progress, 256; Defoe writes Robinson Crusoe, 267; the age of prose, 286; novel of home life, in reign of George II., 300; of reign of George III., 334; of Victoria's reign, 365-367.  
 Loire (River), 134.  
 London, gives vessels to meet the Armada, 202; threatened by James I., 218; Great Plague in, 257; Great Fire of, 258; robbed by Charles II., 260; set fire to in the Gordon riots, 320.  
 Londonderry, founded, 233; siege of, 279, 280.  
 "Long Parliament," 231.  
 Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth, 26.  
 Louis, XIV., 260; supports James II., 279.  
 Louis XVI., 323.  
 Louisburg, 306.  
 Lucknow, siege of, 355.  
 Luther, Martin, 167, 170.  
 Macaulay, Thomas Babington, Lord, with portrait, 360, 367.  
 Macdonald, Flora, 104.  
 Magna Charta, with fac-simile extract from, 85-87.  
 Majuba Hill, 361.  
 Manitoba, the Province of, 374.  
 Map, Walter, 74.  
 March, Edmund Mortimer, Earl of, 121, 123, 125, 128, 140.

- Marcus Aurelius, 368.  
 Margaret, wife of Henry VI., 141-144.  
 Maria Theresa, 301, 311.  
 Marlborough, John Churchill, Duke of, with portrait, 282.  
 Marlborough, Sarah, Duchess of, with portrait, 291.  
 Marlowe, Christopher, 207.  
 Marston Moor, Battle of, 237.  
 Mary I. (Mary Tudor), disinherited by Parliament, 173, 175, 181; proclaimed queen and crowned, 182, 183; early life, 183; her religion, marriage, 184, 186; persecution of Protestants, 186, 187; deserted by Philip, 187; loses Calais, 187; contrast between her early life and Elizabeth's, 188.  
 Mary II., marriage to William of Orange, 270; accession jointly with her husband, 271; portrait, 275; repels the invasion of Louis XIV., with commemorative medal, 281-2; character, 283.  
 Mary (Sister of Henry VIII.), 164, 167, 180.  
 Mary, Queen of Scots, early life, 195; claim to the English throne, with portrait, 196; marries Lord Darnley, 196; resigns the Scottish throne, 197; escapes from Lochleven and flees to England, 197, 198; is imprisoned and executed, 199, 200.  
 Masham, Mrs. favorite of Queen Anne, 291.  
 "Master Aylmer," 181.  
 Matilda, wife of William the Conqueror, 33, 36.  
 Matilda, wife of Henry I., 55.  
 Matilda, daughter of Henry I., chosen by her father as his successor, 56; her contest with Stephen, 57-60.  
 Mediterranean (Sea), Roman territories about, 7; control of sought by Russia, 345.  
 Methodism, rise of, 299, 300.  
 Milan, Duchess of, refuses to marry Henry VIII., 173.  
 Milton, John, with portrait, 248.  
 Minden, battle of, 308.  
 Minstrel, with picture, 101, 102; salary of, 147.  
 Mistress of the Robes, 347.  
 Monarchy, early character of, 216, 217; Egbert of Wessex rises to supremacy, 21; Danish conquest of the crown, 27; election of Harold (not of the royal family), 32; William the Conqueror becomes king by conquest, 32-36, and by election, 36; charter of Henry I., 51; the question of succession to the crown on the death of Henry I., 55; election of Stephen, 60; Election of Henry II., 60; election of John, 82; Magna Charta signed, 83; Henry III., the first child-king chosen, 88; beginning of a representative Parliament, 91; Parliament deposes Edward II. and gives the crown to Edward III., 105; Richard II. is deposed and Parliament gives the crown to Henry IV., 121; Wars of the Roses between the rival royal houses of York and Lancaster, 140-152, *passim*; usurpation of Richard III., 150; accession of Henry VII. by victory of Bosworthfield, 152; despotic rule of Henry VIII., 170, 175; succession to the crown arranged by Parliament's conformation to the king's will, 175; accession of Mary Tudor, the first female sovereign, 182; religious dictation of the Tudors, 170, 178, 184, 191, 192; claims of Elizabeth and of Mary Stuart to the crown, 195, 196; the crowns of England and of Scotland united under James I., 212; James's assertion of the "divine right," 216; his arbitrariness, 217; conflict of Charles I. with Parliament, 224, 229, 231, 233-245; civil war between Charles I. and Parliament, execution of the king, and overthrow of the monarchy, 235-241; restoration of the monarchy, 252; failure of the "Exclusion Bill," 262; arbitrary rule and forced abdication of James II., 266-270; Parliament gives the crown to William and Mary, 270; limitations of the sovereign agreed to by William, 271; Parliament gives the throne to Anne 284, and after her to the House of Hanover, 284; under George I., the sovereign's power decreases, 299; two political parties, Whigs and Tories, 299; Walpole increases power of the cabinet, 300; attempted increase of the royal powers under George III., 312; limitations of the royal power, 316, 347.  
 Monasteries seized by Henry VIII., 171; Parliament refuses to restore the land of, 184.  
 Monk, General George, 251.  
 Monmouth, the Duke of, proposed for the throne, 262; rebellion of, with portrait, 263-265.  
 Monmouth, Geoffrey of, 64, 74.  
 "Monopolies," 228.  
 Montcalm, Marquis de, 306.  
 Montfort, Simon de, leads the barons against Henry III., 91-93; his work, 93, 96.  
 Moore, Sir John, 330.  
 Mora, the, 33.  
 More, Sir Thomas, 171.  
 Morley, Mrs., 291.  
 Mortimer, Edmund, Earl of March, 121.  
 Mortimer, favorite of the mother of Edward II., 105-107.  
 "Morton's Fork," 158.  
 Moscow, 324.  
 Mystery plays, with picture, 61-63, 207.  
 Napoleon, Bonaparte, his rise to power, 326, his wars, with portrait, 327-330; medal to commemorate his expected conquest of England, 329; becomes

- Emperor, 128; his defeat at Waterloo and exile, 311.  
 Naseby, battle of, 237.  
 Naseby (vessel). See "Royal Charles."  
 Natal, 359, 377.  
 "Navigation Laws," 317.  
 Navy, of England, begun by Alfred the Great, 27; at the time of Harold, 34; at the time of the Armada, 202; war ship of Henry VIII., picture, 163; naval glory under Cromwell, 247; in conflict with France and with the United States, 333.  
 Nelson, Admiral Horatio, with portrait, in the battle of the Nile, 327, 328; in the Baltic, 328, and off Trafalgar, 329.  
 New Forest, 41; scene of the death of Richard and William Rufus, 48.  
 New Brunswick, 373, 374.  
 Newfoundland, 391.  
 New Orleans, battle of, 334.  
 New Zealand, 375.  
 Nightingale, Florence, with portrait, 354.  
 Nile, battle of the, 327.  
 "Non-Jurors," 276.  
 Norrnan, vessel, picture, 33; conquest, 35, 36; castles in England with picture, 39, 40; influence in England, 43; soldiers, picture, 44; kings, genealogy of, 63.  
 Normandy, sons of Emma brought up in, 29; Harold wrecked on coast of, 31; united with England under William the Conqueror, 36; willed to Robert, 42; inorrigated to William Rufus, 46; conquered by Henry I., 52; lawlessness under Stephen, 58; conquest by Geoffrey of Anjou, 61; lost by John, 82.  
 North, Frederick, Lord, 314, 315.  
 North Cape, discoverer of, 26.  
 Northumberland, John Dudley, Duke of, 178-182.  
 Northumbria, 20.  
 North-West Territories, the, of Canada, 374.  
 Northwest Passage, 205.  
 Nottingham, 235.  
 Nova Scotia, acquired from France, 291, 292; possession confirmed, 301, 373, 374.  
 Novels—historical novels of Scott, 326; of home life, 309, 335; present popularity of, 367.  
 "Oak-apple Day," 254.  
 Oates, Titus, 261.  
 Oath, chief men swear to support Matilda, 56; barons swear to oppose John, 84; chief men swear allegiance to Edward I., 95; oath of fealty to Edward II. renounced, 105, 106; oath taken by William III., 274; of allegiance to William III. refused by non-jurors, 276; required by the Test Act, 318.  
 O'Connell, Daniel, 320, 327.  
 Odo, half brother of William the Conqueror, 38, 39.  
 Opium War, 350.  
 Orange Free State, 360-361.  
 Orange River Colony, 377.  
 Orleans, siege of, 135-137.  
 Oudenarde, battle of, 292.  
 Oxford, Matilda escapes from, 22; early library of University of, 118; University of, admits Dissenters, 158.  
 Page, duties of, 76.  
 Pale, the English, 232.  
 Palestine, 47.  
 Paradise Lost, 249.  
 Paris, Treaty of, formally cedes Canada to Great Britain, 373, 376.  
 Parkes, Sir Henry, 374.  
 Parliament, beginning of the House of Commons, 91; the first organized representative parliament, 90; gains power by the Hundred Years War, 139; members not freely elected, 139; expulsion of Presbyterians from, 238; House of Lords abolished (210), and restored, 252; dissolution of, by Cromwell, 245, 246; "Barebone's," 246; reforms in electing men, 275 of, 340; limitations and decline of the Lords, 347; 348; power of the Commons, 348; limitations of membership of the Commons, 351. See also Monarchy.  
 Parties, religious, in the reign of Elizabeth, 292; Cavaliers and Roundheads, 236; in the time of the Commonwealth, 342; in the time of William and Mary, 276; Whigs and Tories in the time of George I., 290.  
 Patrick, Saint, preaches in Ireland, 17.  
 Peasants' revolt, 115-117.  
 Peel, Sir Robert, 336.  
 Penance of Henry II., 71.  
 Peninsular War, 320.  
 Penn, William, 257.  
 Pennsylvania, 257.  
 "Penny Postage," 350.  
 "People's Charter," 352.  
 Percy, Harry (Hotspur), 125, 128.  
 Persecution, religious, first burning at the stake, 125; under Henry VIII., 170, 171; under Mary, 185-187; under James I., 214, 220; under Charles I., 229; of Waldenses, 228; under Charles II., 256, 257, of Scottish Presbyterians, under James II., 267.  
 Peter the Hermit, 47.  
 Petition of peasants to Richard II., 116; of Puritans to James I., 211; "Petition of Rights," 225, 226. See Churchists.  
 Pevensey, 34.  
 Philip of Castile, 159.  
 Philip, of France, as a crusader, 78; attempts to imprison Richard I., 79-80; deprives John of his French lands, 82; son of Philip invited to rule England, 87.  
 Philip II., of Spain, marries Mary I., with portrait, 184-186; deserts her, 187.

- woos Elizabeth, 190; sends the Armada, 200-204.  
 Philippa, wife of Edward III., pleads for the citizens of Calais, 110; introduces fine wool weaving, 112.  
 Picts, harass England, 9, 12, 13; descendants of, 97.  
 Piers Plowman, 114.  
 Pilgrimage to Canterbury. See Canterbury Tales; of Canute, 28; a deed of merit, 46.  
 "Pilgrim Fathers," 220.  
 Pilgrim's Progress, 256.  
 Pitt, William (Earl of Chatham), with portrait, 303, 305.  
 Pitt, the younger, 318.  
 Plague, the Great, 257.  
 Plantagenet, derivation of the word, 64; king at table, picture, 96; genealogy of royal house, 122.  
 Plays in Elizabeth's time, 206, 207; in time of James I., 217; scorned by the Puritans, 249. See Mystery Plays.  
 Plymouth, 203.  
 Plymouth (in the United States), 220.  
 Poetry, in Elizabeth's time, 206; in Anne's time, 286; in time of George III., 335-6.  
 Poitiers, battle of, 110.  
 Poor, sufferings of the, under Henry VIII., 171, 172; sufferings of renters of small farms, 167-179; hard lives of the, 105; suffering caused by the invention of machinery, 332.  
 "Poor Priests," 117.  
 Pope, Alexander, 286.  
 "Poundage," 224.  
 Pounds, John, 358.  
 Prayer Book, the English, compiled, 178; forced upon the Scottish Presbyterians, 230.  
 Presbyterians, 211, 213, 230; conflict between them and the Puritans, 237, 241; persecuted in Scotland by James II., 268.  
 Preston Pans, battle of, 303.  
 Pretender. See James Edward.  
 Pretoria, capture of, 362.  
 "Pride's Purge," 238.  
 "Prince Charlie." See Charles Edward.  
 "Prince of Wales," origin of the title, 96, 97.  
 Printing invented and brought to England, 145, 146; fac-simile of Caxton's, 148; effect upon the Renaissance, 166.  
 "Privilege," 234-5.  
 Privy Council, 259.  
 Protectorate, the, 246-252.  
 Protestant Reformation, beginning of, 167.  
 Punishments, severity of, 332.  
 Puritans, Puritanism, rise of, 192; under James I., 213, 220; under Charles II., 256; ministers in the Great Plague, 258, 259.  
 Purveyors, brought under laws, 53.  
 Quaker, 249, 257, 267.  
 Quebec, capture of, 306.  
 Quiberon Bay, battle of, 308.  
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 202, 205; with portrait, 219.  
 Ramilius, battle of, 290.  
 Rasselas, 334, 335.  
 Reformation begun by teaching of Luther, 167, 170.  
 Reform Bill, 341-342.  
 Reign of Terror, in France, 324; in Ireland, 325.  
 Renaissance, 166.  
 "Restoration" of Charles II., 252.  
 Revolution (American), the Stamp Act, with picture of stamp, 313, 314; beginning of the war, 316; its close, 317.  
 Revolution (French), oppression of French peasants, 321, 322; destruction of the Bastille, with picture, 322, 323; excesses of the revolutionists, 324; the Reign of Terror, 324; English feeling towards, 324.  
 Revolution, industrial, 332.  
 Revolution of 1688, 277, 278.  
 Rheims, 136-138.  
 Rhodes, Cecil, 378.  
 Rhodesia, origin of name, 378.  
 Richard I., revolts, 75; his name, Cœur de Leon, 77; character of, 77, 80; as a crusader, 78; imprisonment and ransom, with picture, 79; taxes his people, 78; death, 80, 81.  
 Richard II. meets an angry mob, 115, 116; marries the child Isabella of France, is deposed, 121; imprisonment of, 123; his body shown in St. Paul's Cathedral, 123.  
 Richard III., becomes Protector, 148; becomes king, abolishes benevolences, prints the laws in English, said to have murdered his nephew, 150, 151; is slain at Bosworth Field, 152.  
 Richard, Duke of York (died 1460), his claim to the throne, 140, 141; is slain in battle and leaves a son, who becomes Edward IV., 141.  
 Richard, son of Duke Robert, killed in the New Forest, 48.  
 Ridley, Bishop Nicholas, 186.  
 "Right of Search," 333.  
 Rizzio, David, 196.  
 Robert, half brother of William the Conqueror, 38.  
 Robert, son of William the Conqueror, 42, 43, 46; with effigy, 47, 48, 50-53.  
 Robinson Crusoe, 267.  
 Rochelle, 225.  
 "Rocket," the first locomotive, picture, 343.  
 Rogers, John, 186.  
 Roman Britain, map of, 8; walls, with picture, 9, 10; rule in Britain, 11.  
 Roman Catholic Church. See Catholic Church.

- Romans, at home, 7; in Britain, 8-10; leave Britain, 10.  
 Rome, Canute making a pilgrimage to, 28; value of a pilgrimage to, 46.  
 Roses, Wars of. See Wars of the Roses.  
 "Rotten boroughs," 341.  
 Rouen, 244.  
 Roundheads, with picture, 235, 236.  
 "Royal Charles," with picture, 251.  
 "Royal Oak," 256. See Knights of the Royal Oak.  
 Runnymede, with picture, 85.  
 Rupert, Prince of the Palatinate, 237.  
 Russell, Admiral, 282.  
 Russia, Napoleon's invasion of, 330.  
 Rye House Plot, 261.  
 Ryswick, treaty of, 282.  
 "Sailor King." See William IV.  
 Saint Helena, 331.  
 St. Vincent, naval battle of, 326.  
 Salisbury Plain, 7.  
 Sanctuary, right of, 149; at Westminster, with picture, 149.  
 Saracens, rule Jerusalem, 75, 79, 91.  
 Saxon, epic. See Beowulf, Saxon or-  
 deals, 73; names for days of the week,  
 15.  
 Saxons, harass and then conquer Bri-  
 tain, 12, 13; on the Continent, 14-17;  
 as slaves in Rome, 17; Christianity  
 preached to, 17, 18; of the same race  
 as the Danes, 22.  
 Schelde (River), English victory near  
 mouth of, 107.  
 Scone, Stone of Scone carried to Eng-  
 land, with picture, 98; James I.  
 crowned on, 212; Charles II. crowned  
 at, 243.  
 Scotland, Irish origin of the Scots, 9;  
 Roman forts across, 9; Edward I. be-  
 comes overlord of, 97; Scottish resist-  
 ance to Edward I., 97, 99; to Edward  
 II. by Robert Bruce, 104, 105; border  
 warfare, 124; supports Perkin War-  
 beck, 137; War with England in reign  
 of Henry VIII., 164; attempt of Henry  
 VIII. to win the hand of Mary Queen  
 of Scots for his son, and Mary's mar-  
 riage to Francis, Dauphin of France,  
 195; Mary's claim to the English  
 throne, 195, 196; her widowhood and  
 marriage first to Lord Darnley, then  
 to the Earl of Bothwell, 196, 197; her  
 deposition and escape to England,  
 197-199; her execution, 199, 200; ac-  
 cession of her son James to the Eng-  
 lish throne, 211 (See James I.); revolts  
 against the required use of the Eng-  
 lish Prayer Book, 230; "Solemn  
 League and Covenant" with the Eng-  
 lish Parliament against Charles I., 237;  
 surrender of Charles I. to the Scots,  
 and their surrender of him to the Pres-  
 byterian Parliament, 241; attempts of  
 Charles (II.) to secure the English  
 throne and battle of Worcester, 242,  
 244; Stuart line restored, 252; Scottish  
 Presbyterians persecuted by James II.,  
 268; the Darien Company, 287; Jacobite  
 risings, 276, 277, 295, 303; England  
 and Scotland united, 287.  
 Scott, Sir Walter, 336, 366.  
 Scutage introduced by Henry II., 65.  
 Sea-power. See Navy.  
 Seax, 14.  
 Sebastopol, siege of, 354.  
 Sedgemoor, battle of, 265.  
 Seizin, 34.  
 Senlac, or Hastings, battle of, with pic-  
 ture, 35, 36.  
 Separatists, 221.  
 Sepoy Mutiny, 353.  
 Settlement, Act of, 284.  
 Seven bishops, imprisonment of the, 269.  
 Seven Years' War, 304-309.  
 Severn (River), 243.  
 Seymour, Jane, 173.  
 Shaftesbury, Earl of, 262.  
 Shakespeare, William, with portrait,  
 207; his theatre, the Globe, with pic-  
 ture, 207.  
 Sheep-raising, 172.  
 "Ship-money," 230.  
 Shovel, Sir Cloudesley, 290.  
 Shrewsbury, battle of, 125.  
 Sicily, son of Henry III. suggested as  
 ruler of, 90, 91.  
 Simnel, Lambert, 156.  
 Slavery abolished in England's West  
 India colonies, 343.  
 Soldiers, in time of Charles I. with pic-  
 ture, 225.  
 "Solemn League and Covenant," 237.  
 Solway (River), 9, 108.  
 Somerset, Edward Seymour, Duke of,  
 177-179.  
 Songs of Elizabeth's time, 206.  
 South Sea Bubble, 297.  
 Spain, England's fear of becoming a  
 Province of, 185; the Spanish Armada,  
 200-203; connection of James I. with  
 (Spanish marriage question), 218-220;  
 attempts to aid Ireland, 325; asks  
 England's aid against Napoleon, 329.  
 Spanish Succession, war of the, 289.  
 "Spectator," 286.  
 Spenser, Edmund, 206.  
 Squire, duties of, becoming a knight,  
 with picture, 76, 77.  
 Stamp Act, with picture of stamp, 313.  
 Standard, battle of the, with picture of  
 the Standard, 59.  
 Star Chamber, 158, 228, 231.  
 Steam engine invented, 323.  
 Stephen, accession, grants charter, 57;  
 his contest with Matilda, 57-6; in Nor-  
 mandy, 58; his death, 60, 64, 65.  
 Stephenson's locomotive, picture, 343.  
 Stirling Castle, with picture, 105.  
 Stonchenge, with picture, 6, 7.  
 Strafford, Sir Thomas Wentworth, Earl  
 of, 228, 229, 231, 233.

- "Stronghow" becomes a king in Ireland, 72.  
 Stuart Sovereigns, genealogy of, 293.  
 St. James's Park, picture of Mall in, 310.  
 Sully, Maximilien de Bethune, Duc de, 212.  
 Sunderland, Lord, 275.  
 Sweyne, king of England and Denmark, 27.  
 Tabard Inn, 119.  
 Tam O'Shanter, 335.  
 Tasmania, part of the Commonwealth of Australia, 375.  
 Taunton, 265.  
 Taxation, under Henry I., 54; under Richard I., 78; under John, 83; twelve-penny tax of Richard II., 115; freedom of church lands from, 150; severe taxation unsafe, 157; under James I., 218; certain taxes given to the sovereigns, 224; under Charles I., 224, 228, 231; of the American colonies, 313-315; proposal for, must come from the Commons, 348.  
 Tenchebrai, battle of, 52.  
 Tennyson, Alfred, Lord, 13, 74, 343, 366; portrait, 366.  
 Test Act, repeal of, 338.  
 Thackeray, William Makepeace, 366.  
 Thanet (Island), 17.  
 Theatres, closing of the, 249.  
 Thieves, severe law against, 172, 173, 332.  
 "Thorough," 228.  
 Threshing and winnowing, picture, 20.  
 "Tonnage," 224.  
 Tories, 299, 300.  
 Tower of London, built by William the Conqueror, 41; murder of Edward V. and his brother in, picture, 151.  
 Towns, charter given by Richard I., 78; charters of disregarded by John, 83.  
 Towton, battle of, 142.  
 Trafalgar, battle of, 329.  
 Transvaal, the, 300, 377.  
 Treaty, of Dover, 260; of Ryswick, 282; of Utrecht, 284, of Aix-la-Chapelle, 302; of Versailles, 317; of Paris, 373-376; of Vienna, 351; of Ghent, 334.  
 Trelawney, Bishop, 269.  
 Tudor, Owen, 155.  
 Tudor sovereigns, genealogy of, 154, 210.  
 "Tumble-down Dick." See Richard Cromwell.  
 Turks rule the Holy Land, 47; capture Constantinople, 166.  
 "Twelve-days Queen," 182, 183.  
 Tyler, Wat, 115, 116.  
 Tyndale, William, 177.  
 Tyne (River), 9.  
 Union Act, the, joins Upper and Lower Canada in one province, 374.  
 Union between England and Scotland, with picture of flag, 287, 288; between England and Ireland, with picture of the flag, 325, 326.  
 "Union Jack," with picture, 288, 326.  
 United Empire Loyalists, 318, 323.  
 United States. See Colonies, Discoveries, American Revolution. Civil war in, 357.  
 Utopia, 171.  
 Utrecht, Treaty of, 291, 292.  
 Valhalla, home of dead heroes, 23.  
 Van Tromp, 247.  
 Valley Forge, 317.  
 Venerable Bede, 21.  
 Versailles, Treaty of, 317.  
 Vicar of Wakefield, 344-345.  
 Victoria, childhood, 339; accession, 344, 345; portrait, 346; marriage, with portrait of Prince Albert, 349; proclaimed Empress of India, 357; the literature of her reign, 361-367; public interest in her life, her character, 367, 368; her "personal monarchy," 370.  
 Vienna, Congress of, 331.  
 Villeinage, affected by the Black Death and the battle of Crécy, 111-113; punishment of runaway villeins, 112; attempts to burn the lists of villeins, 115, 116.  
 Villiers, George. See Duke of Buckingham.  
 Virginia, 221.  
 Wages, increased by the Black Death, 112; the slow rise of, 171, 172.  
 Waldenses, 248.  
 Wales, survival of Christianity in, 17; subjugated by Edward I., 96; the first English Prince of Wales, 96, 97; the Welsh at Crécy, 109; Wales upholds Richard II., 123; accepts the rule of Henry VIII. as that of a Welshman, 164.  
 Wallace, William, 98; statue, 99.  
 Walpole, Sir Robert, with portrait, 297, 298.  
 Warbeck, Perkin, 157.  
 War of 1812, 333, 334.  
 War of the Austrian Succession, 296, 297-299.  
 War of the Spanish Succession, 301, 302.  
 War Ship that conveyed Henry VIII. to France, picture, 165.  
 Wars of the Roses, beginning of, 140-142; fierceness of, 142, 155; last battle of, 152.  
 Warwick, Richard Nevil, Earl of (the king-maker), 141, 143-145.  
 Washington, George, 316.  
 Watchwords of the French Revolution, 324.  
 Waterloo, battle of, 331.  
 Watt, James, 332.  
 Weaving, fine weaving introduced into England, 112; machinery for weaving invented, 332.



- Wellington, Arthur Wellesley, Duke of, drives Napoleon from Spain, 330; Victory at Waterloo, with portrait, 133.
- Wesley, John, with portrait, 300.
- Wessex, 21, 29.
- Wessex, Godwin, Earl of, 29.
- West Indies, 267, 333.
- Westminster Abbey, with picture, 36, 37.
- Whigs, 200, 300.
- Whitby Abbey, picture, 18.
- Whitefield, George, 300.
- White Ship, loss of, 55.
- Wiclif, John, forms bands of "Poor Priests," with portrait, 117; his "doctrine of the kingdom of God," his translation of the Bible, 118; a follower of him burned at the stake, 126; his translation forbidden to be sold, 146.
- Wight, Isle of, the refuge of John, 87; the refuge of Charles I., 238.
- Wilberforce, William, 342.
- William the Conqueror visits England, 31; invades and conquers England, is elected and crowned king, 32-36; distributes the English lands, 38; his treatment of Odo, choosing Norman officers, 38, 39; establishes the Curfew, clears the New Forest, 41; compiles the Domesday Book, 41, 42; death, 42, 66, 89, 97.
- William II. (Rufus), recommended as king of England, 42; accession, 43; despoils the Church, 44; receives the revenues of Normandy, 46; death, 48.
- William III. (of Orange) marries Mary II, 270; accession jointly with his wife, 271; signs a bill limiting the power of the crown, favors religious liberty, with portrait, 273, 274; opposition to him, 276; his campaign in Ireland, 278; death, 284.
- William IV., character with portrait, 339, 340; reforms and inventions during his reign, 340-344.
- Winchester, 41-43, 48, 49; coiners punished at, 53.
- Windsor, 85.
- Wolfe, General James, with portrait, 305, 306.
- Wolsey, Cardinal Thomas, with picture of him and his suite, 168; his mode of life, 168, 169; portrait, 170; called upon to obtain the Pope's annulment of the first marriage of Henry VIII., 169; arrest and death, 170.
- Woodvilles, the, 148.
- Worcester, battle of, 243.
- Wordsworth, William, 336.
- Wren, Sir Christopher, 258.
- York, rival house in the Wars of the Roses, 140; genealogy of York sovereigns, 154.
- "Young Pretender." See Charles Edward.

